

Mathematica Compendium

Miguel Antonio Méndez Hernández

June 26, 2025

Contents

1	Introduction	16
2	Propositional Logic	17
2.1	Logic Operators and Truth Tables	17
2.2	Tautology and Contradiction	17
2.3	Logical Equivalences	18
2.4	Truth Tables	19
2.4.1	Filling a truth table	19
2.4.2	General Procedure:	19
2.4.3	Truth Table for the Expression $(A \wedge B) \vee C$	20
2.5	Disjunctive Normal Form (DNF)	20
2.6	Conjunctive Normal Form (CNF)	20
2.7	Karnaugh Maps	20
2.7.1	Karnaugh Map for Two Variables	20
2.7.2	Karnaugh Map for Three Variables	21
2.7.3	Solving a Karnaugh Map	21
2.8	Mathematical Quantifiers	22
2.8.1	Universal Quantifier \forall	22
2.8.2	Existential Quantifier \exists	22
2.8.3	Unique Existential Quantifier $\exists!$	22
2.9	Common Symbols Used in Mathematical Expressions	23
3	Set Theory	24
3.1	Basics	24
3.1.1	Visuals	24
3.2	Axioms of Set Theory (Zermelo Fraenkel)	25
3.3	The Cartesian Product	25
3.4	Laws of Set Algebra	26
3.4.1	Proof of De Morgans's Law for sets and logic	26
3.5	Indexed Sets	27
3.5.1	Partitions Laws	27
3.6	Cardinality	28
3.6.1	Cardinality of a Set	28
3.6.2	Cardinality of the complements	28
3.6.3	Cardinality of the Cartesian Product	28
3.6.4	Inclusion-Exclusion Formula for Two Disjoint Sets	28
3.6.5	Inclusion-Exclusion Formula for Two Non-Disjoint Sets	28
3.6.6	Inclusion-Exclusion Formula for Three Non-Disjoint Sets	28
3.6.7	General Formula for the cardinality of the union of sets	28
3.7	The Power Set	28
3.8	Family of Subsets	28
3.9	Partition	29
3.9.1	Properties of Partitions	29
3.10	Family of Subsets Operations	29
4	Relations, Maps and Functions	30
4.1	Types of relations	30
4.2	Equivalence relation	30
4.3	The Graph	30
4.4	The identity	30
4.5	Image	30
4.6	Domain	31
4.7	Equivalence Class	31
4.8	Quotient Space	31
4.9	Definition of a Map	31
4.10	Composition of Maps	31
4.11	Types of Functions	32

4.11.1	Injective Functions	32
4.11.2	Surjective Functions	32
4.11.3	Bijection Functions	32
4.12	Propositions on Images and Pre-images under Set Operations	32
4.12.1	Union and Cut Sets	32
4.12.2	Union and Cut of the whole Domain and Range	33
4.13	Inverse of a Function	33
4.13.1	Steps to Find the Inverse of a Function	34
4.13.2	Properties of the Inverse Function	35
4.14	Transformations of a Function	35
5	Mathematical Proofs	36
5.1	Proof by Direct Argument	36
5.2	Proof by Contradiction	36
5.3	Proof by Induction	36
5.4	Proof by Exhaustion	37
5.5	Proof by Cases	37
5.6	Proof by Construction	38
5.7	Proof by Counterexample	38
5.8	Proof by Contrapositive	38
5.9	Proof by Reduction to Absurdity	39
5.10	Proof by Analogy	39
6	The Natural Numbers	40
6.1	Order in Fields	40
6.1.1	Order Axioms for Fields	40
6.1.2	Consequences of the Order Axioms	40
6.1.3	Examples of Ordered Fields	41
6.2	Propositions and Proofs	41
6.2.1	Proposition 1: $n \neq m \implies S(n) \neq S(m)$	41
6.2.2	Proposition 2: For any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \neq S(n)$	41
6.2.3	Proposition 3: $n \neq 1 \implies \exists m \in \mathbb{N} \mid n = S(m)$	41
6.3	Definition of Addition in \mathbb{N}	41
7	The Archimedean Principle	43
7.1	Equivalent Formulations	43
7.2	Applications	43
8	Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic	44
8.1	Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic	44
8.2	Lemmas	44
8.3	Proof of the Fundamental Theorem	45
8.4	Least Common Multiple	45
9	Real Numbers	46
9.1	Definition	47
10	Complex Numbers	48
10.1	The Complex Plane	48
10.2	Conjugate of a Complex Number	48
10.3	Operations in Cartesian Coordinates	48
10.4	Polar Coordinates	49
10.5	Multiplication and Division in Polar Coordinates	49
10.6	Exponentiation and Roots (De Moivre's Theorem)	49
10.6.1	Exponentiation	49
10.6.2	Roots of Complex Numbers	49
10.7	Example: Solve $z^4 = 1 + \sqrt{3}i$	50
10.8	Solving Equations with Complex Numbers	50
10.8.1	Linear Equations:	50

10.8.2	Equations Involving the Conjugate:	50
10.8.3	Modulus Equations:	50
10.8.4	Equations Involving $z \cdot \bar{z}$	51
10.8.5	Quadratic Equations:	51
10.8.6	General Polynomial Equations:	51
10.9	The Complex Logarithm	52
10.10	Complex Exponents	52
10.11	Euler's Formula Proof	53
11	Topology	54
11.1	Introduction to topological nomenclature	54
11.1.1	Open Set	54
11.1.2	Closed Set	54
11.1.3	Interior Point	54
11.1.4	Boundary Point	54
11.1.5	Accumulation Point / Limit Point	54
11.1.6	Isolated Point	54
11.1.7	Compact Set	54
11.1.8	Dense Set	54
11.1.9	Open Ball	54
12	Inequalities with and without Absolute Value	55
12.1	Reciprocal Inequality	56
12.2	Bernoulli Inequality	56
13	Means and Proofs	57
13.1	Proof of the Arithmetic Mean-Geometric Mean Inequality	57
13.2	Proof of the Harmonic Mean Geometric Mean Inequality	58
14	Solving Polynomial Equations	60
14.1	The PQ Formula	60
14.1.1	Derivation	60
14.1.2	PQ formula:	60
14.2	The Quadratic Formula	60
14.2.1	Derivation of the PQ-Formula	60
14.2.2	ABC formula:	61
14.3	The Cubic Formula	61
14.3.1	Cardano's Formula (for depressed cubic)	61
15	The Binomial Coefficient	62
15.1	Properties	62
15.2	The binomial Theorem	62
16	Proportionality and the Rule of Three	63
16.1	Proportionality	63
16.1.1	Direct Proportionality	63
16.1.2	Inverse Proportionality	63
16.2	The Rule of Three (Simple)	63
16.2.1	Direct Rule of Three (Simple)	63
16.2.2	Inverse Rule of Three (Simple)	63
16.3	The Rule of Three (Compound)	64
17	Factorization Techniques	65
17.1	Common Factor	65
17.2	Difference of Squares	65
17.3	Sum of Cubes:	65
17.4	Difference of Cubes:	65
17.5	Trinomial: Special Case $x^2 + bx + c$	65
17.6	Trinomial: General Form $ax^2 + bx + c$	65

17.7	Perfect Square Trinomial	66
17.8	Substitution	66
17.9	Rationalization of Radicals	66
17.10	Horner's Method	66
17.11	Long Division of Polynomials	67
18	Partial Fractions	68
18.1	The Simplest Case	68
18.1.1	Lemma 1	68
18.1.2	Recursive Decomposition	68
18.2	Lemma 2	69
19	Recursion	71
19.1	From Recursive to Closed Form	71
19.1.1	General Method (when linear):	71
19.2	Linear Recursion	71
19.3	Recursive Inequalities	71
19.4	Fibonacci Numbers and Closed Form	72
20	Logarithms	73
20.1	Properties of Logarithms	73
20.2	Fundamental Identity of Logarithms	73
20.3	Change of Basis Formula	73
20.4	The Chain Rule	73
20.5	The derivative of the Natural Logarithm	74
20.6	Demonstration of the Properties	74
20.6.1	Product	74
20.6.2	Quotient	74
20.6.3	Power	74
20.6.4	Power Rule General Case:	75
21	Fractions, Roots, and Exponents	76
21.1	Fractions	76
21.2	Roots and Exponents	76
22	The Fundamental Theorem of Algebra	77
22.1	Gist of the Proof	77
22.2	Definitions and Axioms	77
22.3	Theorem 1	77
22.4	Theorem 2	78
23	Generating Functions	79
23.1	Definition	79
23.2	Applications	79
23.3	Connection to Subsets	79
23.4	Closed form of the Fibonacci Sequence	79
24	Geometry	81
24.1	Formulas for Area and Perimeter of Geometric Figures	81
24.2	Formulas for Area and Volume of 3D Geometric Figures	81
24.3	Thales' Theorem	82
24.4	Conversion Between Radians and Degrees	82
24.5	3D Geometric Figures with Formulas	83
24.5.1	Cube and Cylinder	83
24.5.2	Cone and Sphere	84
24.5.3	Pyramid and Prism	84
24.6	Axioms of Euclidean Geometry	84
24.7	Types of Angles and Angle Relationships	85
24.7.1	Vertical Angles	85

24.7.2	Adjacent Angles	85
24.7.3	Complementary Angles	85
24.7.4	Angles Generated by Traversals	85
24.8	Triangle Similarity and Congruence	86
24.8.1	Triangle Congruence	86
24.8.2	Triangle Similarity	86
24.9	Visualizations of Triangle Similarity and Congruence	86
24.9.1	SSS (Side-Side-Side)	86
24.9.2	SAS (Side-Angle-Side)	86
24.9.3	ASA (Angle-Side-Angle)	87
24.9.4	AAS (Angle-Angle-Side)	87
24.9.5	SSA (Side-Side-Angle)	87
24.10	Triangle Medians, Angle Bisectors, and Altitudes	87
24.11	The Midsegment Theorem	88
24.12	Intercept Theorems	88
24.12.1	First Intercept Theorem	88
24.12.2	Second Intercept Theorem (General Form)	89
24.13	Proof of the Pythagorean Theorem	89
25	Trigonometry	90
25.1	Trigonometric Functions	90
25.2	SOH-CAH-TOA	90
25.3	Pythagorean Identities	90
25.4	Sum and Difference Formulas	90
25.5	Double Angle Formulas	91
25.6	Half Angle Formulas	91
25.7	Product to Sum Formulas	92
25.8	Power Reducing Formulas	92
25.9	Even and Odd Functions	92
25.10	Graph Identity	92
25.11	Trigonometric Values	93
25.12	Unit Circle and Trigonometric Functions	93
25.13	Definitions on the Unit Circle:	93
25.14	Trigonometric Rules	94
25.15	Proof of the Cosine Rule	94
26	Linear Systems of Equations	95
26.1	Matrix Representation	95
26.2	Solution Set of a Linear System	95
26.3	Equality of the Rank $\text{rg}(A) = \text{rg}_S(A)$	95
26.4	Solvability of the Linear System $Ax = b$	95
26.5	Solution Set of the Linear System $Ax = b$	96
26.6	Gaussian Elimination	96
26.7	Gauss-Jordan Elimination	96
26.8	Homogeneous Linear Equations	97
26.9	Particular Solution	97
26.10	General = Particular + Homogeneous	98
26.11	Linear Combination Lemma	98
26.12	Example: Gaussian Elimination with 3 Equations and 4 Unknowns	98
26.13	The Determinant, the cross product and the solutions of linear Systems of Equations	99
26.14	Chart for the number of solutions	100
26.15	Proof of the Gaussian Elimination	100
26.16	Alternative Method for finding the Rank of a matrix	101
26.17	Cramer's Rule	102
27	Over/Underdetermined Systems of Equations	103
27.1	Normal Equations	103
27.2	Method of the Least Squares	103
27.3	Underdetermined Systems of Equations	105

28 Analytical Geometry	107
28.1 Vectors and Points	107
28.2 Vector Addition and Scalar Multiplication	107
28.3 Equation of a Line	107
28.4 Equation of a Plane	107
28.5 Scalar (Dot) Product	108
28.6 Length (Norm) of a Vector	109
28.7 Angle Relations	109
28.7.1 Line-Line Angle	109
28.7.2 Line-Plane Angle	109
28.7.3 Plane-Plane Angle	109
28.8 Line Relations	109
28.9 Normalization of a vector	110
28.10 Orthogonal Vectors and the Orthogonal Projection	110
28.11 The Cross Product	111
28.12 Orthogonal vectors in \mathbb{R}^2 \mathbb{R}^3	111
28.12.1 Orthogonal vectors in \mathbb{R}^2	111
28.12.2 Orthogonal vectors in \mathbb{R}^3	112
28.13 Hessian Normal Form	112
28.13.1 Geometric Interpretation	112
28.13.2 Signed Distance to the Plane	112
28.13.3 Derivation Illustration	112
28.14 Converting from the parametric form to the Hessian normal form	113
28.15 Converting from the Hessian normal form to the parametric form	113
28.16 Properties of lines and planes	113
28.17 Convert Normal Vector in Two Direction Vectors	113
28.18 Intersection between Line and Plane	113
28.19 Distances between points, lines and planes	115
28.19.1 Distance between two points	115
28.19.2 Distance between a point and a hyperplane	115
28.19.3 Distance between two lines	115
28.19.4 Distance between a point and a line	115
28.19.5 Distance between two planes	115
28.19.6 Distance between a point and a plane	116
28.20 Foot of the Perpendicular and Mirror Point	117
28.20.1 Foot of the Perpendicular	117
28.20.2 Mirror Point	117
29 Algebraic Structures	118
29.1 Operations: Internal and External	118
29.2 Properties of Operations	118
29.3 Homomorphisms and Isomorphisms	118
29.4 Common Algebraic Structures	118
29.4.1 Semigroup (S, \oplus)	118
29.4.2 Monoid (M, \oplus)	118
29.4.3 Group (G, \oplus)	119
29.4.4 Abelian Group (A, \oplus)	119
29.4.5 Ring (R, \oplus, \odot)	119
29.4.6 Commutative Ring (R, \oplus, \odot)	119
29.4.7 Field (K, \oplus, \odot)	119
29.4.8 Vector Space (V, \oplus, \cdot)	119
30 Vector Spaces	120
30.1 Subspaces	120
30.2 Linear Combinations	120
30.3 Properties of the subspaces	121
30.4 Linear Independence	121
30.4.1 Properties of the linear independence	121

30.5	Base	121
30.6	Dimension	122
30.6.1	How to find the base of a set vector	122
30.7	Basis Extension Theorem	122
30.8	Exchange Lemma	123
30.9	Dimension of a sum of subspaces	123
30.10	Linear Independence of polynomials	123
30.11	Interpolation Polynomial	124
31	Dot Product, Euclidean and Unitary Space	125
31.1	Scalar Product	125
31.2	Trigonometric Definition	125
31.3	Standard Scalar Product for Complex Number	125
31.4	Scalar Product on $C[a, b]$	125
31.5	Euclidean and Unitary Vector Spaces	126
31.6	Norms in Vector Spaces	126
31.6.1	Induced Norm by a Scalar Product	126
31.7	Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality in Unitary Vector Spaces	126
31.7.1	Proof of the Triangle Inequality	126
31.8	Definiteness of Inner Products	127
31.9	Definiteness and Quadratic Forms	127
31.10	Minors	128
31.10.1	Minors and Definiteness	128
31.11	Connection to Symmetric Matrices	128
31.12	Sign of the D_k	128
31.13	Negative Quadratic Form	128
31.14	Theorems for Non-squares matrices	129
31.14.1	Theorem I	129
31.15	Theorem II	129
32	Orthogonality	130
32.1	Orthogonality and Projection	130
32.2	Orthogonal Projection and Orthogonal Complement	130
32.3	Orthogonality of the basis to the Complement	130
32.4	How to find the orthogonal complement	130
32.5	Orthogonal and Orthonormal Systems	131
32.6	Writing a vector in terms of the Orthogonal Basis	131
32.7	Linear Independence of Orthogonal Systems	131
32.8	Representation with Respect to an Orthogonal Basis	132
32.9	Orthogonal Projection and Direct Sum Decomposition	132
32.10	The Gram-Schmidt Process	132
32.11	Existence of Orthonormal Bases and Orthogonal Projections	133
32.11.1	Visualization of the Gram-Schmidt process in 2 dimension	134
32.12	Best Approximation	134
33	Matrices	135
33.1	Definition of a Matrix	135
33.2	Matrix Addition and Subtraction	135
33.3	Matrix Multiplication	135
33.4	The Transpose of a Matrix	136
33.4.1	Properties of the Transpose	136
33.5	The Equivalence of Matrices	136
33.5.1	Row Echelon Form (REF)	137
33.5.2	Reduced Row Echelon Form (RREF)	137
33.6	The Inverse of a Matrix and Its Properties	137
33.6.1	Properties of the Inverse	137
33.6.2	Finding the Inverse	137
33.7	The Rank of a Matrix and How to Find It	138
33.8	How to isolate Matrices	138

33.8.1	Finding the Rank	138
33.8.2	Properties of Rank	138
33.9	The Definitions of Column Space, Row Space, and Null Space	139
33.9.1	Column Space	139
33.9.2	Row Space	139
33.9.3	Null Space	139
33.9.4	Left Null Space	139
33.10	Examples of Matrix Operations	139
33.10.1	Example of Matrix Multiplication	140
33.11	Linear Maps as matrices and Their Properties	143
33.12	Example of an exercise	143
34	Changing between Basis	145
34.1	Translation under transformation	146
34.2	Theorems and definitions concerning the change of basis	146
34.2.1	Theorem I	147
34.2.2	Theorem II	147
34.2.3	Theorem III	147
34.2.4	Theorem IV	147
34.2.5	Theorem V	147
34.2.6	Theorem VI	148
35	The Determinant of a Matrix	149
35.1	Properties of the determinant	149
35.2	Proof of the multiplication of determinants	149
35.3	The Leibniz Formula	150
35.3.1	Derivation	150
35.4	Laplace's Method (Co-factor Expansion)	151
35.5	Determinant of the reduced echelon form	153
35.6	Gaussian Method for finding determinants	153
36	Elementary Matrix	154
36.1	Invertibility	154
36.2	Determinants	154
37	Geometry of Linear Maps	155
37.1	Isometry	155
37.2	The Rotation Matrix	155
37.2.1	Other rotation matrices	156
37.3	Orthogonal Matrices	156
37.3.1	Properties of orthogonal matrices	156
37.4	The Determinants of Orthogonal Matrices	157
37.5	The Orthogonal Group	157
37.6	Dot Product	157
37.7	Theorem of the Matrix Representation	158
37.8	Change of Basis	159
37.9	QR-Decomposition	159
38	Eigenvectors and Eigenvalues	161
38.1	Characteristic Polynomial	161
38.1.1	Eigenspace	161
38.2	Theorems of Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors	161
38.2.1	Theorem I	161
38.2.2	Theorem II	161
38.2.3	Theorem III	162
38.2.4	Theorem IV	162
38.2.5	Theorem V	162
38.2.6	Theorem VI	162
38.2.7	Theorem VII	162

38.3	How to find the Eigenvectors and Eigenvalues	163
38.3.1	Complex Eigenvalues	164
38.4	Similar Matrices	164
38.5	Diagonal Matrices	164
38.5.1	Complex Diagonalization	165
38.5.2	Geometric and Algebraic Multiplicity	165
38.5.3	Eigenvalues of Real Symmetric Matrices	165
38.5.4	Orthogonality of Eigenvectors	165
38.5.5	Eigenvalue Decomposition of Symmetric Matrices	166
38.5.6	Matrix Diagonalization	166
38.5.7	Normal Matrices	167
39	The Exponential Function and Relatives	168
39.1	Exponential Function as a Series	168
39.2	Sine and Cosine Definitions with e	168
39.3	Euler's Formula	168
39.4	Reason for the Infinite Series of e (Differentiation)	168
39.5	Hyperbolic Functions with e	169
39.6	Inverse of the Hyperbolic Trigonometric Functions	169
40	Growth	170
40.1	Exponential Growth	170
40.1.1	Discrete Exponential Growth	170
40.1.2	Continuous Exponential Growth	170
40.2	Logistic Growth	171
40.2.1	Discrete Logistic Growth	171
40.2.2	Continuous Logistic Growth	171
41	Asymptotes	173
41.1	Vertical Asymptotes	173
41.1.1	How to Find Vertical Asymptotes	173
41.2	Horizontal Asymptotes	173
41.2.1	How to Find Horizontal Asymptotes (Rational Functions)	173
41.3	Oblique (Slant) Asymptotes	173
41.3.1	How to Find Oblique Asymptotes	174
41.4	Summary Table	174
42	Sequences and Series	175
42.1	Arithmetic Sequence	175
42.2	Geometric Sequence	175
42.3	Function Sequence	175
42.4	Convergence	175
42.5	Cauchy Sequence	176
42.6	Definition of ε -Neighborhood	176
42.7	Supremum, Infimum, Maximum and Minimum	176
42.8	Limit and Accumulation Point	176
42.9	Monotonicity by Difference and Quotient	177
42.10	Divergence (Definition)	177
42.11	Subsequences and Their Properties	177
42.12	Series	177
42.13	Power Series	177
42.14	Point-wise Convergence	178
42.15	Uniform Convergence	178
42.16	Cauchy Criterion for Series	178
42.17	Interval Nesting and the Interval Nesting Theorem	178
42.18	Weierstraß Approximation Theorem	178
42.19	Zero Sequence	178
42.20	The Monotony Principle	179
42.21	Operations on Sequences	179

42.21.1 Sum of Sequences	179
42.21.2 Multiplication of Sequences	180
42.21.3 Absolute Value of a Sequence	180
42.21.4 Conjugate of a Complex Sequence	180
42.21.5 Complex Limit (Real and Imaginary Parts)	180
42.21.6 Asymptotic Equality	180
43 Limits	181
43.1 Definition of the Limit	181
43.2 Limit Calculation Rules	181
43.3 Limits at Infinity	181
43.4 Indeterminate Forms	181
43.5 Limit of a Composite Function	181
43.6 Right and Left Limits	181
43.7 L'Hôpital's Rule	182
43.8 Limit of a fraction	182
43.9 Limit of a Recursive Sequence	182
43.10 Important Limits	182
43.11 Squeeze Theorem (Sandwich Theorem)	182
43.12 The Number e as a Limit	183
43.13 Limits of \arctan	183
43.14 Bolzano-Weierstraß Theorem	183
43.15 Uniqueness of the Limit	183
43.16 Every Convergent Sequence is a Cauchy Sequence	184
44 Convergence Radius	185
44.1 Definition	185
44.2 Test of the Borders	185
44.3 Approximating the Error	185
45 Calculating Series Values	186
45.1 Telescoping Sums and Partial Fraction Decomposition	186
46 Transforming Functions into Power Series	187
46.1 Common Cases	187
46.1.1 Partial Fractions	187
46.1.2 Manipulating the Expression	187
46.1.3 Power Series Representation	187
47 Continuity	189
47.1 Definition of Continuity at a Point	189
47.2 Rules of Continuity	189
47.3 Lipschitz Continuity	189
47.4 Banach Fixed Point Theorem	190
47.4.1 A Priori and A Posteriori Approximations	190
47.4.2 Steps for a Fixed Point Exercise	190
48 Differentiation	191
48.1 Definition of the Derivative	191
48.2 Derivative Rules	191
48.3 Extrema and Critical Points Test	191
48.4 Trigonometric Derivatives	192
48.5 Derivatives of Inverse Trigonometric Functions	192
48.6 The Differential	192
48.7 The Secant Equation and Graphical Meaning	192
48.8 Optimization via the Derivative	192
48.9 Power Rule Derivation	193
48.10 Implicit Differentiation	193

49	Integration	194
49.1	Definition (Riemann Integral)	194
49.2	Upper and Lower Sums	194
49.3	Concrete and Non-Concrete Integrals	194
49.4	Rules of Integration	194
49.5	Substitution Rule (U-Substitution)	194
49.6	Integration by Parts	195
49.7	Integration by Partial Fractions	195
49.8	Trigonometric Substitution	195
49.9	Average Value of a Function	197
49.10	Mean Value Theorem for Integrals	197
49.11	Length, Area, Volume Formulas	197
49.12	Differentiation of Integrals with Variable Bounds	197
49.13	Parameter-Dependent Integrals	197
49.14	Leibniz Rule for Differentiating Under the Integral Sign	198
49.15	Improper Integrals (Infinite Bounds)	198
49.16	Improper Integrals (Unbounded Functions)	198
49.17	Convergence Criteria for Improper Integrals	198
49.18	Integral Test for Series	198
50	Important Theorems of Single Variable Calculus	199
50.1	Intermediate Value Theorem	199
50.2	Extreme Value Theorem	199
50.3	Rolle's Theorem	200
50.4	Mean Value Theorem	200
51	Coordinate Systems	202
51.1	Cartesian Coordinates	202
51.2	Polar Coordinates	202
51.3	Cylindrical Coordinates	202
51.4	Spherical Coordinates	203
52	Parameterized Curves	204
52.1	Definition	204
52.2	Purpose	204
52.3	How to Parameterize a Function	204
52.4	Arclength and t Parameter	204
52.4.1	Arclength Parameter	205
52.4.2	The t Parameter	205
53	Multi-variable Functions	206
53.1	Open Sets	206
53.2	Closed Sets	206
53.3	Boundedness and Order	206
53.4	Sequences	206
53.5	Accumulation Point	207
53.6	Bolzano–Weierstraß Theorem	207
53.7	Limits	207
53.8	Partial Functions	207
53.9	Continuity	208
53.9.1	Continuity in Polar Coordinates for 2D	208
53.9.2	Substitution	209
53.10	Uniform and Lipschitz Continuity	209
53.10.1	Uniform Continuity:	209
53.10.2	Lipschitz Continuity:	209
53.11	Epsilon–Delta Criterion	210
53.12	Fixpoints	210
53.13	Banach Fixed Point Theorem	210
53.14	Vector fields	210

54 Multi-variable Differentiation	211
54.1 Partial Derivatives	211
54.2 Differentiability	211
54.3 The Gradient	211
54.3.1 Origin of the formula	211
54.3.2 Gradient Operations:	211
54.4 The Tangent Plane	212
54.4.1 Generalization	212
54.5 The Directional Derivative	212
54.5.1 Derivation of the Directional Derivative Formula	213
54.6 The Total Differential	213
54.7 Absolute and Relative Error	213
54.8 The Chain Rule	214
54.8.1 Implicit Differentiation	215
54.9 Divergence and Curl (Rotation)	215
54.9.1 Divergence:	215
54.9.2 Curl:	216
54.10 Schwarz's Theorem (Clairaut's Theorem)	216
54.11 The Jacobian	216
54.12 Taylor's Theorem	216
54.13 Relative Extrema	217
54.14 Finding Candidate Points for Zeros While Seeking Relative Extrema	217
54.14.1 Note: Non-differentiable Points	218
54.15 Lagrange Multipliers	218
54.15.1 Determinant method	219
54.15.2 The Bordered Hessian	219
54.16 The Tangent Vector	220
54.16.1 Derivation of the Tangent Vector Formula	221
55 Multidimensional Integrals	222
55.1 Arclength of a Curve	222
55.2 Line Integrals	222
55.2.1 Over Vector Field	222
55.2.2 Over Scalar field	223
55.3 Line Integrals with respect to a specific variable	224
55.3.1 Over Scalar Field with respect to x or y	224
55.3.2 Over Vector Field with respect to x or y	224
55.4 Potential Function	224
55.5 Finding the Potential Function of a Vector Field	225
55.6 Double Integral over a Rectangular Region	226
55.7 Integration over Curvilinear Domains	226
55.8 Changing the order of integration to solve tricky integrals	227
55.9 The Jacobian	227
55.9.1 Local linearity	228
55.9.2 Determinant	228
55.9.3 List of Common Jacobians	228
55.10 Integration in Polar Coordinates	229
55.10.1 Origin of the Area	229
55.11 Improper Integrals over Unbounded Regions	230
55.11.1 Gaussian Integral	230
55.12 Triple Integrals	230
55.12.1 Triple Integrals in Cartesian Coordinates	231
55.12.2 Coordinate Transformation and the Jacobian Determinant	231
55.12.3 Calculating the center of mass with triple integrals	232

56	Differential Equations	233
56.1	Ordinary Differential Equations	233
56.2	Initial Value Problems and Solutions	233
56.3	Volterra Integral	233
56.4	The Picard-Lindelöf Iteration Method	233
56.5	Integration case	234
56.6	Separation of Variables	234
56.6.1	Steps to solve a ODE of separable variables	234
56.6.2	Understanding the fiction	234
56.7	Geometry of ODE	235
56.8	Existence and Uniqueness	235
56.9	How to deal with initial conditions	235
56.10	Solving DE with Substitution	235
56.10.1	Case I	235
56.10.2	Case II	236
56.11	Linear Differential Equations	237
56.11.1	How to solve a Linear Differential Equation	237
56.12	Integrating Factor Method	237
56.13	Homogeneous Differential Equations	238
56.13.1	Homogeneous Equation	238
56.13.2	Homogeneous Functions Theorem	239
56.14	Solving Homogeneous DE I	239
56.15	Solving Homogeneous DE I	240
56.16	Inhomogeneous Equation	240
56.17	Solutions of LDE	240
56.17.1	Variation of the Constants	240
56.18	Existence and Uniqueness Differential Equations	242
56.19	Constant Coefficients and the Superposition Theorem	242
56.19.1	Theorem of Superposition and the General Solution	242
56.20	Undetermined Coefficients	242
56.20.1	Steps for solving Constant Coefficients problems	242
56.20.2	Find the partial solution	243
56.20.3	Table of reference	243
56.21	Bernoulli Equation	244
56.22	Autonomous Equations	245
56.22.1	Equilibrium Solutions	245
56.23	Linear Inhomogeneous DEs with Non-Constant Coefficients	245
56.24	Power Series Approach	246
56.24.1	Theorem for the Power Series of DE	247
56.25	Exact Differential Equations	247
56.25.1	Euler Multipliers	248
56.26	Constant Coefficients ODE	249
56.26.1	Case 1: Two Distinct Real Roots ($D > 0$)	250
56.26.2	Case 2: Repeated Real Root ($D = 0$)	250
56.26.3	Case 3: Complex Conjugate Roots ($D < 0$)	250
56.26.4	Inhomogeneous Case	251
56.27	The Wronskian	251
56.28	Linearity Property	251
56.29	Variation of Parameters	252
56.30	Which method to use depending on the type of differential equations	252
56.30.1	First Order	252
56.30.2	Second Order and higher	253
56.30.3	Exact	253
56.31	Linear Systems of Differential Equations	253

57 Probability	255
57.1 Basics	255
57.1.1 Probability	255
57.1.2 Expected Result	255
57.2 Standard Deviation	255
57.3 Binomial Distribution	255
57.3.1 Continuous Probability	255
57.3.2 Sigma Rules	255
57.4 Normal Distribution	256
57.5 Conditional Probability	256
57.5.1 Formula for the Total Probability	256
57.6 Bayes Theorem	256
57.7 Hyper-geometric Distribution	256
57.8 The Birthday Paradox	256
58 Combinatorics	257
58.1 Permutation	257
58.2 Permutation with repetition	257
58.3 Variation	257
58.4 Variation without repetition	257
58.5 Combination I	257
58.6 Combination II	257
58.7 Disarray	257
58.8 Bell Numbers	258
58.9 Ramanujan Numbers	258
58.10 Stirling Numbers I	258
58.11 Stirling Numbers II	258
58.12 Lah Numbers	258
58.13 Euler's Numbers	258
58.14 Catalan Numbers	258
58.15 Pascals Triangle	259

1 Introduction

Hello, my name is Miguel, this compendium is not meant to be a complete guide/book about all the mathematics, but a collection of theorems, definitions, and proofs that I have found useful in my studies. This compendium is not a replacement for the books or the lectures at your university, but a complement to it. On the one hand I will try to keep it as simple as possible, but sometimes there are going to be topics that will be quite complex and on the other hand some proofs will be skipped or not included at all, because I think that they are not necessary for the understanding of the topic. My main idea while

writing this was to take as much as I could from the books I have read, the lectures I have attended, the videos I have watched and the notes I have taken. This is also the reason why the order may be a bit strange, but I think that it is the best way to give an overview about a lot of topics and also via the table of contents you can easily find what you are looking for.

The whole compendium is written in \LaTeX , so if you find any mistake, or you want to add something, please feel free to notify me and will make the necessary adjustments. I will keep the compendium up to date as much as I can, but I am not a professional writer nor a \LaTeX veteran, so please be patient with me.

If you find this project useful please consider maybe donating to this project, but do not worry this document will be free forever.

2 Propositional Logic

Propositional logic is also called Boolean logic as it works on 0 and 1. In propositional logic, we use symbolic variables to represent the logic, and we can use any symbol for a representing a proposition, such A , B , C , P , Q , R , etc. Propositions can be either *true false*, but it cannot be both.

2.1 Logic Operators and Truth Tables

NOT (\neg , \sim)

A	$\neg A$
0	1
1	0

IFF (\iff)

A	B	$A \iff B$
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

AND (\wedge)

A	B	$A \wedge B$
0	0	0
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	1

XOR (\oplus)

A	B	$A \oplus B$
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

OR (\vee)

A	B	$A \vee B$
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

NOR (\downarrow)

A	B	$A \downarrow B$
0	0	1
0	1	0
1	0	0
1	1	0

IMPLIES (\implies)

A	B	$A \implies B$
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	0
1	1	1

NAND (\uparrow)

A	B	$A \uparrow B$
0	0	1
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	0

2.2 Tautology and Contradiction

- *Tautology*: A logical formula that is always true.
- *Contradiction*: A formula that is always false.

2.3 Logical Equivalences

Commutative Laws

$$p \wedge q \iff q \wedge p \quad p \vee q \iff q \vee p$$

Associative Laws

$$(p \wedge q) \wedge r \iff p \wedge (q \wedge r) \quad (p \vee q) \vee r \iff p \vee (q \vee r)$$

Distributive Laws

$$p \wedge (q \vee r) \iff (p \wedge q) \vee (p \wedge r) \quad p \vee (q \wedge r) \iff (p \vee q) \wedge (p \vee r)$$

Identity Laws

$$p \wedge \mathbf{T} \iff p \quad p \vee \mathbf{F} \iff p$$

Negation Laws

$$p \vee \sim p \iff \mathbf{T} \quad p \wedge \sim p \iff \mathbf{F}$$

Double Negation Law

$$\sim(\sim p) \iff p$$

Idempotent Laws

$$p \wedge p \iff p \quad p \vee p \iff p$$

Universal Bound Laws

$$p \vee \mathbf{T} \iff \mathbf{T} \quad p \wedge \mathbf{F} \iff \mathbf{F}$$

De Morgan's Laws

$$\sim(p \wedge q) \iff (\sim p) \vee (\sim q) \quad \sim(p \vee q) \iff (\sim p) \wedge (\sim q)$$

Absorption Laws

$$p \vee (p \wedge q) \iff p \quad p \wedge (p \vee q) \iff p$$

Conditional Laws

$$(p \implies q) \iff (\sim p \vee q) \quad \sim(p \implies q) \iff (p \wedge \sim q)$$

Complement Law

$$p \vee \neg p \iff \mathbf{T} \quad p \wedge \neg p \iff \mathbf{F}$$

Biconditional

$$p \iff q \iff (p \implies q) \wedge (q \implies p)$$

Transitivity

$$(p \implies q) \wedge (q \implies r) \implies (p \implies r)$$

Indirect Proof (Contrapositive)

$$(p \implies q) \iff (\neg q \implies \neg p)$$

Disjunctive Syllogism (Disjunctive Exclusion)

$$p \vee q \equiv (p \vee q) \wedge \neg p \implies q$$

$$p \vee q \equiv (p \wedge q) \vee \neg(p \wedge q)$$

2.4 Truth Tables

Truth tables are a fundamental tool in logic that systematically show the truth value (true or false) of a compound statement for every possible combination of the truth values of its individual component statements.

Essentially, they lay out all the scenarios and the resulting truth of the overall logical expression. This helps determine if an argument is valid, if statements are logically equivalent, or the circumstances under which a complex statement is true or false.

Example:

p	q	$\neg p$	$\neg q$	$\neg p \implies q$	$(\neg p \implies q) \wedge \neg p$	$[(\neg p \implies q) \wedge \neg p] \implies q$
T	T	F	F	T	F	T
T	F	F	T	T	F	T
F	T	T	F	T	T	T
F	F	T	T	F	F	T

2.4.1 Filling a truth table

To fill a truth table for a logical expression with truth values (True or False), you follow a specific order for the input variables. This order ensures that all possible combinations of truth values for the variables are covered.

2.4.2 General Procedure:

1. **List all possible combinations of truth values for the input variables:** If you have n variables, the number of rows in the truth table will be 2^n . Each variable can be either True (T) or False (F).
2. **Order of the input variables:**
 - Start by filling in the truth values for the first variable. It alternates between True and False every 2^{n-1} rows.
 - Then for the second variable, it alternates every 2^{n-2} rows, and so on.
 - In short: the first variable alternates every other row, the second variable every two rows, the third every four rows, and so on.

Example:

For 3 variables, there are $2^3 = 8$ possible combinations of truth values. The truth values are filled in the following order:

A	B	C	Expression Result
T	T	T	—
T	T	F	—
T	F	T	—
T	F	F	—
F	T	T	—
F	T	F	—
F	F	T	—
F	F	F	—

The pattern for filling the input truth values

- The first column (A) alternates every 4 rows: 'T, T, F, F, T, T, F, F'.
- The second column (B) alternates every 2 rows: 'T, T, F, F, T, T, F, F'.
- The third column (C) alternates every row: 'T, F, T, F, T, F, T, F'.

This ensures that all combinations of A , B , and C are covered, and you can then evaluate the logical expression for each combination.

2.4.3 Truth Table for the Expression $(A \wedge B) \vee C$

A	B	C	$(A \wedge B) \vee C$
T	T	T	T
T	T	F	T
T	F	T	T
T	F	F	F
F	T	T	T
F	T	F	F
F	F	T	T
F	F	F	F

2.5 Disjunctive Normal Form (DNF)

Disjunctive Normal Form (DNF) is a standard way of writing a logical expression as a *disjunction(OR)* of *conjunctions (ANDs)*. A DNF expression consists of a series of conjunctions of literals, where each conjunction is connected by disjunctions.

To find the DNF in a truth table take the rows of the final result where there are true statements and bind the propositions that generated it with an AND inside parenthesis. Repeat it with each of true rows and connect all parenthesis with OR's

Example of DNF:

Consider the logical expression:

$$(A \wedge B) \vee (\neg A \wedge C) \vee (B \wedge \neg C)$$

This is in DNF because it is a disjunction (OR) of conjunctions (ANDs) of literals.

2.6 Conjunctive Normal Form (CNF)

Conjunctive Normal Form (CNF) is a standard way of writing a logical expression as a *conjunction (AND)* of *disjunctions (ORs)*. A CNF expression consists of a series of disjunctions of literals, where each disjunction is connected by conjunctions.

To find the CNF proceed just as the DNF but with the false rows and instead of ANDs inside the parenthesis use OR and connect the terms with AND. Also add a negation before each parenthesis.

Example of CNF:

Consider the logical expression:

$$\neg(A \vee B) \wedge \neg(\neg A \vee C) \wedge \neg(B \vee \neg C)$$

This is in CNF because it is a conjunction (AND) of disjunctions (ORs) of literals.

2.7 Karnaugh Maps

Karnaugh Maps (K-Maps) are a graphical method used to simplify Boolean expressions. The main goal of a K-map is to group adjacent cells that contain 1's in order to simplify the expression. A K-map helps identify common terms, allowing the Boolean expression to be reduced to its simplest form.

2.7.1 Karnaugh Map for Two Variables

Consider the Boolean expression $(A \vee (B \wedge \neg A \wedge \neg B))$.

We first construct a K-map for two variables, A and B . The truth table for this expression gives the following values:

A	B	$(A \vee (B \wedge \neg A \wedge \neg B))$
0	0	0
0	1	1
1	0	1
1	1	1

The corresponding K-map is:

AB	00	01	11	10
Value	0	1	1	1

Here, we group the ones together to simplify the Boolean expression. The simplified expression is:

$$A \vee B$$

2.7.2 Karnaugh Map for Three Variables

Now, let's consider the expression $\neg C$. This expression only depends on one variable, but for illustration, we will use a 3-variable K-map with variables A , B , and C .

The truth table for $\neg C$ is as follows:

A	B	C	$\neg C$
0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0
0	1	0	1
0	1	1	0
1	0	0	1
1	0	1	0
1	1	0	1
1	1	1	0

The corresponding K-map for three variables A , B , and C is:

$AB \setminus C$	0	1
00	1	0
01	1	0
11	1	0
10	1	0

We see that the ones are grouped in a column, leading to the simplified Boolean expression:

$$\neg C$$

2.7.3 Solving a Karnaugh Map

To solve a Karnaugh Map and simplify a Boolean expression, follow these steps:

1. Determine the Number of Variables:

Decide how many variables are in the Boolean function. This determines the size of the K-Map:

- 2 variables: 2×2
- 3 variables: 2×4
- 4 variables: 4×4
- etc.

2. Fill in the K-Map:

Place 1's in the cells that correspond to the min-terms (where the function outputs 1). You may also include do not care conditions (usually denoted as X).

3. Group the 1's:

Form groups (called *implicants*) of 1's. The groups must follow these rules:

- Each group must contain 1, 2, 4, 8, ... (powers of 2) 1's.
- Groups must be rectangular (e.g., 1×2 , 2×2).
- Groups can wrap around the edges of the K-Map.
- Try to form the largest groups possible to simplify the expression.
- Each 1 should be included in at least one group.

4. Write the Simplified Expression:

For each group:

- Identify the variables that are constant (either always 0 or always 1) across the group.
- Write a product term (AND) using only the constant variables.
- Combine all product terms with OR operations to get the final simplified SOP (Sum of Products) expression.

2.8 Mathematical Quantifiers

2.8.1 Universal Quantifier \forall

Means “for all” or “for every”.

Negation: $\neg(\forall x) P(x) \equiv (\exists x) \neg P(x)$ “Not all” is the same as “There exists one that does not”.

Example:

$\forall x \in \mathbb{R}, x^2 \geq 0$ For all real numbers, the square is greater than or equal to zero.

Negated Example:

$\exists x \in \mathbb{R}, x^2 < 0$ There exists a real number whose square is less than zero — this is false.

2.8.2 Existential Quantifier \exists

Means “there exists at least one”.

Negation: $\neg(\exists x) P(x) \equiv (\forall x) \neg P(x)$ “There does not exist” is the same as “For all, not”.

Example:

$\exists x \in \mathbb{N}, x > 10$ There exists a natural number greater than 10.

Negated Example:

$\forall x \in \mathbb{N}, x \leq 10$ All natural numbers are less than or equal to 10 — this is false.

2.8.3 Unique Existential Quantifier $\exists!$

Means “there exists exactly one”.

Negation: “Not exactly one” means: $\neg(\exists! x) P(x) \equiv (\forall x) \neg P(x) \vee (\exists x_1 \neq x_2) P(x_1) \wedge P(x_2)$ Either no such x exists, or more than one does.

Example:

$\exists! x \in \mathbb{R}, x + 5 = 0$ There exists exactly one real number such that $x + 5 = 0$.

Negated Example:

$\exists x_1 \neq x_2 \in \mathbb{R}, x_1^2 = 4 \wedge x_2^2 = 4$ There are multiple solutions to $x^2 = 4$.

2.9 Common Symbols Used in Mathematical Expressions

- $>$ (greater than)
- $<$ (less than)
- \geq (greater than or equal to)
- \leq (less than or equal to)
- $=$ (equals)
- \neq (not equal)
- \in (element of a set)
- \notin (not an element of)
- \subset (proper subset)
- \subseteq (subset)
- \supset (proper superset)
- \supseteq (superset)
- \wedge (logical AND)
- \vee (logical OR)
- \implies (implies)
- \iff (if and only if)

3 Set Theory

Set theory is a foundational branch of mathematics that studies *sets*, which are simply collections of objects. At its core, it deals with the fundamental concepts of membership (whether an object belongs to a set), equality (when two sets are the same), and relationships between sets (like subsets, intersections, and unions).

It might seem simple, but set theory provides the basic language and tools to define and reason about almost all mathematical objects, from numbers and functions to more complex structures. It helps us understand the concept of infinity, organize mathematical ideas logically, and resolve paradoxes that arise from dealing with collections.

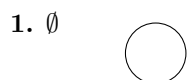
In essence, set theory provides the building blocks upon which much of modern mathematics is constructed.

3.1 Basics

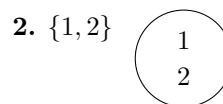
To be concise, a set is a collection of mathematical objects that can also be other sets. Here is a list of common symbols for set theory.

- *Empty set* (\emptyset): The set that contains no elements. It is the unique set with zero elements.
- $A \subseteq B$: Set A is a subset of B . This means every element of A is also in B .
- $A \subseteq B$ or $A = B$: This notation already includes the possibility that A equals B since a set is always a subset of itself.
- $A \cup B$: The union of sets A and B . It includes all elements that are in A , in B , or in both.
- $A \cap B$: The intersection of sets A and B . It includes only the elements that are in both sets.
- $A \setminus B$: The difference of sets. Elements in A that are not in B .
- A^c or \bar{A} : The complement of set A . All elements not in A , relative to a universal set.
- $|A|$: The cardinality of set A , which is the number of elements in the set.

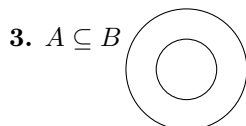
3.1.1 Visuals



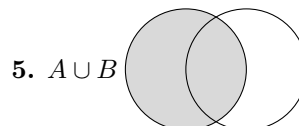
1. Empty Set



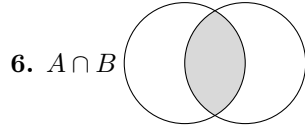
2. Set with Two Elements



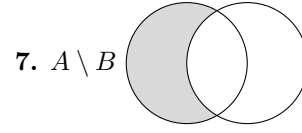
3. A is a subset of B



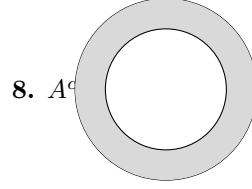
5. Union of A and B



6. Intersection of A and B



7. A minus B



8. Complement of A

3.2 Axioms of Set Theory (Zermelo Fraenkel)

These are Zermelo Fraenkel axioms of set theory including *The Axiom of Choice*.

- I. *Axiom of Extensionality*: $\forall A, B : A = B \implies (\forall C : C \in A \iff C \in B)$
- II. *Empty-Set Axiom*: $\exists \emptyset : \forall X : X \notin \emptyset$
- III. *Axiom of Pairing*: $\forall A, B : \exists C : \forall D : D \in C \iff (D = A \vee D = B)$
- IV. *Axiom of Union*: $\forall A : \exists B : \forall C : C \in B \iff (\exists D : C \in D \wedge D \in A)$
- V. *Axiom of Infinity*: $\exists N : \emptyset \in N \wedge (\forall x : x \in N \implies x \cup \{x\} \in N)$
- VI. *Axiom Schema of Specification*: $\forall A : \exists B : \forall C : C \in B \iff (C \in A \wedge P(C))$
- VII. *Axiom Schema of Replacement*: $\forall A : \exists B : \forall y : y \in B \implies \exists x \in A : y = F(x)$
- VIII. *Power Set Axiom*: $\forall A : \exists B : \forall C : C \subseteq A \implies C \in B$
- IX. *Foundation Axiom*: $\forall A \neq \emptyset : \exists B \in A : A \cap B = \emptyset$
- X. *Axiom of Choice*: $\forall X : ([\forall A \in X : A \neq \emptyset] \wedge [\forall B, C \in X : B \neq C \implies B \cap C = \emptyset]) \implies \exists Y : \forall I \in X : \exists ! J \in Y : J \in I$

3.3 The Cartesian Product

The Cartesian product of two sets A and B , written $A \times B$, is the set of all ordered pairs in which the first element belongs to A and the second belongs to B :

$$A \times B = \{(a, b) : a \in A, \wedge b \in B\}$$

Example:

Table 1: Cartesian Product of $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{4, 5, 6\}$

$A \times B$	$b \in B$		
	4	5	6
$a \in A$			
1	(1, 4)	(1, 5)	(1, 6)
2	(2, 4)	(2, 5)	(2, 6)
3	(3, 4)	(3, 5)	(3, 6)

The general Cartesian product of n sets can be written as:

$$X_{i=1}^{n+1}A_i = (X_{i=1}^nA_i) \times A_{n+1} \quad \text{with} \quad X_{i=1}^1A_i = A_1$$

When $A_i = M$ for all i :

$$M^n := M \times M \times \cdots \times M = X_{i=1}^nM \quad \text{with} \quad M^1 = M$$

3.4 Laws of Set Algebra

Let X be the universal set and $A, B, C \subseteq X$.

- $\emptyset \subseteq A$
- $A \subseteq B \iff A \cap B = A \iff A \cup B = B \iff X \setminus B \subseteq X \setminus A \iff B \subseteq A$
- $A \cup B = B \cup A$
- $A \cap B = B \cap A$
- $(A \cup B) \cup C = A \cup (B \cup C)$
- $(A \cap B) \cap C = A \cap (B \cap C)$
- $A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$
- $A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$
- $A \cup A = A \quad \text{and} \quad A \cap A = A$
- $A \setminus B = A \cap (X \setminus B) = A \cap \overline{B}$
- $B = \overline{A} \iff (A \cup B = X \wedge A \cap B = \emptyset)$
- $\overline{A \cap B} = \overline{A} \cup \overline{B}$
- $\overline{A \cup B} = \overline{A} \cap \overline{B}$
- $\overline{\overline{A}} = A$

3.4.1 Proof of De Morgans's Law for sets and logic

The complement of $A \cup B$ is $\overline{(A \cup B)}$, and the law on disjoint decomposition states:

$$B = \overline{A} \iff (A \cup B = X) \wedge (A \cap B = \emptyset)$$

So define $\overline{C} := A \cup B$ and $D := \overline{A \cap B}$, and use Law (11) to show the disjoint decomposition:

$$D = C \iff A \cap B = A \cup B$$

To show:

$$D \cup C = X \iff (\overline{A \cap B}) \cup (A \cup B) = X$$

$$\begin{aligned} (\overline{A \cap B}) \cup (A \cup B) &= (\overline{A} \cup A \cup B) \cap (\overline{B} \cup A \cup B) \quad (\text{Law (8)}) \\ &= (X \cup B) \cap (X \cup A) \\ &= X \cap X \\ &= X \end{aligned}$$

To show:

$$D \cap C = \emptyset \iff (\overline{A \cap B}) \cap (A \cup B) = \emptyset$$

$$\begin{aligned}
(\overline{A} \cap \overline{B}) \cap (A \cup B) &= (A \cap B \cap A) \cup (A \cap B \cap B) \quad (\text{Law (7)}) \\
&= (\overline{A} \cap A \cap \overline{B}) \cup (\overline{A} \cap \overline{B} \cap B) \\
&= (\emptyset \cap \overline{B}) \cup (\overline{A} \cap \emptyset) \\
&= \emptyset \cup \emptyset \\
&= \emptyset
\end{aligned}$$

□◻◻

3.5 Indexed Sets

Let X be a set, and $A_i \subseteq X$ for all $i \in J$, where J is the *index set*.

If $J = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$:

$$\begin{aligned}
\bigcup_{i=1}^n A_i &:= A_1 \cup A_2 \cup \dots \cup A_n = \{x \mid \exists i \in J (x \in A_i)\} \\
\bigcap_{i=1}^n A_i &:= A_1 \cap A_2 \cap \dots \cap A_n = \{x \mid \forall i \in J (x \in A_i)\}
\end{aligned}$$

$$X_{i=1}^n A_i = \{(a_1, \dots, a_n) \mid a_i \in A_i\}$$

If J is any set:

$$\begin{aligned}
\bigcup_{i \in J} A_i &:= \{x \mid \exists i \in J (x \in A_i)\} \\
\bigcap_{i \in J} A_i &:= \{x \mid \forall i \in J (x \in A_i)\}
\end{aligned}$$

If J is any set, then $(A_i)_{i \in J}$ are pairwise disjoint if and only if:

$$\forall i_1, i_2 \in J, i_1 \neq i_2 \implies A_{i_1} \cap A_{i_2} = \emptyset$$

If J is any set, then $(A_i)_{i \in J}$ forms a (disjoint) decomposition of X if and only if:

$$(A_i)_{i \in J} \text{ are pairwise disjoint and } \bigcup_{i \in J} A_i = X$$

3.5.1 Partitions Laws

Let $A_i, B_j \subseteq X$ for $i \in I$ and $j \in J$. Then the following holds:

- *De Morgan's Laws:*

$$\overline{\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i} = \bigcup_{i \in I} \overline{A_i} \quad \text{and} \quad \overline{\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i} = \bigcap_{i \in I} \overline{A_i}$$

- $\bigcap_{i \in I} A_i \cup \bigcap_{j \in J} B_j = \bigcap_{i,j} (A_i \cup B_j)$ with $\bigcap_{i,j} = \bigcap_{(i,j) \in I \times J}$
- $\bigcup_{i \in I} A_i \cap \bigcup_{j \in J} B_j = \bigcup_{i,j} (A_i \cap B_j)$ with $\bigcup_{i,j} = \bigcup_{(i,j) \in I \times J}$

Here, $I = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, n\}$ and $J = \{1, 2, 3, \dots, m\}$. Then:

$$\begin{aligned}
I \times J &= \{(i, j) \mid 1 \leq i \leq n, 1 \leq j \leq m, i, j \in \mathbb{N}\} \\
&= \{(1, 1), (1, 2), \dots, (1, m), (2, 1), (2, 2), \dots, (2, m), \dots, (n, 1), (n, 2), \dots, (n, m)\}
\end{aligned}$$

3.6 Cardinality

The cardinality of a set is the number of elements in that set.

Let A and B be finite sets with $|A| = n$, $|B| = m$, and let X be the finite universal set. Then the following holds:

3.6.1 Cardinality of a Set

$$A = (A \cap B) \cup (A \setminus B), \quad |A| = |A \cap B| + |A \setminus B|$$

3.6.2 Cardinality of the complements

$$\begin{aligned} |A| &= |X \setminus A| = |X| - |A| \\ A \setminus B &= A \cap (X \setminus B), \quad |A \setminus B| = |A| - |A \cap B| \end{aligned}$$

3.6.3 Cardinality of the Cartesian Product

$$|A \times B| = |A| \cdot |B| = n \cdot m$$

3.6.4 Inclusion-Exclusion Formula for Two Disjoint Sets

$$|A \cup B| = |A| + |B| = n + m$$

3.6.5 Inclusion-Exclusion Formula for Two Non-Disjoint Sets

Let $|A \cap B| = k$, then:

$$|A \cup B| = |A| + |B| - |A \cap B| = n + m - k \quad (\text{since we do not count the intersection twice})$$

3.6.6 Inclusion-Exclusion Formula for Three Non-Disjoint Sets

$$\begin{aligned} |A \cup B \cup C| &= |(A \cup B) \cup C| = |A \cup B| + |C| - |(A \cup B) \cap C| \\ &= |A| + |B| - |A \cap B| + |C| - |(A \cap C) \cup (B \cap C)| \\ &= |A| + |B| + |C| - |A \cap B| - |A \cap C| - |B \cap C| + |A \cap B \cap C| \end{aligned}$$

3.6.7 General Formula for the cardinality of the union of sets

$$\left| \bigcup_{i=1}^n M_i \right| = \sum_{I \subseteq \{1, \dots, n\}, I \neq \emptyset} (-1)^{|I|-1} \left| \bigcap_{i \in I} M_i \right|$$

3.7 The Power Set

The Power Set of a set is the set of all subsets of a given set

$$P(X) := \{M : M \subset X\}$$

Its cardinality is 2^n with n being the number of elements in the original set X .

3.8 Family of Subsets

Let X be a non-empty set. A subset \mathcal{F} of the power set of X is called a set system of X

3.9 Partition

Let X be a non-empty set. A subset \mathcal{F} of the power set of X is called a partition if:

1. $M \neq \emptyset \forall M \in \mathcal{F}$
2. $\bigcap \mathcal{F} = X$
3. $M_1 \cap M_2 \neq \emptyset \implies M_1 = M_2 \forall M_1, M_2 \in \mathcal{F}$

3.9.1 Properties of Partitions

- Every equivalence relation corresponds to a partition:

$$J : \{R : R \text{ is an equivalence relation on } X\} \rightarrow \{F : F \text{ is a partition of } X\}$$

where $J(R) := X/R$ is a bijection.

- If F is a partition of X , then we can define an equivalence relation R_F by:

$$R_F := \{(x, y) \in X \times X : \exists M \in F \text{ such that } x, y \in M\}$$

Then R_F is an equivalence relation on X .

3.10 Family of Subsets Operations

Let \mathcal{F} be a system of sets (a family of subsets) on the set X . We define:

$$\bigcup_{M \in F} M := \bigcup F := \{x \in X : \text{there exists } M \in F \text{ such that } x \in M\},$$

$$\bigcap_{M \in F} M := \bigcap F := \{x \in X : x \in M \text{ for all } M \in F\}.$$

4 Relations, Maps and Functions

A *relation* in mathematics is a connection or relationship between elements of two sets. It's formally defined as a subset of the Cartesian product of the sets.

For example, if we have sets A and B , a relation R from A to B consists of ordered pairs (a, b) where $a \in A$ and $b \in B$, such that a is related to b according to some rule or property.

Common types of relations include:

- Functions (special relations where each input has exactly one output)
- Equivalence relations (reflexive, symmetric, and transitive)
- Partial orders (reflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive)

Relations can be represented using diagrams, matrices, or sets of ordered pairs, and they're fundamental to many areas of mathematics including algebra, calculus, and discrete mathematics.

4.1 Types of relations

Let A be a set and X be a relation on A .

- *Reflexive*: $\forall a \in A : (a, a) \in X$ (or written as $a \sim a$)
- *Irreflexive*: $\forall a \in A : (a, a) \notin X$
- *Symmetric*: $\forall a, b \in A : (a, b) \in X \rightarrow (b, a) \in X$ (or written as $(a \sim b) \Rightarrow (b \sim a)$)
- *Antisymmetric*: $\forall a, b \in A : (a, b) \in X \text{ and } (b, a) \in X \rightarrow a = b$
- *Transitive*: $\forall a, b, c \in A : (a, b) \in X \text{ and } (b, c) \in X \rightarrow (a, c) \in X$ (or written as $(a \sim b) \text{ and } (b \sim c) \Rightarrow (a \sim c)$)
- *Total*: $\forall a, b \in A : a \neq b \rightarrow (a, b) \in X \text{ or } (b, a) \in X$

4.2 Equivalence relation

An *equivalence relation* is a relation that is symmetric, transitive and reflexive.

Example:

$$R := \{(a, b) \in \mathbb{N} \times \mathbb{N} : a = b\}$$

4.3 The Graph

$$\text{graph}(f) := \{(x, f(x)) : x \in X\}$$

4.4 The identity

$$\text{id}(f) := \text{id}_X := \{(x, x) : x \in X\}$$

4.5 Image

The *image* (or *range*) of a relation R from set A to set B is the set of all elements in B that are related to at least one element in A . Formally, if $R \subseteq A \times B$ is a relation, then the image of R is defined as:

$$\text{Im}(R) = \{b \in B \mid \exists a \in A \text{ such that } (a, b) \in R\}$$

In other words, the image consists of all the output values that appear in the ordered pairs of the relation. For example, if $R = \{(1, 4), (2, 5), (3, 4), (2, 6)\}$, then $\text{Im}(R) = \{4, 5, 6\}$.

4.6 Domain

The *domain* of a relation R from set A to set B is the set of all elements in A that are related to at least one element in B . Formally, if $R \subseteq A \times B$ is a relation, then the domain of R is defined as:

$$\text{Dom}(R) = \{a \in A \mid \exists b \in B \text{ such that } (a, b) \in R\}$$

In other words, the domain consists of all the input values that appear in the ordered pairs of the relation. For example, if $R = \{(1, 4), (2, 5), (3, 4), (2, 6)\}$, then $\text{Dom}(R) = \{1, 2, 3\}$.

4.7 Equivalence Class

Let \sim be an equivalence relation on a set A . For an element $x \in A$, the *equivalence class* of x , denoted by $[x]$, is the set of all elements in A that are equivalent to x . Formally, it is defined as:

$$[x] := \{y \in A \mid x \sim y\} \subseteq A$$

In other words, the equivalence class of x contains all elements y in A such that x is related to y under the equivalence relation \sim .

4.8 Quotient Space

Let \sim be an equivalence relation on a set A . The *quotient space* of A by \sim , denoted by A/\sim (or sometimes A/R), is the set of all distinct equivalence classes of elements in A . Formally, it is defined as:

$$A/\sim := \{[x] \mid x \in A\}$$

The quotient space A/\sim is a partition of the original set A into disjoint equivalence classes. Each element of the quotient space is an equivalence class $[x]$, which itself is a subset of A .

4.9 Definition of a Map

A map (or function) from a set A to a set B , denoted as $f : A \rightarrow B$, is a relation that associates each element of the set A with exactly one element of the set B .

Formally, a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is a subset of $A \times B$ such that for every $a \in A$, there exists exactly one $b \in B$ where $(a, b) \in f$. We typically write $f(a) = b$ to indicate that f maps the element a to the element b .

Example:

Let $A = \{1, 2, 3\}$ and $B = \{x, y, z\}$. A possible function $f : A \rightarrow B$ could be defined as:

$$f(1) = x, \quad f(2) = y, \quad f(3) = z$$

This function can also be represented as the set of ordered pairs $\{(1, x), (2, y), (3, z)\}$.

4.10 Composition of Maps

The composition of two functions is the operation of applying one function to the result of another function. If we have functions $f : A \rightarrow B$ and $g : B \rightarrow C$, then the composition of g and f , denoted as $g \circ f$ (read as g composed with f), is a function from A to C defined by:

$$(g \circ f)(a) = g(f(a)) \quad \text{for all } a \in A$$

The composition applies f first, then applies g to the result. Note that the co-domain of f must match the domain of g for the composition to be defined.

Example:

Let $f : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by $f(x) = x^2$ and $g : \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be defined by $g(x) = x + 3$. Then:

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x)) = g(x^2) = x^2 + 3$$

$$(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = f(x+3) = (x+3)^2 = x^2 + 6x + 9$$

Note that $g \circ f \neq f \circ g$ in general, which shows that function composition is not commutative.

4.11 Types of Functions

4.11.1 Injective Functions

An injective function (also called a one-to-one function) is a function that maps distinct elements from the domain to distinct elements in the co-domain.

Formally, a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is injective if for all $a_1, a_2 \in A$:

$$a_1 \neq a_2 \rightarrow f(a_1) \neq f(a_2)$$

Equivalently, using the contrapositive:

$$f(a_1) = f(a_2) \rightarrow a_1 = a_2$$

4.11.2 Surjective Functions

A surjective function (also called an onto function) is a function whose image equals its co-domain, meaning that every element in the co-domain has at least one pre-image in the domain.

Formally, a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is surjective if:

$$\forall b \in B, \exists a \in A \text{ such that } f(a) = b$$

4.11.3 Bijection Functions

A bijective function (also called a one-to-one correspondence) is a function that is both injective and surjective. In other words, every element in the co-domain is mapped to by exactly one element in the domain.

Formally, a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is bijective if it is both:

- Injective: $\forall a_1, a_2 \in A, a_1 \neq a_2 \rightarrow f(a_1) \neq f(a_2)$
- Surjective: $\forall b \in B, \exists a \in A \text{ such that } f(a) = b$

Bijection functions establish a perfect pairing between elements of the domain and co-domain, where each element in the domain corresponds to exactly one element in the co-domain, and vice versa. A bijection allows us to define an inverse function $f^{-1} : B \rightarrow A$.

4.12 Propositions on Images and Pre-images under Set Operations

Let $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a function.

4.12.1 Union and Cut Sets

- For subsets $A_1, A_2 \subseteq X$, we have:

$$f(A_1 \cup A_2) = f(A_1) \cup f(A_2) \quad \text{and} \quad f(A_1 \cap A_2) \subseteq f(A_1) \cap f(A_2)$$

- For subsets $B_1, B_2 \subseteq Y$, we have:

$$f^{-1}(B_1 \cup B_2) = f^{-1}(B_1) \cup f^{-1}(B_2) \quad \text{and} \quad f^{-1}(B_1 \cap B_2) = f^{-1}(B_1) \cap f^{-1}(B_2)$$

Proof:

We prove the second part of 1 and the first part of 2.

Let $y \in f(A_1 \cap A_2)$. Then there exists $x \in A_1 \cap A_2$ such that $f(x) = y$. Since $x \in A_1$ and $x \in A_2$, it follows that $y \in f(A_1)$ and $y \in f(A_2)$, hence $y \in f(A_1) \cap f(A_2)$. Therefore, every element of $f(A_1 \cap A_2)$ is also an element of $f(A_1) \cap f(A_2)$, so:

$$f(A_1 \cap A_2) \subseteq f(A_1) \cap f(A_2)$$

Let $x \in f^{-1}(B_1 \cup B_2)$. Then $f(x) \in B_1 \cup B_2$, which means $f(x) \in B_1$ or $f(x) \in B_2$. Thus, $x \in f^{-1}(B_1)$ or $x \in f^{-1}(B_2)$, which implies:

$$x \in f^{-1}(B_1) \cup f^{-1}(B_2)$$

Hence, both sets contain the same elements and are therefore, equal:

$$f^{-1}(B_1 \cup B_2) = f^{-1}(B_1) \cup f^{-1}(B_2)$$

□◻◻

4.12.2 Union and Cut of the whole Domain and Range

Let $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a function.

- Let \mathcal{F} be a collection of subsets of X . Then:

$$f\left(\bigcup_{A \in \mathcal{F}} A\right) = \bigcup_{A \in \mathcal{F}} f(A) \quad \text{and} \quad f\left(\bigcap_{A \in \mathcal{F}} A\right) \subseteq \bigcap_{A \in \mathcal{F}} f(A)$$

- Let \mathcal{G} be a collection of subsets of Y . Then:

$$f^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{G}} B\right) = \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{G}} f^{-1}(B) \quad \text{and} \quad f^{-1}\left(\bigcap_{B \in \mathcal{G}} B\right) = \bigcap_{B \in \mathcal{G}} f^{-1}(B)$$

Proof (partial):

We show the first statement of part (ii); the rest follows analogously.

Let $x \in f^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{G}} B\right)$. Then:

$$f(x) \in \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{G}} B \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \exists B \in \mathcal{G} \text{ such that } f(x) \in B \quad \Leftrightarrow \quad \exists B \in \mathcal{G} \text{ such that } x \in f^{-1}(B)$$

Hence:

$$x \in \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{G}} f^{-1}(B)$$

It follows that:

$$f^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{G}} B\right) = \bigcup_{B \in \mathcal{G}} f^{-1}(B)$$

□◻◻

4.13 Inverse of a Function

The *inverse* of a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ is a function $f^{-1} : B \rightarrow A$ that reverses the operation of f . That is, if f maps an element $a \in A$ to an element $b \in B$, then the inverse function f^{-1} maps b back to a . Formally, a function $f : A \rightarrow B$ has an inverse $f^{-1} : B \rightarrow A$ if and only if f is bijective (both injective and surjective). The inverse function satisfies the following properties:

$$f^{-1}(f(a)) = a \quad \text{for all } a \in A$$

$$f(f^{-1}(b)) = b \quad \text{for all } b \in B$$

In other words, composing a function with its inverse yields the identity function. That is:

$$f^{-1} \circ f = id_A \quad \text{and} \quad f \circ f^{-1} = id_B$$

Where id_A and id_B are the identity functions on sets A and B , respectively.

4.13.1 Steps to Find the Inverse of a Function

To find the inverse of a function $f(x)$, follow these steps:

1. Replace $f(x)$ with y : $y = f(x)$
2. Interchange the variables x and y : $x = f(y)$
3. Solve for y in terms of x : $y = f^{-1}(x)$
4. Verify that the resulting function is indeed the inverse by checking that $f^{-1}(f(x)) = x$ and $f(f^{-1}(x)) = x$

Example:

Let's apply the steps above to find the inverse of $f(x) = 2x + 3$.

Step 1: Replace $f(x)$ with y

$$y = 2x + 3$$

Step 2: Interchange the variables x and y

$$x = 2y + 3$$

Step 3: Solve for y in terms of x

$$\begin{aligned}x &= 2y + 3 \\x - 3 &= 2y \\ \frac{x - 3}{2} &= y\end{aligned}$$

So, the inverse function is:

$$f^{-1}(x) = \frac{x - 3}{2}$$

Step 4: Verify that $f^{-1}(f(x)) = x$ and $f(f^{-1}(x)) = x$

Let's verify $f^{-1}(f(x)) = x$:

$$\begin{aligned}f^{-1}(f(x)) &= f^{-1}(2x + 3) \\&= \frac{(2x + 3) - 3}{2} \\&= \frac{2x}{2} \\&= x\end{aligned}$$

And let's verify $f(f^{-1}(x)) = x$:

$$\begin{aligned}f(f^{-1}(x)) &= f\left(\frac{x - 3}{2}\right) \\&= 2\left(\frac{x - 3}{2}\right) + 3 \\&= (x - 3) + 3 \\&= x\end{aligned}$$

Since both compositions yield the identity function, $f^{-1}(x) = \frac{x-3}{2}$ is indeed the inverse of $f(x) = 2x + 3$.

4.13.2 Properties of the Inverse Function

Let $f : X \rightarrow Y$ be a function.

- Assume $x \sim y$ if $f(x) = f(y)$ so \sim is an equivalence relation.
- Consider the quotient set $X_f := X / \sim$, where \sim is the equivalence relation defined by $x \sim x' \iff f(x) = f(x')$. Let $q_f : X \rightarrow X_f$ be the canonical projection defined by $q_f(x) = [x]$, and let $\iota_f : f(X) \rightarrow Y$ be the inclusion map, $y \mapsto y$. Then the function

$$\hat{f} : X_f \rightarrow f(X), \quad [x] \mapsto f(x)$$

is a bijection, and the original map f can be written as the composition

$$f = \iota_f \circ \hat{f} \circ q_f.$$

Here, q_f is surjective, \hat{f} is bijective, and ι_f is injective. This yields the following commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{f} & Y \\ \downarrow q_f & & \uparrow \iota_f \\ X_f & \xrightarrow{\hat{f}} & f(X) \end{array}$$

4.14 Transformations of a Function

Transformations modify the appearance of a function's graph without altering its basic shape. Here, we examine how different algebraic changes to a function $f(x)$ affect its graph:

Vertical Translation: $f(x) + a$

- Shifts the graph *upward* if $a > 0$, and *downward* if $a < 0$.
- Each point on the graph moves vertically by a units.

Horizontal Translation: $f(x + a)$

- Shifts the graph *left* if $a > 0$, and *right* if $a < 0$.
- This is opposite of what might be expected: adding to x shifts the graph in the negative direction.

Vertical Scaling (Stretch/Compression): $af(x)$

- If $|a| > 1$: the graph is *stretched* vertically (taller and narrower).
- If $0 < |a| < 1$: the graph is *compressed* vertically (shorter and wider).
- If $a < 0$: includes a reflection across the x -axis.

Horizontal Scaling (Stretch/Compression): $f(ax)$

- If $|a| > 1$: the graph is *compressed* horizontally (narrower).
- If $0 < |a| < 1$: the graph is *stretched* horizontally (wider).
- If $a < 0$: includes a reflection across the y -axis.

Reflection across the x -axis: $-f(x)$

- Flips the graph upside-down over the x -axis.
- Each point (x, y) becomes $(x, -y)$.

Reflection across the y -axis: $f(-x)$

- Flips the graph left-to-right over the y -axis.
- Each point (x, y) becomes $(-x, y)$.

5 Mathematical Proofs

In this section I will provide with some examples of different types of proofs.

5.1 Proof by Direct Argument

For any integer n , if n is even, then n^2 is even.

We will prove this theorem by direct argument.

Assume n is an even integer. Then we can write $n = 2k$ for some integer k .

Now, we compute n^2 :

$$n^2 = (2k)^2 = 4k^2 = 2(2k^2)$$

This shows that n^2 is even, as it can be expressed as $2m$ where $m = 2k^2$ is an integer. Therefore, we conclude that if n is even, then n^2 is even.

□◻◻

5.2 Proof by Contradiction

If n is an integer such that n^2 is even, then n is even.

We will prove this theorem by contradiction. Assume that n is an integer such that n^2 is even, but n is odd. Then we can write $n = 2k + 1$ for some integer k .

Now, we compute n^2 :

$$n^2 = (2k + 1)^2 = 4k^2 + 4k + 1 = 2(2k^2 + 2k) + 1$$

This shows that n^2 is odd, which contradicts our assumption that n^2 is even. Therefore, our assumption that n is odd must be false, and thus, n must be even.

□◻◻

5.3 Proof by Induction

For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the sum of the first n positive integers is given by:

$$S(n) = 1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n = \frac{n(n+1)}{2}$$

We will prove this theorem by induction on n .

Base Case: For $n = 1$:

$$S(1) = 1 = \frac{1(1+1)}{2}$$

The base case holds.

Inductive Step: Assume that the statement holds for some $n = k$, i.e., assume that:

$$S(k) = 1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + k = \frac{k(k+1)}{2}$$

We need to show that the statement holds for $n = k + 1$:

$$S(k+1) = S(k) + (k+1)$$

By the inductive hypothesis, we have:

$$\begin{aligned}
S(k+1) &= \frac{k(k+1)}{2} + (k+1) \\
&= \frac{k(k+1)}{2} + \frac{2(k+1)}{2} \\
&= \frac{k(k+1) + 2(k+1)}{2} \\
&= \frac{(k+1)(k+2)}{2}
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the statement holds for $n = k + 1$. By the principle of mathematical induction, the statement holds for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$.

□◻◻

5.4 Proof by Exhaustion

The only integer solutions to the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 1$ are $(0, 1), (1, 0), (0, -1), (-1, 0)$.

We will prove this theorem by exhaustion. We will check all possible integer values of x and y such that $x^2 + y^2 = 1$.

The possible integer values for x and y are $-1, 0, 1$. We will check each case:

If $x = 0$:

Then $y^2 = 1$ gives $y = 1$ or $y = -1$.

Solutions: $(0, 1), (0, -1)$.

If $x = 1$:

Then $y^2 = 0$ gives $y = 0$.

Solution: $(1, 0)$.

If $x = -1$:

Then $y^2 = 0$ gives $y = 0$.

Solution: $(-1, 0)$.

Thus, the only integer solutions to the equation are:

$$(0, 1), (1, 0), (0, -1), (-1, 0)$$

□◻◻

5.5 Proof by Cases

For any integer n , n^2 is even if and only if n is even.

We will prove this theorem by cases.

Case 1: Assume n is even. Then we can write $n = 2k$ for some integer k .

Now, we compute n^2 :

$$n^2 = (2k)^2 = 4k^2 = 2(2k^2)$$

This shows that n^2 is even.

Case 2: Assume n is odd. Then we can write $n = 2k + 1$ for some integer k .

Now, we compute n^2 :

$$n^2 = (2k + 1)^2 = 4k^2 + 4k + 1 = 2(2k^2 + 2k) + 1$$

This shows that n^2 is odd.

Since both cases have been considered, we conclude that n^2 is even if and only if n is even.

□◻◻

5.6 Proof by Construction

There exists an irrational number x such that x^2 is rational.

We will construct an irrational number x such that x^2 is rational.

Let $x = \sqrt{2}$. We know that $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational. Now, we compute x^2 :

$$x^2 = (\sqrt{2})^2 = 2$$

Since 2 is a rational number, we have constructed an irrational number $x = \sqrt{2}$ such that $x^2 = 2$ is rational. Therefore, the theorem is proved.

□◻◻

5.7 Proof by Counterexample

The statement all prime numbers are odd is false.

To prove this theorem, we will provide a counterexample.

The number 2 is a prime number, as its only divisors are 1 and 2. However, 2 is even, which contradicts the statement that all prime numbers are odd.

Therefore, the statement All prime numbers are odd is false.

□◻◻

5.8 Proof by Contrapositive

If n is an integer such that n^2 is odd, then n is odd.

We will prove this theorem by contrapositive. The contrapositive of the statement is: If n is an integer such that n is even, then n^2 is even.

Assume n is even. Then we can write $n = 2k$ for some integer k .

Now, we compute n^2 :

$$n^2 = (2k)^2 = 4k^2 = 2(2k^2)$$

This shows that n^2 is even.

Since the contrapositive statement is true, the original statement If n^2 is odd, then n is odd is also true.

□◻◻

5.9 Proof by Reduction to Absurdity

The square root of 2 is irrational.

We will prove this theorem by reduction to absurdity. Assume that $\sqrt{2}$ is rational. Then we can write:

$$\sqrt{2} = \frac{p}{q}$$

Where p and q are integers with no common factors (i.e., the fraction is in the simplest form).

Squaring both sides gives:

$$2 = \frac{p^2}{q^2}$$

Rearranging gives:

$$p^2 = 2q^2$$

This implies that p^2 is even, and therefore, p must be even (since the square of an odd number is odd). Let $p = 2k$ for some integer k . Substituting this back into the equation gives:

$$\begin{aligned}(2k)^2 &= 2q^2 \\ 4k^2 &= 2q^2 \\ 2k^2 &= q^2\end{aligned}$$

This implies that q^2 is even, and therefore, q must also be even. Since both p and q are even, they have a common factor of 2, which contradicts our assumption that p and q have no common factors. Therefore, our assumption that $\sqrt{2}$ is rational must be false, and thus, $\sqrt{2}$ is irrational.

□◻◻

5.10 Proof by Analogy

The set of rational numbers is dense in the set of real numbers.

We will prove this theorem by analogy.

Consider the set of rational numbers \mathbb{Q} and the set of real numbers \mathbb{R} . The density of \mathbb{Q} in \mathbb{R} means that between any two real numbers, there exists a rational number. For example, between the real numbers 1 and 2, we can find the rational number $\frac{3}{2} = 1.5$. Similarly, between any two real numbers a and b (where $a < b$), we can find a rational number $r = \frac{a+b}{2}$.

This shows that the set of rational numbers is dense in the set of real numbers. Therefore, the theorem is proved by analogy.

□◻◻

6 The Natural Numbers

In this section we will take a look at the natural numbers, which are the numbers we use for counting. The natural numbers are defined as follows:

We will now define the set of natural numbers, \mathbb{N} , via the following 9 axioms. These axioms are known as the *Peano Axioms*. The first 4 axioms define equality on the set \mathbb{N} .

- I. For every $x \in \mathbb{N}$, we have $x = x$. (Reflexivity)
- II. For every $x, y \in \mathbb{N}$, if $x = y$ then $y = x$. (Symmetry)
- III. For every $x, y, z \in \mathbb{N}$, if $x = y$ and $y = z$ then $x = z$. (Transitivity)
- IV. For all x, y , if $x \in \mathbb{N}$ and $x = y$, then $y \in \mathbb{N}$. (Closure of Equality)

The remaining 5 axioms define the structure of \mathbb{N} :

- V. $1 \in \mathbb{N}$
- VI. If $x \in \mathbb{N}$, then the successor $S(x) \in \mathbb{N}$.
- VII. There is no $x \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $S(x) = 1$.
- VIII. For all $x, y \in \mathbb{N}$, if $S(x) = S(y)$, then $x = y$.
- IX. Let $P(x)$ be a statement about the natural number x . If:
 - $P(1)$ is true, and
 - for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, if $P(n)$ is true, then $P(S(n))$ is also true,
 then $P(x)$ is true for all $x \in \mathbb{N}$. (Mathematical Induction)

As shorthand, we denote:

$$S(1) = 2, \quad S(S(1)) = 3, \quad S(S(S(1))) = 4, \quad \text{and so on.}$$

6.1 Order in Fields

An *ordered field* is a field F equipped with a total order $<$ that is compatible with the field operations $+$ and \cdot . That is, the order satisfies both algebraic and ordering properties.

6.1.1 Order Axioms for Fields

A field F is called an *ordered field* if it satisfies the following properties for all $a, b, c \in F$:

- I. *Trichotomy*: Exactly one of the following holds:

$$a < b, \quad a = b, \quad a > b$$
- II. *Transitivity*: If $a < b$ and $b < c$, then $a < c$.
- III. *Additive Compatibility*: If $a < b$, then $a + c < b + c$.
- IV. *Multiplicative Compatibility*: If $0 < a$ and $0 < b$, then $0 < ab$.

These properties ensure that arithmetic operations respect the order structure.

6.1.2 Consequences of the Order Axioms

- $a < b \Rightarrow -b < -a$
- $a < b \wedge c < 0 \Rightarrow ac > bc$
- Squares are always non-negative: $a^2 \geq 0$
- The order is total: any two elements are comparable

6.1.3 Examples of Ordered Fields

- \mathbb{Q} : Rational numbers with the usual order
- \mathbb{R} : Real numbers with the usual order
- \mathbb{C} : Complex numbers are **not** an ordered field, since $i^2 = -1 < 0$ would violate positivity of squares

6.2 Propositions and Proofs

6.2.1 Proposition 1: $n \neq m \implies S(n) \neq S(m)$

Proof:

We will prove this by contradiction. Assume $n \neq m$ and $S(n) = S(m)$. By Axiom 8, we have $n = m$, which is a contradiction. Therefore, $S(n) \neq S(m)$.

6.2.2 Proposition 2: For any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \neq S(n)$

Proof:

$$M = \{n \in \mathbb{N} \mid n \neq S(n)\}$$

By $1 \neq S(1)$ for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$, this implies that 1 is part of the set M . This implies that $S(n) \neq S(S(n)) \implies S(n) \in M$ By Axiom 9 $M = \mathbb{N}$

6.2.3 Proposition 3: $n \neq 1 \exists m \in \mathbb{N} \mid n = S(m)$

Proof:

$$M = \{1\} \cup \{n \in \mathbb{N} \mid \text{Proposition 3 is true}\}$$

We know that 1 is in the set M . And by proposition 1 we know that

$$S(n) = S(S(m)) \implies S(n) \in M$$

And by Axiom 9 we know that $M = \mathbb{N}$

6.3 Definition of Addition in \mathbb{N}

For any pair $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$ there is a unique way to define

$$Add(n, m) = n + m$$

1. **Base Case:** $n + 1 = S(n)$
2. **Inductive Step:** $n + S(m) = S(n + m) \iff S(n + m)$

Uniqueness:

Suppose: A & B satisfy our conditions. Fix n and then let $M = \{m \in \mathbb{N} \mid A(n, m) = B(n, m)\}$. Then

$$A(n, 1) = S(n) = B(n, 1) \implies 1 \in M$$

$$m \in M \implies A(n, m) = B(n, m) \implies A(n, S(m)) = S(A(n, m)) = S(B(n, m)) = B(n, S(m))$$

$$\implies A(n, S(m)) = B(n, S(m))$$

by Axiom 9 we know that $M = \mathbb{N}$ and $A = B$

Construction: For $n = 1$ Define $A(n, m) = S(m)$

1. $A(n, 1) = S(n) = S(1)$
2. $A(n, S(m)) = S(A(n, m)) = S(S(m))$

Define: $A(S(n), S(m)) = S(A(n, m))$

1. $A(S(n), 1) = S(A(n, 1)) = S(S(n))$
2. $A(S(n), S(m)) = S(A(n, m)) = S(S(m))$

Commutativity of Addition:

The proposition says $n + m = m + n$ for any $n, m \in \mathbb{N}$. We will prove this by induction on m . Fix n and consider $M = \{n \in \mathbb{N} \mid A(n, m) = A(m, n)\}$. Now recall that $A(n, 1) = S(n)$

For $n = 1$:

$$A(n, 1) = S(1) = A(1, n) \implies 1 \in \mathbb{N}$$

also $A(n, k) = 1 + k \implies 1 + m = S(m) \implies 1 + m = m + 1 \implies 1 \in \mathbb{N}$

Suppose: $n \in \mathbb{N} \implies n + m = m + n$ or $A(n, m) = A(m, n)$

By construction $A(S(n), m) = S(A(n, m))$ and by definition $A(S(n), m) = S(A(n, m)) = A(m, S(n)) = S(n) + m = m + S(n) \implies S(n) \in M \implies$ by induction $M = \mathbb{N}$.

7 The Archimedean Principle

For any real number $x \in \mathbb{R}$, there exists a natural number $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $n > x$.

In other words, no matter how large a real number you choose, there is always a natural number that is larger. Similarly, for any positive real number $\epsilon > 0$, there exists a natural number $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\frac{1}{n} < \epsilon$.

Proof:

We prove the Archimedean Principle by contradiction.

Assume that there exists some real number $x \in \mathbb{R}$ such that $n \leq x$ for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$. That is, x is an upper bound for the set $\mathbb{N} \subset \mathbb{R}$.

Let $S = \sup(\mathbb{N})$, the least upper bound of \mathbb{N} . Then $S - 1 < \sup(\mathbb{N})$, so $S - 1$ is not an upper bound of \mathbb{N} . Hence, there exists $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that:

$$n_0 > S - 1 \Rightarrow n_0 + 1 > S$$

But $n_0 + 1 \in \mathbb{N}$, which contradicts the assumption that S is an upper bound of \mathbb{N} . Therefore, our assumption must be false, and the theorem is proven.

□◻◻

7.1 Equivalent Formulations

The Archimedean Principle is often stated in different but equivalent ways:

- For any $\epsilon > 0$, there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $\frac{1}{n} < \epsilon$.
- For any $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$ with $a > 0$, there exists $n \in \mathbb{N}$ such that $na > b$.

7.2 Applications

1. **Density of Rational Numbers:** The Archimedean Principle helps in proving that between any two real numbers, there exists a rational number.
2. **Limits and Infinitesimals:** It ensures that sequences like $\{\frac{1}{n}\}$ converge to 0, foundational in real analysis and calculus.
3. **Bounding Functions:** It is used in analysis to show that functions do not grow faster than natural numbers in certain contexts.
4. **Non-Existence of Infinitely Small Numbers:** The principle implies that real numbers do not contain infinitesimals (nonzero numbers smaller than all $\frac{1}{n}$), distinguishing \mathbb{R} from non-standard number systems.

8 Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic

- The Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic says that every integer greater than 1 can be factored uniquely into a product of primes.
- Euclid's lemma says that if a prime divides a product of two numbers, it must divide at least one of the numbers.
- The least common multiple $[a, b]$ of nonzero integers a and b is the smallest positive integer divisible by both a and b .

8.1 Fundamental Theorem of Arithmetic

Every integer greater than 1 can be written in the form

$$p_1^{n_1} p_2^{n_2} \cdots p_k^{n_k}$$

Where $n_i \geq 0$ and the p_i are distinct primes. The factorization is unique, except possibly for the order of the factors.

Example.

$$4312 = 2 \cdot 2156 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 1078 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 539 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 7 \cdot 77 = 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 \cdot 7 \cdot 7 \cdot 11$$

That is,

$$4312 = 2^3 \cdot 7^2 \cdot 11$$

8.2 Lemmas

Lemma

If $m \mid pq$ and $\gcd(m, p) = 1$, then $m \mid q$.

Proof:

Write $1 = \gcd(m, p) = am + bp$ for some $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$. Then

$$q = amq + bpq$$

Since $m \mid amq$ and $m \mid bpq$ (because $m \mid pq$), we conclude $m \mid q$.

□

Lemma

If p is prime and $p \mid a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n$, then $p \mid a_i$ for some i .

Proof (Case $n = 2$):

Suppose $p \mid a_1 a_2$, and $p \nmid a_1$. Then $\gcd(p, a_1) = 1$, and by the previous lemma, $p \mid a_2$.

For general $n > 2$: Assume the result is true for $n-1$. Suppose $p \mid a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n$. Group as $(a_1 a_2 \cdots a_{n-1}) a_n$.

By the $n = 2$ case, either $p \mid a_n$ or $p \mid a_1 a_2 \cdots a_{n-1}$, and by induction, $p \mid a_i$ for some i .

□

8.3 Proof of the Fundamental Theorem

Existence:

Use induction on $n > 1$. Base case: $n = 2$ is prime.

Inductive step: If n is prime, done. Otherwise, $n = ab$, with $1 < a, b < n$. By induction, both a and b factor into primes, so n does too.

Uniqueness:

Suppose:

$$p_1^{m_1} \cdots p_j^{m_j} = q_1^{n_1} \cdots q_k^{n_k}$$

With all p_i and q_i distinct primes.

Since p_1 divides the LHS, it divides the RHS. So $p_1 \mid q_i^{n_i}$ for some i , hence $p_1 = q_i$. Re-order so $p_1 = q_1$. Then:

If $m_1 > n_1$, divide both sides by $q_1^{n_1}$:

$$p_1^{m_1-n_1} \cdots p_j^{m_j} = q_2^{n_2} \cdots q_k^{n_k}$$

But then p_1 divides LHS but not RHS, contradiction. So $m_1 = n_1$. Cancel and repeat.

Eventually, all p_i match with some q_i , and the exponents are equal. So the factorizations are the same up to order.

□◻◻

8.4 Least Common Multiple

The least common multiple of a and b , denoted $[a, b]$, is the smallest positive integer divisible by both.

Example:

$$[6, 4] = 12, \quad [33, 15] = 165$$

Fact:

$$[a, b] \cdot \gcd(a, b) = ab$$

Let:

$$a = p_1 \cdots p_l q_1 \cdots q_m, \quad b = q_1 \cdots q_m r_1 \cdots r_n$$

Then:

$$\begin{aligned} \gcd(a, b) &= q_1 \cdots q_m \\ [a, b] &= p_1 \cdots p_l q_1 \cdots q_m r_1 \cdots r_n \\ ab &= p_1 \cdots p_l q_1^2 \cdots q_m^2 r_1 \cdots r_n \end{aligned}$$

So:

$$[a, b] \cdot \gcd(a, b) = ab$$

Example:

$$\gcd(36, 90) = 18, \quad [36, 90] = 180, \quad 36 \cdot 90 = 3240 = 18 \cdot 180$$

9 Real Numbers

Let K be an ordered field. On the set

$$\text{ch}(K) := \{x : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow K \mid x \text{ is a Cauchy sequence}\}$$

and on the set

$$c(K) := \{x : \mathbb{N} \rightarrow K \mid x \text{ is a convergent sequence}\}$$

we can define an addition and a multiplication using 1.2.55 and 1.2.57 as follows:

If $x = (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $y = (y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are Cauchy sequences (respectively, convergent sequences), then their sum is defined as

$$x + y := (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} + (y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} := (x_n + y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$$

and their product is defined as

$$x \cdot y := (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \cdot (y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} := (x_n \cdot y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$$

The sum and product satisfy all field axioms except for the existence of the multiplicative inverse. The zero element is $0_{\mathbb{N}} = (0, 0, \dots)$, the unit element is $1_{\mathbb{N}} = (1, 1, \dots)$, and the additive inverse of $x = (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ is $-x = (-x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$. We demonstrate the distributive law as an example:

Let $x = (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}, y = (y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}, z = (z_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ be Cauchy sequences (convergent sequences). Then we have:

$$\begin{aligned} x(y + z) &= (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \cdot ((y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} + (z_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}) \\ &= (x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \cdot (y_n + z_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \\ &= (x_n(y_n + z_n))_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \\ &= (x_n y_n + x_n z_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \\ &= (x_n y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} + (x_n z_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \\ &= xy + xz. \end{aligned}$$

We now aim to construct the ordered field \mathbb{R} of the real numbers; it will have the following properties:

- There exists an injective mapping $j : \mathbb{Q} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ which respects addition, multiplication, and order, such that the following holds:

For all $z, w \in \mathbb{R}$ with $z < w$, there exists an $x \in \mathbb{Q}$ such that

$$z < j(x) < w$$

- Every Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R} converges.

Via j , we identify \mathbb{Q} with $j(\mathbb{Q})$ and consider \mathbb{Q} as a subset of \mathbb{R} . In \mathbb{R} , the following will additionally hold:

- For all $y > 0$ and $n \in \mathbb{N}$, the equation $x^n = y$ has a solution.
- Every bounded above subset of \mathbb{R} has a supremum.

We define the following relation on the set $\text{ch}(\mathbb{Q})$ of all Cauchy sequences in \mathbb{Q} :

$$x \sim y \quad \text{if and only if} \quad x - y \text{ is a null sequence}$$

That is, $(x_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}} \sim (y_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ if and only if

$$x_n - y_n \rightarrow 0 \quad (n \rightarrow \infty)$$

9.1 Definition

The set

$$\mathbb{R} := \{[x]_{\sim} : x \in \text{ch}(\mathbb{Q})\}$$

is called the set of real numbers.

Analogous to the construction of the rational numbers, the real numbers consist of equivalence classes. Roughly speaking, an equivalence class consists of those Cauchy sequences in \mathbb{Q} that exhibit the same limit behavior.

Equipped with the addition

$$+ : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad [x], [y] \mapsto [x] + [y] := [x + y]$$

and the multiplication

$$\cdot : \mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}, \quad [x], [y] \mapsto [x] \cdot [y] := [xy]$$

\mathbb{R} is a field. The zero element is $[0_{\mathbb{N}}]$, and the unit element is $[1_{\mathbb{N}}]$.

10 Complex Numbers

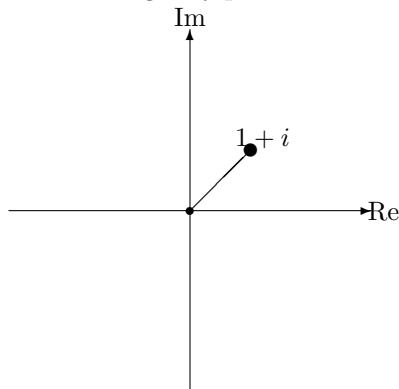
A complex number is a number of the form:

$$z = a + bi,$$

where $a, b \in \mathbb{R}$, and i is the imaginary unit defined by $i^2 = -1$. The set of all complex numbers is denoted by \mathbb{C} .

10.1 The Complex Plane

Complex numbers can be represented graphically in the *complex plane*, where the horizontal axis represents the real part and the vertical axis the imaginary part.



The point $1 + i$ is located at (1,1), showing 1 unit on the real axis and 1 unit on the imaginary axis.

10.2 Conjugate of a Complex Number

The *conjugate* of a complex number $z = a + bi$ is denoted \bar{z} and is defined as:

$$\bar{z} = a - bi$$

Geometrically, it reflects the point z across the real axis in the complex plane. Conjugates are useful in division and in finding the modulus, since:

$$z \cdot \bar{z} = a^2 + b^2 = |z|^2$$

10.3 Operations in Cartesian Coordinates

Let $z_1 = a + bi$ and $z_2 = c + di$ be two complex numbers.

Addition:

$$z_1 + z_2 = (a + c) + (b + d)i$$

Multiplication:

$$z_1 \cdot z_2 = (ac - bd) + (ad + bc)i$$

Quotient:

$$\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{(a + bi)(c - di)}{(c + di)(c - di)} = \frac{(a + bi)(c - di)}{c^2 + d^2} = \frac{(ac + bd) + (bc - ad)i}{c^2 + d^2}$$

10.4 Polar Coordinates

A complex number can also be expressed in polar form as:

$$z = r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta) = re^{i\theta},$$

where:

$$r = |z| = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \quad (\text{modulus})$$
$$\theta = \arg(z) = \tan^{-1} \left(\frac{b}{a} \right) \quad (\text{argument})$$

The value of θ depends on the quadrant where the complex number lies:

- Quadrant I: $a > 0, b > 0$ - use $\tan^{-1}(b/a)$
- Quadrant II: $a < 0, b > 0$ — add π to $\tan^{-1}(b/a)$
- Quadrant III: $a < 0, b < 0$ — add π to $\tan^{-1}(b/a)$
- Quadrant IV: $a > 0, b < 0$ — use $\tan^{-1}(b/a)$

10.5 Multiplication and Division in Polar Coordinates

Given:

$$z_1 = r_1 e^{i\theta_1}, \quad z_2 = r_2 e^{i\theta_2},$$

Multiplication:

$$z_1 \cdot z_2 = r_1 r_2 e^{i(\theta_1 + \theta_2)}$$

Division:

$$\frac{z_1}{z_2} = \frac{r_1}{r_2} e^{i(\theta_1 - \theta_2)}$$

This polar form is especially useful in simplifying powers and roots of complex numbers using De Moivre's Theorem.

10.6 Exponentiation and Roots (De Moivre's Theorem)

Let $z = r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta) = re^{i\theta}$ be a complex number in polar form.

10.6.1 Exponentiation

To raise z to the power $n \in \mathbb{N}$, we use De Moivre's Theorem:

$$z^n = r^n (\cos(n\theta) + i \sin(n\theta)) = r^n e^{in\theta}$$

10.6.2 Roots of Complex Numbers

To find the n th roots of a complex number $z = re^{i\theta}$, we use the formula:

$$z^{1/n} = r^{1/n} \left(\cos \left(\frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n} \right) + i \sin \left(\frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{n} \right) \right), \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$$

This yields n distinct roots, each separated by an angle of $\frac{2\pi}{n}$ in the complex plane.

10.7 Example: Solve $z^4 = 1 + \sqrt{3}i$

Step 1: Convert RHS to polar form.

Let $w = 1 + \sqrt{3}i$. Real part: $a = 1$, Imaginary part: $b = \sqrt{3}$

$$r = |w| = \sqrt{1^2 + (\sqrt{3})^2} = \sqrt{1+3} = 2$$
$$\theta = \arg(w) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{1}\right) = \frac{\pi}{3}$$

So,

$$w = 2 \left(\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) \right)$$

Step 2: Solve $z^4 = w \rightarrow z = w^{1/4}$

Using the root formula:

$$z_k = 2^{1/4} \left(\cos\left(\frac{\pi + 2k\pi}{12}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{\pi + 2k\pi}{12}\right) \right), \quad k = 0, 1, 2, 3$$

So the four roots are:

$$z_0 = 2^{1/4} \left(\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{12}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{12}\right) \right)$$
$$z_1 = 2^{1/4} \left(\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{12}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{12}\right) \right)$$
$$z_2 = 2^{1/4} \left(\cos\left(\frac{9\pi}{12}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{9\pi}{12}\right) \right) = 2^{1/4} \left(\cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right) \right)$$
$$z_3 = 2^{1/4} \left(\cos\left(\frac{13\pi}{12}\right) + i \sin\left(\frac{13\pi}{12}\right) \right)$$

These represent the four complex 4th roots of $1 + \sqrt{3}i$, equally spaced around the circle of radius $2^{1/4}$ in the complex plane.

10.8 Solving Equations with Complex Numbers

Solving equations in \mathbb{C} can involve various forms. Here are the most common cases:

10.8.1 Linear Equations:

Solve for z in $az + b = 0$, where $a, b \in \mathbb{C}$, $a \neq 0$:

$$z = -\frac{b}{a}$$

10.8.2 Equations Involving the Conjugate:

Solve for z in equations like $z + \bar{z} = 4$. Let $z = x + iy$, then $\bar{z} = x - iy$. So:

$$z + \bar{z} = 2x \rightarrow x = 2 \Rightarrow z = 2 + iy$$

The imaginary part remains free unless further constraints are given.

10.8.3 Modulus Equations:

Solve $|z| = r$. Let $z = x + iy$, then:

$$\sqrt{x^2 + y^2} = r \rightarrow x^2 + y^2 = r^2$$

This is a circle of radius r centered at the origin in the complex plane.

10.8.4 Equations Involving $z \cdot \bar{z}$

Recall $z \cdot \bar{z} = |z|^2$. For example, solve:

$$z \cdot \bar{z} = 9 \rightarrow |z| = 3$$

Again, a circle in the complex plane of radius 3.

10.8.5 Quadratic Equations:

Complex roots occur naturally. For example:

$$z^2 + 1 = 0 \rightarrow z^2 = -1 \Rightarrow z = \pm i$$

10.8.6 General Polynomial Equations:

Use De Moivre's Theorem or polar form. Example:

$$z^n = w \rightarrow z_k = \sqrt[n]{|w|} \cdot e^{i\left(\frac{\arg(w) + 2k\pi}{n}\right)}, \quad k = 0, 1, \dots, n-1$$

Example 1:

Solve:

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{2+3i}{1+i} + \frac{4+5i}{2-2i} \right) \hat{z} &= \frac{i+2}{i} \\ \left(\frac{-3-i}{4} \right) \hat{z} &= \frac{i+2}{i} \\ \hat{z} &= \frac{i+2}{i} : \frac{-3-i}{4} \end{aligned}$$

Example 2:

Solve:

$$z - 3i + (2-i)\hat{z} + 2 = 0$$

In this case we let $z = x + iy$ and $\hat{z} = x - iy$.

$$\begin{aligned} z &= 3i - (2-i)\hat{z} - 2 \\ x + iy &= 3i - (2-i)(x - iy) - 2 \\ x + iy &= 3i - [2x - 2yi - xi + yi^2] - 2 \\ x + yi &= 3i - 2 + 2x + 2yi + xi + y \\ x + yi &= (y - 2 - 2x) + i(3 + 2y + x) \\ x &= y - 2 - 2x \quad y = 3 + 2y + x \\ x &= \frac{y-2}{3} \quad y = 3 + 2y + \frac{y-2}{3} = -7 \\ x &= \frac{-7-2}{3} = -3 \\ z &= -3 - 7i \quad \hat{z} = -3 + 7i \end{aligned}$$

10.9 The Complex Logarithm

The logarithm of a complex number is multivalued due to the periodic nature of the complex exponential. Let $z = re^{i\theta}$ with $r > 0$, $\theta \in \mathbb{R}$. Then:

$$\log z = \ln r + i(\theta + 2\pi k), \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}$$

Here:

- $\ln r$ is the natural (real) logarithm of the modulus.
- θ is the principal argument $\arg(z) \in (-\pi, \pi]$.
- The term $2\pi k$ accounts for the infinitely many branches of the logarithm in \mathbb{C} .

Principal Value:

The principal value of the complex logarithm is often written:

$$\text{Log } z = \ln |z| + i \text{Arg}(z), \quad \text{where } \text{Arg}(z) \in (-\pi, \pi]$$

Example:

Let $z = -1$. Then:

$$|z| = 1, \quad \arg(z) = \pi, \quad \rightarrow \log(-1) = i(\pi + 2\pi k), \quad k \in \mathbb{Z}$$

$$\rightarrow \text{Log}(-1) = i\pi$$

The multivalued nature of $\log z$ is crucial in advanced complex analysis, especially in defining analytic continuations and branch cuts.

10.10 Complex Exponents

$a^x \approx 1(a + \alpha \frac{x}{N})^N \rightarrow e^z := \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} (1 + \frac{z}{N})^N$ The process above is called linearization of the exponential function by zooming $\alpha \approx \frac{dy}{dx}$

For $e^{ci} = \cos \theta + i \sin \theta$ every exponentiation of a complex number is a rotation in the complex plane.

$$e^{ic} = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{ic}{N}\right)^N$$

Now imagine that in a sector of a circumference you put triangles one above the other with base of length one and a height of $\frac{c}{N}$ and an angle of δ

$$\tan \delta \approx \delta \text{ for } \delta \ll 1$$

$$1 + \frac{ci}{N} = 1 \angle \frac{c}{N}, N \gg 1$$

$$e^{ic} = \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{c}{N}\right)^N \rightarrow e^{ci} = 1 \angle c = \cos c + i \sin c$$

10.11 Euler's Formula Proof

We know that

$$e^{i\pi} = -1 \text{ and } e^{i\theta} = |r|(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta)$$

$$\begin{aligned} e^z &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{z}{n}\right)^n \implies e^{i\pi} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{i\pi}{n}\right)^n = -1 \\ &\implies \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |r_n| = 1 \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \theta = 0+ \end{aligned}$$

Now we can demonstrate the formula.

$$\begin{aligned} |r_n| &= \left(1 + \left|\frac{z}{n}\right|^n\right) \implies \left(\sqrt{1 + \frac{\pi^2}{n^2}}\right) \\ \theta &= \sum_{k=1}^n n \arctan \frac{\pi}{2} = n \arctan \frac{\pi}{n} \\ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\sqrt{1 + \frac{\pi^2}{n^2}}\right)^n &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{\pi^2}{2n}\right)^{\frac{n}{2}} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} e^{\ln\left(1 + \frac{\pi^2}{2}\right) \frac{n}{2}} = e^0 = 1 \\ \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \theta &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n \arctan \frac{\pi}{n} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} n^{-1} \arctan \frac{\pi}{n} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, for $e^{i\pi} = 1$ for $x = \pi \forall x \in \lim r_n(x) = 1$ and $\lim \theta(x) = x$

QED

11 Topology

In this section, we introduce essential vocabulary used in topology. Each term is accompanied by a brief explanation and its formal mathematical definition.

11.1 Introduction to topological nomenclature

11.1.1 Open Set

A subset $U \subseteq X$ of a topological space is called *open* if for every point $x \in U$, there exists an $\varepsilon > 0$ such that the open ball $B_\varepsilon(x) \subseteq U$. Intuitively, an open set contains none of its boundary points and every point has some wiggle room around it.

11.1.2 Closed Set

A subset $A \subseteq X$ is called *closed* if its complement $X \setminus A$ is open. Equivalently, A contains all its limit points. That is, A is closed if it includes its boundary.

11.1.3 Interior Point

A point $x \in A$ is an *interior point* of $A \subseteq X$ if there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $B_\varepsilon(x) \subseteq A$. The set of all interior points of A is called the *interior* of A , denoted $\text{int}(A)$.

11.1.4 Boundary Point

A point $x \in X$ is a *boundary point* of a set $A \subseteq X$ if every open ball around x contains both points in A and in $X \setminus A$. The set of all boundary points is called the *boundary* of A , denoted ∂A .

11.1.5 Accumulation Point / Limit Point

A point $x \in X$ is an *accumulation point* of a set $A \subseteq X$ if every open ball $B_\varepsilon(x)$ contains a point of $A \setminus \{x\}$. In other words, points of A cluster arbitrarily close to x , even if $x \notin A$.

11.1.6 Isolated Point

A point $x \in A$ is an *isolated point* if there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $B_\varepsilon(x) \cap A = \{x\}$. That is, x stands alone in A without other points of A nearby.

11.1.7 Compact Set

A set $K \subseteq X$ is *compact* if every open cover of K has a finite sub-cover. In \mathbb{R}^n , this is equivalent to K being closed and bounded (by the Heine–Borel theorem).

11.1.8 Dense Set

A subset $D \subseteq X$ is *dense* in X if every point $x \in X$ is either in D or is a limit point of D . Equivalently, the closure of D is X , i.e., $\overline{D} = X$.

11.1.9 Open Ball

$(B_\varepsilon(x))$

For a metric space (X, d) , the *open ball* centered at $x \in X$ with radius $\varepsilon > 0$ is defined as:

$$B_\varepsilon(x) := \{y \in X \mid d(x, y) < \varepsilon\}$$

It represents the set of all points within distance ε from x , excluding the boundary.

12 Inequalities with and without Absolute Value

Inequalities are like normal *equalities* but with ranges of solutions instead of one particular solution. The inequalities without absolute value are straightforward to solve, just like equations with the particularity of when dividing both sides by a negative number the relation $<, >, \geq, \leq$ has to be converted to its opposite.

The with absolute value is similar but here we have to account for different cases depending on the expression inside the $\| \circ \|$.

Example:

Solve $\|x + 1\| \leq 10 + \|2x - 6\|$

Main cases:

$$F_1 : x + 1 \geq 0 \implies x \geq -1$$

$$F_2 : x + 1 < 0 \implies x < -1$$

Subcases:

$$F_{1,1} : 2x - 6 \geq 0 \implies x \geq 3$$

$$x + 1 \geq 10 + 2x - 6$$

$$x \geq -3$$

$$\mathcal{L} = [3; \infty)$$

$$F_{1,2} : 2x - 6 < 0 \implies x < 3$$

$$x + 1 \geq 10 - (2x - 6)$$

$$x \geq 5$$

$$\mathcal{L} = (-\infty; 3]$$

$$F_{2,1} : 2x - 6 \geq 0 \implies x \geq 3$$

$$-(x + 1) \geq 10 + 2x - 6$$

$$x \geq \frac{-5}{3}$$

$$\mathcal{L} = \emptyset$$

$$F_{2,2} : 2x - 6 < 0 \implies x < 3$$

$$-(x + 1) \geq 10 - (2x - 6)$$

$$x \leq 17$$

$$\mathcal{L} = (-\infty, 3)$$

Union of the solutions:

$$\mathcal{L} = (-\infty; 3] \cup [3; \infty) \cup \emptyset \cup (-\infty, 3) = (-\infty, \infty)$$

12.1 Reciprocal Inequality

$$a < b < c \implies \frac{1}{a} > \frac{1}{b} > \frac{1}{c}$$

12.2 Bernoulli Inequality

Given $x \in \mathbb{R}, x > -1, x \neq 0$. Then for $n \in \mathbb{N}, n \geq 2$

$$(1+x)^n > 1+nx$$

Proof:

For $n = 2$

$$(1+x)^2 > 1+2x$$

Then for $n+1$ with $n > 2$

$$\begin{aligned}(1+x)^{n+1} &> 1+(n+1)x \\ (1+x)^n &> 1+(n+1)x\end{aligned}$$

□□□

13 Means and Proofs

In math there are a lot of means. In this section I will show some of them with the corresponding proofs.

Arithmetic Mean: The arithmetic mean of n numbers x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n is given by:

$$A = \frac{x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n}{n}$$

Geometric Mean: The geometric mean of n numbers x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n is given by:

$$G = \sqrt[n]{x_1 \cdot x_2 \cdots x_n}$$

Harmonic Mean: The harmonic mean of n numbers x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n is given by:

$$H = \frac{n}{\frac{1}{x_1} + \frac{1}{x_2} + \dots + \frac{1}{x_n}}$$

Quadratic Mean: The quadratic mean of n numbers x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n is given by:

$$Q = \sqrt{\frac{x_1^2 + x_2^2 + \dots + x_n^2}{n}}$$

13.1 Proof of the Arithmetic Mean-Geometric Mean Inequality

Let $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n > 0$. We will prove by induction that:

$$\frac{a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n}{n} \geq \sqrt[n]{a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n}$$

With equality if and only if $a_1 = a_2 = \dots = a_n$.

Base Case: $n = 2$

We want to prove:

$$\frac{a_1 + a_2}{2} \geq \sqrt{a_1 a_2}$$

Let $a_1, a_2 > 0$. Then by the identity

$$\left(\frac{a_1 - a_2}{2} \right)^2 \geq 0,$$

we get

$$\frac{a_1^2 - 2a_1 a_2 + a_2^2}{4} \geq 0 \Rightarrow a_1^2 + a_2^2 \geq 2a_1 a_2.$$

So,

$$(a_1 + a_2)^2 \geq 4a_1 a_2 \Rightarrow \left(\frac{a_1 + a_2}{2} \right)^2 \geq a_1 a_2,$$

and taking square roots gives the desired result:

$$\frac{a_1 + a_2}{2} \geq \sqrt{a_1 a_2}.$$

For $n \geq 2$

$$A_{n+1} := \left(\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} a_i \right) / (n+1) = \frac{a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_n + a_{n+1}}{n+1}$$

$$G_{n+1} := \sqrt[n+1]{a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n a_{n+1}} = \sqrt[n+1]{(a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n) a_{n+1}}$$

$$A_{n+1}^{n+1} = \left(\frac{a_1 + a_2 + \dots + a_{n+1}}{n+1} \right)^{n+1} = A_{n+1}^{n-1}$$

$$G_{n+1}^{n+1} := \left(\sqrt[n+1]{a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n a_{n+1}} \right)^{n+1} = (a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n) a_{n+1} = \sqrt[n]{(a_1 a_2 \cdots a_n)^n a_{n+1}^{n+1}} = G_n^n a_{n+1}^{n+1}$$

Then

$$G_{n+1}^{n+1} A_{n+1}^{n-1} = G_n^{n+1} a_{n+1}^{n+1} A_{n+1}^{n-1} \leq A_n^n A_{n+1}^{n-1}$$

This comes from

$$\begin{aligned} G_n &\leq A_n \\ G_n^n &\leq A_n^n \\ G_n^n a_{n+1} &\leq A_n^n a_{n+1} \\ G_n^n a_{n+1}^{n+1} A_{n+1}^{n-1} &\leq A_n^n A_{n+1}^{n-1} = \left(A_n^n (a_{n+1} A_{n+1})^{n-1} \right)^{\frac{n}{n}} \\ &\leq A_n^n \left(\frac{a_{n+1} + A_{n+1} + \cdots + A_{n+1}}{n} \right)^n \\ &= A_n^n \left(\frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{n} \right)^n \\ &= \left(A_n \frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{n} \right)^n \end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} \left(A_n \frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{n} \right) &\rightarrow \left(\sqrt{A_n \frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{n}} \right)^2 \\ &\leq \left(\frac{A_n + \frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{n}}{2} \right)^{2n} \end{aligned}$$

Now with power of n we have

$$\begin{aligned} \left(A_n + \frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{n} \right)^n &\leq \left(\frac{A_n + \frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{n}}{2} \right)^{2n} \\ &= \left(\frac{A_n}{2} + \frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{2n} \right)^{2n} \\ &= \left(\frac{A_n n}{2n} + \frac{a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{2n} \right)^{2n} \\ &= \left(\frac{A_n n + a_{n+1} + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{2n} \right)^{2n} \\ &= \left(\frac{A_{n+1}(n+1) + (n-1)A_{n+1}}{2n} \right)^{2n} \\ &= \left(\frac{2nA_{n+1}}{2n} \right)^{2n} = (A_{n+1})^{2n} \end{aligned}$$

Now we have proven that $G_{n+1}^{n+1} A_{n+1}^{n-1} \leq (A_{n+1})^{2n}$ by dividing both sides by A_{n+1}^{n-1} we get

$$G_{n+1}^{n+1} \leq A_{n+1}^{n+1}$$

□◻◻

13.2 Proof of the Harmonic Mean Geometric Mean Inequality

Let $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n > 0$. We will prove the inequality.

We know that $G_n \leq A_n$

$$\begin{aligned}
G_n &\leq A_n \\
\sqrt[n]{x_1 \cdots x_2 \cdots x_n} &\leq \frac{x_1 + x_2 + \cdots + x_n}{n} \\
\frac{n}{\frac{1}{x_1} + \frac{1}{x_2} + \cdots + \frac{1}{x_n}} &\leq \sqrt[n]{x_1 \cdot x_2 \cdots x_n}
\end{aligned}$$

This concludes the proof of the harmonic mean-geometric mean inequality.

□◻◻

14 Solving Polynomial Equations

In this section, we discuss the solution formulas for polynomial equations of degrees 2 and 3: the PQ formula, the ABC formula, and the Cubic formula. We also derive each of them step by step.

14.1 The PQ Formula

The PQ formula solves quadratic equations of the form:

$$x^2 + px + q = 0$$

14.1.1 Derivation

To derive the PQ formula, we complete the square:

$$\begin{aligned}x^2 + px + q &= 0 \\x^2 + px &= -q \\x^2 + px + \left(\frac{p}{2}\right)^2 &= -q + \left(\frac{p}{2}\right)^2 \\ \left(x + \frac{p}{2}\right)^2 &= \left(\frac{p}{2}\right)^2 - q \\x + \frac{p}{2} &= \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{p}{2}\right)^2 - q} \\x &= -\frac{p}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{p}{2}\right)^2 - q}\end{aligned}$$

14.1.2 PQ formula:

$$x = -\frac{p}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{p}{2}\right)^2 - q}$$

14.2 The Quadratic Formula

The general quadratic equation is:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0 \quad \text{with } a \neq 0$$

14.2.1 Derivation of the PQ-Formula

We normalize the equation by dividing through by a and complete the square:

$$\begin{aligned}ax^2 + bx + c &= 0 \\x^2 + \frac{b}{a}x + \frac{c}{a} &= 0 \\x^2 + \frac{b}{a}x &= -\frac{c}{a} \\x^2 + \frac{b}{a}x + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 &= -\frac{c}{a} + \left(\frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 \\ \left(x + \frac{b}{2a}\right)^2 &= \frac{b^2 - 4ac}{4a^2} \\x + \frac{b}{2a} &= \pm \frac{\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \\x &= \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}\end{aligned}$$

14.2.2 ABC formula:

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

14.3 The Cubic Formula

To solve a general cubic equation:

$$ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0,$$

we first reduce it to a depressed cubic using a substitution.

Step 1: Depress the cubic

Let $x = t - \frac{b}{3a}$, then the equation becomes:

$$t^3 + pt + q = 0$$

with:

$$p = \frac{3ac - b^2}{3a^2}, \quad q = \frac{2b^3 - 9abc + 27a^2d}{27a^3}$$

Step 2: Solve the depressed cubic using Cardano's method

Assume a solution of the form:

$$t = u + v$$

Then substitute and simplify:

$$(u + v)^3 + p(u + v) + q = 0$$

Expanding and setting:

$$u^3 + v^3 + (3uv + p)(u + v) + q = 0$$

To eliminate the $(u + v)$ term, set:

$$3uv + p = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad uv = -\frac{p}{3}$$

Now:

$$u^3 + v^3 = -q$$

Let:

$$u^3 = A, \quad v^3 = B \quad \Rightarrow \quad A + B = -q, \quad AB = -\frac{p^3}{27}$$

These are the roots of the quadratic:

$$z^2 + qz - \frac{p^3}{27} = 0$$

Solve for A and B , then take cube roots to get u and v . The final solution is:

$$x = u + v$$

14.3.1 Cardano's Formula (for depressed cubic)

$$x = \sqrt[3]{-\frac{q}{2} + \sqrt{\left(\frac{q}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{p}{3}\right)^3}} + \sqrt[3]{-\frac{q}{2} - \sqrt{\left(\frac{q}{2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{p}{3}\right)^3}}$$

This formula gives one real root. The other roots (if real) can be found using trigonometric or complex methods depending on the discriminant.

15 The Binomial Coefficient

In this short section we will cover the definition and Properties of the binomial coefficient without going too deep into the combinatorics meaning or Pascal's Triangle.

$$\binom{n}{k} := \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$$

or as Product

$$\prod_{j=1}^n \frac{n-k+j}{j},$$

with n and k as natural numbers (for the moment).

15.1 Properties

- $\binom{n}{k} = \binom{n}{n-k}$
- $\binom{n}{k-1} = \binom{n}{k} \frac{n-k+1}{k}$
- $\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} = 2^n$
- $\sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} = \binom{n+1}{n+1}$
- $\binom{n}{0} = 1 = \binom{n}{n}$
- $\binom{n}{k} + \binom{n}{k+1} = \binom{n+1}{k+1}$
- $\binom{n}{k} = (-1)^k \binom{k-n-1}{k}$

15.2 The binomial Theorem

$$(a+b)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} a^k b^{n-k}$$

16 Proportionality and the Rule of Three

16.1 Proportionality

Two quantities are said to be *proportional* if their ratio remains constant.

16.1.1 Direct Proportionality

Two quantities a and b are in *direct proportion* if:

$$\frac{a}{b} = k \quad \Rightarrow \quad a = k \cdot b$$

Where k is the constant of proportionality.

Example:

If 2 pencils cost 1, then 4 pencils cost 2. The ratio is constant: $\frac{2}{1} = \frac{4}{2}$.

16.1.2 Inverse Proportionality

Two quantities a and b are in *inverse proportion* if their product is constant:

$$a \cdot b = k$$

Example:

If 4 workers finish a job in 6 hours, then 2 workers would need 12 hours:

$$4 \cdot 6 = 2 \cdot 12 = 24$$

16.2 The Rule of Three (Simple)

The *Rule of Three* is a method to find a fourth value when three values are known and a proportional relationship is assumed.

16.2.1 Direct Rule of Three (Simple)

Given: $a : b = c : x$, solve for x :

$$x = \frac{b \cdot c}{a}$$

Example:

If 3 apples cost 6, how much do 5 apples cost?

$$x = \frac{6 \cdot 5}{3} = 10$$

16.2.2 Inverse Rule of Three (Simple)

If the relationship is inverse:

$$a : b = x : c \quad \Rightarrow \quad x = \frac{a \cdot c}{b}$$

Example:

If 5 people finish a task in 8 hours, how long will 10 people need?

$$x = \frac{5 \cdot 8}{10} = 4$$

16.3 The Rule of Three (Compound)

The *Compound Rule of Three* (or *composed rule of three*) involves more than two variables.

Example:

If 4 machines produce 120 items in 5 hours, how many items will 6 machines produce in 8 hours?

Step 1: Set up proportionally:

$$\text{Items} \propto \text{Machines} \quad (\text{direct}) \quad \text{Items} \propto \text{Time} \quad (\text{direct})$$

Step 2: Adjust the quantity:

Initial: 4 machines, 5 hrs \rightarrow 120 items

New: 6 machines, 8 hrs $\rightarrow x$ items

Step 3: Use proportionality:

$$x = 120 \cdot \frac{6}{4} \cdot \frac{8}{5} = 120 \cdot 1.5 \cdot 1.6 = 288$$

Answer: 288 items.

Summary Table

Type	Formula
Direct Proportion	$x = \frac{b \cdot c}{a}$
Inverse Proportion	$x = \frac{a \cdot c}{b}$
Compound Rule of Three	Multiply by all direct and divide by inverse ratios

17 Factorization Techniques

Factorization is the process of writing a mathematical expression as a product of its factors. This is a fundamental technique in algebra used to simplify expressions, solve equations, and analyze functions.

17.1 Common Factor

Factor out the greatest common divisor (GCD) of all terms.

Example:

$$6x^2 + 9x = 3x(2x + 3)$$

17.2 Difference of Squares

A difference of squares follows the identity:

$$a^2 - b^2 = (a - b)(a + b)$$

Example:

$$x^2 - 16 = (x - 4)(x + 4)$$

17.3 Sum of Cubes:

$$a^3 + b^3 = (a + b)(a^2 - ab + b^2)$$

17.4 Difference of Cubes:

$$a^3 - b^3 = (a - b)(a^2 + ab + b^2)$$

Example:

$$x^3 + 8 = (x + 2)(x^2 - 2x + 4)$$

17.5 Trinomial: Special Case $x^2 + bx + c$

This is the case where $a = 1$. Find two numbers whose product is c and sum is b .

Example:

$$x^2 + 5x + 6 = (x + 2)(x + 3)$$

17.6 Trinomial: General Form $ax^2 + bx + c$

Like in the previous case we are going to use a similar procedure, but we start by multiplying and dividing by $\frac{a}{a}$ and then proceed to do the rest. Look at the example

$$\begin{aligned} 3x^2 - 5x - 2 &= \frac{3(3x^2 - 5x - 2)}{3} \\ &= \frac{(3x)^2 - 5(3x) - 6}{3} \\ &= \frac{(3x - 6)(3x + 1)}{3} \\ &= (x - 2)(3x + 1) \end{aligned}$$

17.7 Perfect Square Trinomial

These follow the identities:

$$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$$

$$(a - b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$$

Example:

$$x^2 + 6x + 9 = (x + 3)^2$$

17.8 Substitution

Substitute a more complex expression with a single variable, factor, then back-substitute.

Example:

$$x^4 + 2x^2 + 1 \Rightarrow \text{Let } y = x^2 \Rightarrow y^2 + 2y + 1 = (y + 1)^2 \Rightarrow (x^2 + 1)^2$$

17.9 Rationalization of Radicals

Rationalizing removes radicals from the denominator.

Example (Single Radical):

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$$

Example (Binomial):

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3} + 1} = \frac{\sqrt{3} - 1}{(\sqrt{3} + 1)(\sqrt{3} - 1)} = \frac{\sqrt{3} - 1}{2}$$

17.10 Horner's Method

Used to divide a polynomial by a binomial of the form $(x - r)$.

Steps:

1. Write coefficients of the polynomial.
2. Bring down the first coefficient.
3. Multiply it by r , add to next coefficient.
4. Repeat until the remainder.

Example:

Divide $P(x) = x^3 - 6x^2 + 11x - 6$ by $x - 1$:

$$\begin{array}{r|rrrr} 1 & 1 & -6 & 11 & -6 \\ & & 1 & -5 & 6 \\ \hline & 1 & -5 & 6 & 0 \end{array} \Rightarrow Q(x) = x^2 - 5x + 6$$

17.11 Long Division of Polynomials

Use the same algorithm as numerical long division.

Example:

$$\begin{array}{r} X^2 + 2X + 2 \\ X - 1 \overline{) \begin{array}{r} X^3 + X^2 + 0X - 1 \\ - X^3 + X^2 \\ \hline 2X^2 + 0X \\ - 2X^2 + 2X \\ \hline 2X - 1 \\ - 2X + 2 \\ \hline 1 \end{array}} \end{array}$$

18 Partial Fractions

18.1 The Simplest Case

In the most common partial fraction decomposition, we split:

$$\frac{N(x)}{(x - a_1)(x - a_2) \cdots (x - a_d)}$$

into a sum of the form:

$$\frac{A_1}{x - a_1} + \cdots + \frac{A_d}{x - a_d}$$

We now show that this decomposition can always be achieved, under the assumption that the a_i are all different and $N(x)$ is a polynomial of degree at most $d - 1$.

18.1.1 Lemma 1

Let $N(x)$ and $D(x)$ be polynomials of degree n and d , respectively, with $n \leq d$. Suppose that a is not a root of $D(x)$. Then there exists a polynomial $P(x)$ of degree $< d$ and a number A such that:

$$\frac{N(x)}{D(x)(x - a)} = \frac{P(x)}{D(x)} + \frac{A}{x - a}$$

Proof:

Let $z = x - a$. Define:

$$\tilde{N}(z) = N(z + a), \quad \tilde{D}(z) = D(z + a)$$

Then:

$$\frac{\tilde{N}(z)}{\tilde{D}(z)z} = \frac{\tilde{P}(z)}{\tilde{D}(z)} + \frac{A}{z} \Rightarrow \frac{\tilde{P}(z)z + A\tilde{D}(z)}{\tilde{D}(z)z}$$

We equate:

$$\tilde{P}(z)z + A\tilde{D}(z) = \tilde{N}(z)$$

Choosing $A = \frac{\tilde{N}(0)}{\tilde{D}(0)}$, the constant terms match. The remainder has no constant term and is divisible by z , so:

$$\tilde{P}(z)z = \tilde{N}(z) - A\tilde{D}(z)$$

Thus, $\tilde{P}(z)$ is a polynomial of degree $< d$.

18.1.2 Recursive Decomposition

Now, consider:

$$\frac{N(x)}{(x - a_1)(x - a_2) \cdots (x - a_d)}$$

Apply Lemma 1 recursively:

$$\frac{N(x)}{(x - a_1) \cdots (x - a_d)} = \frac{A_1}{x - a_1} + \frac{P(x)}{(x - a_2) \cdots (x - a_d)}$$

Then:

$$\frac{P(x)}{(x - a_2) \cdots (x - a_d)} = \frac{A_2}{x - a_2} + \frac{Q(x)}{(x - a_3) \cdots (x - a_d)}$$

Continue until:

$$\frac{N(x)}{(x - a_1) \cdots (x - a_d)} = \frac{A_1}{x - a_1} + \cdots + \frac{A_d}{x - a_d}$$

18.2 Lemma 2

Let $N(x)$ and $D(x)$ be polynomials of degree n and d respectively, with $n < d + m$. Suppose that a is NOT a zero of $D(x)$. Then there is a polynomial $P(x)$ of degree $p < d$ and numbers A_1, \dots, A_m such that

$$\frac{N(x)}{D(x)(x-a)^m} = \frac{P(x)}{D(x)} + \frac{A_1}{x-a} + \frac{A_2}{(x-a)^2} + \dots + \frac{A_m}{(x-a)^m}$$

Proof:

To save writing, let $z = x - a$. Then $\tilde{N}(z) = N(z+a)$ and $\tilde{D}(z) = D(z+a)$ are polynomials of degree n and d respectively, $\tilde{D}(0) = D(a) \neq 0$ and we have to find a polynomial $\tilde{P}(z)$ of degree $p < d$ and numbers A_1, \dots, A_m such that

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\tilde{N}(z)}{\tilde{D}(z)z^m} &= \frac{\tilde{P}(z)}{\tilde{D}(z)} + \frac{A_1}{z} + \frac{A_2}{z^2} + \dots + \frac{A_m}{z^m} \\ &= \frac{\tilde{P}(z)z^m + A_1z^{m-1}\tilde{D}(z) + A_2z^{m-2}\tilde{D}(z) + \dots + A_m\tilde{D}(z)}{\tilde{D}(z)z^m} \end{aligned}$$

or equivalently, such that

$$\tilde{P}(z)z^m + A_1z^{m-1}\tilde{D}(z) + A_2z^{m-2}\tilde{D}(z) + \dots + A_{m-1}z\tilde{D}(z) + A_m\tilde{D}(z) = \tilde{N}(z)$$

Now look at the polynomial on the left-hand side. Every single term on the left-hand side, except for the very last one, $A_m\tilde{D}(z)$, has at least one power of z . So the constant term on the left-hand side is exactly the constant term in $A_m\tilde{D}(z)$, which is $A_m\tilde{D}(0)$. The constant term on the right-hand side is $\tilde{N}(0)$. So the constant terms on the left and right-hand sides are the same if we choose $A_m = \frac{\tilde{N}(0)}{\tilde{D}(0)}$. Recall that $\tilde{D}(0) \neq 0$. Now move $A_m\tilde{D}(z)$ to the right-hand side.

$$\tilde{P}(z)z^m + A_1z^{m-1}\tilde{D}(z) + A_2z^{m-2}\tilde{D}(z) + \dots + A_{m-1}z\tilde{D}(z) = \tilde{N}(z) - A_m\tilde{D}(z)$$

The constant terms in $\tilde{N}(z)$ and $A_m\tilde{D}(z)$ are the same, so the right-hand side contains no constant term and the right-hand side is of the form $\tilde{N}_1(z)z$ with \tilde{N}_1 a polynomial of degree at most $d + m - 2$. (Recall that \tilde{N} is of degree at most $d + m - 1$ and \tilde{D} is of degree at most d .) Divide the whole equation by z .

$$\tilde{P}(z)z^{m-1} + A_1z^{m-2}\tilde{D}(z) + A_2z^{m-3}\tilde{D}(z) + \dots + A_{m-1}\tilde{D}(z) = \tilde{N}_1(z)$$

Now, we can repeat the previous argument. The constant term on the left-hand side, which is exactly $A_{m-1}\tilde{D}(0)$ matches the constant term on the right-hand side, which is $\tilde{N}_1(0)$ if we choose $A_{m-1} = \frac{\tilde{N}_1(0)}{\tilde{D}(0)}$. With this choice of A_{m-1}

$$\tilde{P}(z)z^{m-1} + A_1z^{m-2}\tilde{D}(z) + A_2z^{m-3}\tilde{D}(z) + \dots + A_{m-2}z\tilde{D}(z) = \tilde{N}_1(z) - A_{m-1}\tilde{D}(z) = \tilde{N}_2(z)z$$

With \tilde{N}_2 a polynomial of degree at most $d + m - 3$. Divide by z and continue. After m steps like this, we end up with

$$\tilde{P}(z)z = \tilde{N}_{m-1}(z) - A_1\tilde{D}(z)$$

After having chosen $A_1 = \frac{\tilde{N}_{m-1}(0)}{\tilde{D}(0)}$. There is no constant term on the right side so that $\tilde{N}_{m-1}(z) - A_1\tilde{D}(z)$ is of the form $\tilde{N}_m(z)z$ with \tilde{N}_m a polynomial of degree $d - 1$. Choosing $\tilde{P}(z) = \tilde{N}_m(z)$ completes the proof.

Now back to

$$\frac{N(x)}{(x-a_1)^{n_1} \times \dots \times (x-a_d)^{n_d}}$$

Apply Lemma 2, with $D(x) = (x-a_2)^{n_2} \times \dots \times (x-a_d)^{n_d}$, $m = n_1$ and $a = a_1$. It says

$$\frac{N(x)}{(x-a_1)^{n_1} \times \dots \times (x-a_d)^{n_d}} = \frac{P(x)}{(x-a_2)^{n_2} \times \dots \times (x-a_d)^{n_d}} + \frac{A_{1,1}}{x-a_1} + \frac{A_{1,2}}{(x-a_1)^2} + \dots + \frac{A_{1,n_1}}{(x-a_1)^{n_1}}$$

Apply Lemma 2 a second time, with $D(x) = (x - a_3)^{n_3} \times \cdots \times (x - a_d)^{n_d}$, $N(x) = P(x)$, $m = n_2$ and $a = a_2$. And so on. Eventually, we end up with

$$\frac{N(x)}{(x - a_1)^{n_1} \times \cdots \times (x - a_d)^{n_d}} = \left[\frac{A_{1,1}}{x - a_1} + \cdots + \frac{A_{1,n_1}}{(x - a_1)^{n_1}} \right] + \cdots + \left[\frac{A_{d,1}}{x - a_d} + \cdots + \frac{A_{d,n_d}}{(x - a_d)^{n_d}} \right]$$

19 Recursion

Recursion is term used to refer to a thing define in terms of itself. An example the factorial $n! = (n-1)!$ with $0! = 1$ being the base case where the recursion stops.

19.1 From Recursive to Closed Form

A sequence defined recursively can often be rewritten in an explicit or closed form.

Recursive form defines a_n based on previous terms (e.g., $a_n = a_{n-1} + 2$).

Closed form expresses a_n directly in terms of n , with no reference to previous terms.

19.1.1 General Method (when linear):

1. Calculate some terms and watch the difference or quotient between them maybe the difference is clear, and you can build a geometric or arithmetic sequence directly.
2. Identify the type (e.g., linear, homogeneous, constant coefficients).
3. Solve the characteristic equation (if linear).
4. Use initial conditions to determine constants.

19.2 Linear Recursion

A linear recurrence has the form:

$$\begin{aligned}a_n &= \lambda a_{n-1} + c \\a_1 &= \lambda a_0 + c \implies a_2 = \lambda(\lambda a_0 + c) + c \\ \implies a_n &= \lambda^n a_0 + (1 + \lambda + \lambda^2 + \cdots + \lambda^{n-1})c\end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$a_n = \lambda^n a_0 + \frac{\lambda^n - 1}{\lambda - 1}c$$

19.3 Recursive Inequalities

A *recursive inequality* bounds a sequence rather than defines it exactly.

Example:

Suppose

$$a_{n+1} \leq \frac{1}{2}a_n + 3$$

To analyze:

- Guess a bound (e.g., show $a_n \leq M$ for all n)
- Use induction or iteration to justify convergence or boundedness
- Compare with a simpler sequence (e.g., geometric series)

These techniques are common in analysis, approximation, and numerical algorithms.

19.4 Fibonacci Numbers and Closed Form

The Fibonacci sequence is defined recursively:

$$F_0 = 0, \quad F_1 = 1, \quad F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}$$

The characteristic equation is:

$$x^2 - x - 1 = 0 \Rightarrow x = \varphi = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2}, \quad \psi = \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2}$$

The closed form (Binet's Formula) is:

$$F_n = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} (\varphi^n - \psi^n)$$

- $\varphi \approx 1.618$ is the golden ratio
- This formula demonstrates exponential growth of F_n

20 Logarithms

The *Logarithm* of a number x with base b is the exponent to which the base must be raised to produce that number. It is denoted as:

$$\log_b(x) = y \iff b^y = x$$

Where $b > 0$, $b \neq 1$, and $x > 0$.

$$\log_2(8) = 3 \quad \text{because} \quad 2^3 = 8$$

We can also approximate a logarithm by dividing our target x by the basis b repeatedly until we get 1 or less.

20.1 Properties of Logarithms

- $\log_b(xy) = \log_b(x) + \log_b(y)$
- $\log_b\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = \log_b(x) - \log_b(y)$
- $\log_b(x^k) = k \cdot \log_b(x)$
- $\log_b(b) = 1$
- $\log_b(1) = 0$
- $\log_{b^k}(x^w) = \frac{1}{k} \cdot \log_b(x)$
- $\log_b\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = -\log_b(x)$
- $\log_b(b^x) = x$
- $\log_b(x) = \frac{\log_k(x)}{\log_k(b)}$ for any positive $k \neq 1$
- $e^{\ln(x)} = x$
- If $0 < a < 1$ then $\ln(a)$ is a negative number.

20.2 Fundamental Identity of Logarithms

$$a^{\log_a(x)} = x$$

20.3 Change of Basis Formula

$$\log_b(x) = \frac{\log_k(x)}{\log_k(b)}$$

Where k is any positive number different from 1.

20.4 The Chain Rule

$$\log_y(a) \log_a(b) = \log_y(b)$$

20.5 The derivative of the Natural Logarithm

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

Let $f(x) = \ln(x)$, then

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\ln(x+h) - \ln(x)}{h} \\ &= f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\ln\left(\frac{x+h}{x}\right)}{h} \\ &= f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\ln\left(1 + \frac{h}{x}\right)}{h} \\ &= f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \ln\left(1 + \frac{h}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{h}} \end{aligned}$$

Now let $n = \frac{h}{x}$

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow 0} \ln(1+n)^{\frac{x}{h} \frac{1}{x}} \\ f'(x) &= \lim_{n \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{x} \ln(1+n)^{\frac{1}{n}} \\ f'(x) &= \frac{1}{x} \ln\left(\lim_{n \rightarrow 0} (1+n)^{\frac{1}{n}}\right) \\ f'(x) &= \frac{1}{x} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the derivative of the natural logarithm is:

$$\frac{d}{dx} \ln(x) = \frac{1}{x}$$

QED

20.6 Demonstration of the Properties

20.6.1 Product

Let $a^n a^m = a^{n+m}$ and $a^n = x$ and $a^m = y$ then

$$\log_a x = n \text{ and } \log_a y = m \rightarrow \log_a(xy) = n + m$$

$$\log_a xy = \log_a x + \log_a y$$

QED

20.6.2 Quotient

Let $\frac{a^n}{a^m} = a^{n-m}$ and $a^n = x$ and $a^m = y$ then like in the previous proof

$$\log_a \left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = \log_a x - \log_a y$$

QED

20.6.3 Power

Let $(a^n)^m = a^{nm}$ and $a^n = x$ and $a^{nm} = y$

$$\log_x y = m \text{ and } \log_a x = n \text{ thus, } \log_a y = (\log_a x)m$$

QED

20.6.4 Power Rule General Case:

Let $(a^n)^m = b^x$ then $\log_{a^n} b^x = m$ now let us manipulate the original expression

$$\begin{aligned}\log_a (a^n)^m &= \log_a b^x \\ nm \log_a a &= x \log_a b \\ m &= \frac{x}{n} \log_a b = \log_{a^n} b^x\end{aligned}$$

QED

21 Fractions, Roots, and Exponents

This is a small chapter to remember the properties of fractions, roots, and exponents. It is not a complex chapter, but it is useful to have it in the compendium.

21.1 Fractions

- $\frac{a}{b} \cdot \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ac}{bd}$
- $\frac{a}{b} \pm \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad \pm bc}{bd}$
- $\frac{a}{b} \div \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad}{bc}$
- $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d} \iff ad = bc$
- $\frac{ac}{bc} = \frac{a}{b}$

21.2 Roots and Exponents

- $\sqrt{a} \cdot \sqrt{b} = \sqrt{ab}$
- $\sqrt{\frac{a}{b}} = \frac{\sqrt{a}}{\sqrt{b}}$
- $\sqrt[n]{\sqrt[n]{a}} = \sqrt[n]{\sqrt[n]{a}}$
- $a \sqrt[n]{b} = \sqrt[n]{a^n b}$
- $a^m \cdot a^n = a^{m+n}$
- $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$
- $(a^m)^n = a^{mn}$
- $a^{-n} = \frac{1}{a^n}$
- $a^{\frac{m}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{a^m}$
- $a^{\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{a}$
- $a^{\frac{1}{3}} = \sqrt[3]{a}$
- $a^{\frac{1}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{a}$
- $a^0 = 1$
- $a^1 = a$

22 The Fundamental Theorem of Algebra

Given any positive integer $n \geq 1$ and any choice of complex numbers a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n , such that $a_n \neq 0$, the polynomial equation

$$a_n z^n + \dots + a_1 z + a_0 = 0$$

has at least one solution $z \in \mathbb{C}$.

22.1 Gist of the Proof

For readers familiar with Newton's method for solving equations, one starts with a reasonably close approximation to a root, then adjusts the approximation by moving closer in an appropriate direction. We will employ the same strategy here, showing that if one assumes that the argument where the polynomial function achieves its minimum absolute value is not a root, then there is a nearby argument where the polynomial function has an even smaller absolute value, contradicting the assumption that the argument of the minimum absolute value is not a root.

22.2 Definitions and Axioms

In the following, $p(z)$ will denote the n -th degree polynomial

$$p(z) = p_0 + p_1 z + p_2 z^2 + \dots + p_n z^n,$$

where the coefficients p_i are any complex numbers, with neither p_0 nor p_n equal to zero (otherwise the polynomial is equivalent to one of lesser degree).

We will utilize a fundamental completeness property of real and complex numbers, namely that a continuous function on a closed set achieves its minimum at some point in the domain. This can be taken as an axiom, or can be easily proved by applying other well-known completeness axioms, such as the Cauchy sequence axiom or the nested interval axiom.

22.3 Theorem 1

Every polynomial with real or complex coefficients has at least one complex root.

Proof:

Suppose that $p(z)$ has no roots in the complex plane. First note that for large z , say $|z| > 2 \max_i |p_i/p_n|$, the z^n term of $p(z)$ is greater in absolute value than the sum of all the other terms. Thus, given some $B > 0$, for any sufficiently large s , we have $|p(z)| > B$ for all z with $|z| \geq s$. We will take $B = 2|p(0)| = 2|p_0|$.

Since $|p(z)|$ is continuous on the interior and boundary of the circle with radius s , it follows by the completeness axiom that $|p(z)|$ achieves its minimum value at some point t in this circle. But since $|p(0)| < \frac{1}{2}|p(z)|$ for all z on the circumference of the circle, it follows that $|p(z)|$ achieves its minimum at some point t in the interior.

Now rewrite the polynomial $p(z)$ by translating the argument z by t , thus, producing a new polynomial

$$q(z) = p(z + t) = q_0 + q_1 z + q_2 z^2 + \dots + q_n z^n,$$

and similarly translate the circle. Presumably the polynomial $q(z)$, defined on some circle centered at the origin, has a minimum absolute value $M > 0$ at $z = 0$. Note that $M = |q(0)| = |q_0|$.

Our proof strategy is to construct some point x , close to the origin, such that $|q(x)| < |q(0)|$, thus, contradicting the assumption that $|q(z)|$ has a minimum nonzero value at $z = 0$.

Construction of x such that $|q(x)| < |q(0)|$

Let the first nonzero coefficient of $q(z)$ following q_0 be q_m , so that

$$q(z) = q_0 + q_m z^m + q_{m+1} z^{m+1} + \cdots + q_n z^n.$$

We choose

$$x = r \left(-\frac{q_0}{q_m} \right)^{1/m},$$

where r is a small positive real value, and $\left(-\frac{q_0}{q_m} \right)^{1/m}$ denotes any m -th root of $\left(-\frac{q_0}{q_m} \right)$.

Unlike the real numbers, in the complex number system the m -th roots of any complex number are guaranteed to exist. If $z = z_1 + iz_2$, then the m -th roots of z are given by

$$\left\{ R^{1/m} \cos \left(\frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{m} \right) + i R^{1/m} \sin \left(\frac{\theta + 2k\pi}{m} \right) \mid k = 0, 1, \dots, m-1 \right\},$$

where $R = \sqrt{z_1^2 + z_2^2}$ and $\theta = \arctan(z_2/z_1)$.

Proof:

$$|q(x)| < |q(0)|$$

With the definition of x , we can write

$$q(x) = q_0 - q_0 r^m + q_{m+1} r^{m+1} \left(-\frac{q_0}{q_m} \right)^{(m+1)/m} + \cdots + q_n r^n \left(-\frac{q_0}{q_m} \right)^{n/m} = q_0 - q_0 r^m + E$$

Where the extra terms E can be bounded as follows. Assume $q_0 \leq q_m$, and define $s = r \left| \frac{q_0}{q_m} \right|^{1/m}$. Then

$$|E| \leq r^{m+1} \max_i |q_i| \left| \frac{q_0}{q_m} \right|^{(m+1)/m} (1 + s + s^2 + \cdots + s^{n-m-1}) \leq \frac{r^{m+1} \max_i |q_i|}{1-s} \left| \frac{q_0}{q_m} \right|^{(m+1)/m}.$$

Thus, $|E|$ can be made arbitrarily small compared to $|q_0 r^m| = |q_0| r^m$ by choosing r small enough. For example, select r so that $|E| < \frac{|q_0| r^m}{2}$. Then:

$$|q(x)| = |q_0 - q_0 r^m + E| < |q_0 - \frac{q_0 r^m}{2}| = |q_0| \left(1 - \frac{r^m}{2} \right) < |q_0| = |q(0)|,$$

which contradicts the assumption that $|q(z)|$ has a minimum nonzero value at $z = 0$.

□◻◻

22.4 Theorem 2

Every polynomial of degree n with real or complex coefficients has exactly n complex roots, when counting multiplicities.

Proof:

If α is a root of the polynomial $p(z)$ of degree n , then by dividing $p(z)$ by $(z - \alpha)$, we get:

$$p(z) = (z - \alpha)q(z) + r,$$

where $q(z)$ has degree $n - 1$ and r is a constant. But since $p(\alpha) = r = 0$, we conclude:

$$p(z) = (z - \alpha)q(z).$$

Continuing by induction, we conclude that the original polynomial $p(z)$ has exactly n complex roots, counted with multiplicities.

□◻◻

23 Generating Functions

Generating functions are a central tool in combinatorics and discrete mathematics. At their core, a generating function is a formal power series in one or more variables, typically used to encode sequences of numbers.

23.1 Definition

Given a sequence $\{a_n\}_{n \geq 0}$, its (ordinary) generating function is defined as:

$$G(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$$

Here, x is an indeterminate, and the series is usually treated formally, meaning we do not worry about convergence unless the context requires it.

23.2 Applications

Generating functions are used to:

- Encode and manipulate sequences algebraically.
- Solve recurrence relations.
- Find closed-form expressions for sequences.
- Prove combinatorial identities.
- Model and solve counting problems in partitions, compositions, and permutations.

For example, if a_n counts the number of ways to form a sum n using coins of certain denominations, the generating function helps derive a formula for a_n or analyze its properties.

23.3 Connection to Subsets

There is a deep similarity between generating functions and the process of forming subsets. Consider the generating function for the set $\{1, x\}$:

$$(1 + x)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^k$$

This expansion encodes all subsets of an n -element set, where each term x^k corresponds to selecting a subset of size k . The coefficient $\binom{n}{k}$ gives the number of such subsets.

In this way, generating functions can be viewed as a powerful algebraic analogue of subset selection and counting, with the exponents representing sizes or weights, and the coefficients representing counts.

Generating functions serve as a bridge between algebra and combinatorics, allowing abstract operations to yield concrete combinatorial results.

23.4 Closed form of the Fibonacci Sequence

Let us use generating function to find a closed form for the Fibonacci number.

We know that $F_0 = 1$ and $F_1 = 1$ and for $n \geq 2$ $F_n = F_{n-1} + F_{n-2}$

Now let us use the following function

$$F(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} F_n x^n$$

Which is going to have the Fibonacci numbers as the coefficients of the power series.

$$1 + x + 2x^2 + 3x^3 + 5x^4 + \dots$$

But before that we have to look at when our recursive formula is defined. In this case $n = 2$. Thus, we have to write our expression in the following way.

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= 1 + x + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_n x^n \\ &= 1 + x + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-1} x^n + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-2} x^n \end{aligned}$$

Here we are going to adjust our expression by making our n be equal.

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= 1 + x + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-1} x^n + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-2} x^n \\ F(x) &= 1 + x + x \left(\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-1} x^{n-1} \right) + x^2 \left(\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-2} x^{n-2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

And now we are going to reset our sum to start from zero by adding a smart zero to our term with $n-1$. This allows us to shift the sum to start from 0 because when $n = 1$ for $F_{n-1} x^{n-1}$ turns into $F_0 x^0$.

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= 1 + x + x \left(-F_0 x^0 + F_0 x^0 + \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-1} x^{n-1} \right) + x^2 \left(\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-2} x^{n-2} \right) \\ F(x) &= 1 + x + x \left(-F_0 x^0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} F_{n-1} x^{n-1} \right) + x^2 \left(\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-2} x^{n-2} \right) \\ F(x) &= 1 + x + x \left(\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} F_n x^n \right) + x^2 \left(\sum_{n=2}^{\infty} F_{n-2} x^{n-2} \right) \\ F(x) &= 1 + x + xF(x) - x + x^2 F(x) \end{aligned}$$

Which at end simplifies to:

$$F(x) = \frac{1}{1 - x - x^2}$$

If you start with $F_0 = 0$ then the result is

$$F(x) = \frac{x}{1 - x - x^2}$$

Now we can use partial fraction decomposition to make this expression even more explicit by using the following expression where α and β are zeroes of the polynomial in the denominator.

$$\frac{1}{(1 - \alpha x)(1 - \beta x)}$$

The zeros of the polynomial are:

$$x_1 = \frac{1 + \sqrt{5}}{2} \text{ and } x_2 = \frac{1 - \sqrt{5}}{2}$$

Now we can write our expression like:

$$F(x) = \frac{1}{1 - x - x^2} = \frac{1}{\left(1 - x \cdot \frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}\right) \left(1 - x \cdot \frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)}$$

Which after performing the partial fraction decomposition left us with:

$$F(x) = \left(\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} (1 + \sqrt{5}) \right)^n - \left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} (1 - \sqrt{5}) \right)^n \right)$$

QED

24 Geometry

24.1 Formulas for Area and Perimeter of Geometric Figures

- **Square**

- Area: $A = a^2$
- Perimeter: $P = 4a$

- **Rectangle**

- Area: $A = l \cdot w$
- Perimeter: $P = 2(l + w)$

- **Circle**

- Area: $A = \pi r^2$
- Circumference: $C = 2\pi r$

- **Triangle (General)**

- Area: $A = \frac{1}{2}b \cdot h$
- Perimeter: $P = a + b + c$

- **Equilateral Triangle**

- Area: $A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}a^2$
- Perimeter: $P = 3a$

- **Isosceles Triangle**

- Area: $A = \frac{b}{4}\sqrt{4a^2 - b^2}$

- **Trapezoid**

- Area: $A = \frac{1}{2}(a + b)h$
- Perimeter: $P = a + b + c + d$

- **Parallelogram**

- Area: $A = b \cdot h$
- Perimeter: $P = 2(a + b)$

24.2 Formulas for Area and Volume of 3D Geometric Figures

- **Cube**

- Surface Area: $A = 6a^2$
- Volume: $V = a^3$

- **Cylinder**

- Surface Area: $A = 2\pi r(h + r)$
- Volume: $V = \pi r^2 h$

- **Cone**

- Surface Area: $A = \pi r(r + l)$ with l = slant height
- Volume: $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$

- **Sphere**

- Surface Area: $A = 4\pi r^2$

– Volume: $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$

- **Square Pyramid**

– Surface Area: $A = a^2 + 2a \cdot l$

– Volume: $V = \frac{1}{3}a^2h$

- **Triangular Pyramid (Tetrahedron)**

– Volume: $V = \frac{1}{3}A_b \cdot h$

- **Prism (General)**

– Surface Area: $A = 2A_b + P_b \cdot h$

– Volume: $V = A_b \cdot h$

24.3 Thales' Theorem

Thales' Theorem states: If A , B , and C are points on a circle where the line AC is the diameter, then the angle $\angle ABC$ is a right angle.

$$\angle ABC = 90^\circ \quad \text{if } AC \text{ is a diameter of the circle}$$

24.4 Conversion Between Radians and Degrees

To convert between radians and degrees, use the following formulas:

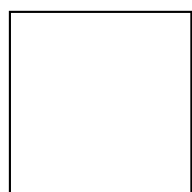
$$\text{Degrees} = \text{Radians} \times \left(\frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \right)$$

$$\text{Radians} = \text{Degrees} \times \left(\frac{\pi}{180^\circ} \right)$$

Geometric Figures with Formulas (2D)

Square and Rectangle

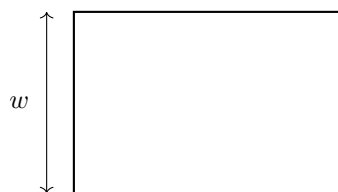
$$A = a^2 \quad P = 4a$$



Square

a

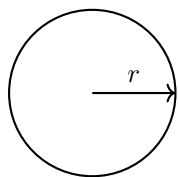
$$A = l \cdot w \quad P = 2(l + w)$$



Rectangle

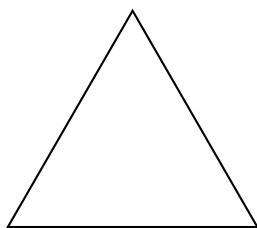
l

Circle and Triangle Types



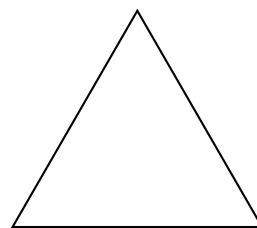
Circle

$$A = \pi r^2 \quad C = 2\pi r$$



Equilateral

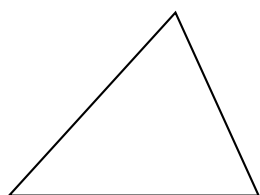
$$A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}a^2$$



Isosceles

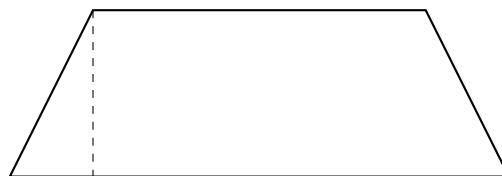
$$A = \frac{b}{4}\sqrt{4a^2 - b^2}$$

Scalene Triangle, Trapezoid, Parallelogram



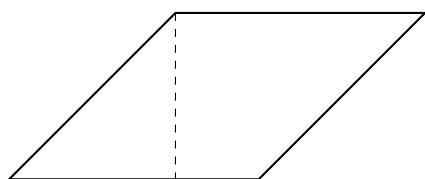
Scalene Triangle

$$A = \frac{1}{2}b \cdot h$$



Trapezoid

$$A = \frac{1}{2}(a + b)h$$

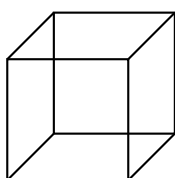


Parallelogram

$$A = b \cdot h \quad P = 2(a + b)$$

24.5 3D Geometric Figures with Formulas

24.5.1 Cube and Cylinder



Cube

$$A = 6a^2 \quad V = a^3$$

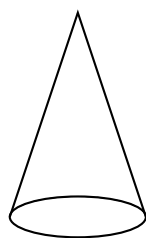


Cylinder

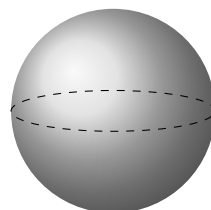
$$A = 2\pi r(h + r)$$

$$V = \pi r^2 h$$

24.5.2 Cone and Sphere

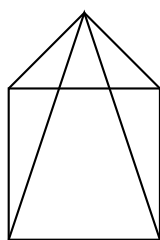


Cone
 $A = \pi r(r + l)$
 $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$

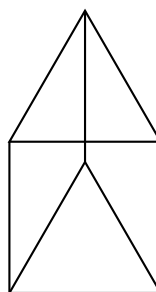


Sphere
 $A = 4\pi r^2$ $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$

24.5.3 Pyramid and Prism



Square Pyramid
 $A = a^2 + 2al$
 $V = \frac{1}{3}a^2 h$



Triangular Prism
 $A = 2A_b + P_b h$
 $V = A_b \cdot h$

24.6 Axioms of Euclidean Geometry

Euclidean geometry is founded on a set of basic assumptions known as axioms or postulates, originally formulated by the Greek mathematician Euclid in his work *Elements*. These axioms form the logical basis for plane geometry and include the following:

- I. *Line Postulate*: A straight line segment can be drawn joining any two points.
- II. *Extension Postulate*: Any straight line segment can be extended indefinitely in a straight line.
- III. *Circle Postulate*: Given any straight line segment, a circle can be drawn having the segment as radius and one endpoint as center.
- IV. *Right Angle Postulate*: All right angles are congruent.
- V. *Parallel Postulate*: If a line segment intersects two straight lines and makes the interior angles on the same side less than two right angles, then the two lines, if extended indefinitely, meet on that side.

These five postulates define the framework of classical geometry in a flat (Euclidean) space. Notably, the fifth postulate—the parallel postulate—has been the subject of much scrutiny and led to the development of non-Euclidean geometries when it was altered or replaced.

24.7 Types of Angles and Angle Relationships

An angle is the distance between two rays or intercepting lines.

- If angle is less than 90° it is an *acute* angle
- If it is exactly 90° it is a *right* angle
- It is more than 90° but less than 180° it is called an *obtuse* angle

Now let us look at other types of angles

24.7.1 Vertical Angles

When two lines intersect, they form two pairs of opposite (or vertical) angles. Vertical angles are always congruent. That is, if two angles are vertical, their measures are equal:

$$\angle A = \angle B$$

For example, if two lines intersect and form angles of 60° and 120° , the angles opposite each other are both 60° and both 120° .

24.7.2 Adjacent Angles

Adjacent angles are two angles that share a common side and a common vertex, and do not overlap. When two lines intersect, each pair of adjacent angles forms a straight angle (or a linear pair), summing to 180° :

$$\angle 1 + \angle 2 = 180^\circ$$

This is known as the Linear Pair Postulate.

24.7.3 Complementary Angles

Complementary angles are two angles whose measures add up to 90° :

$$\angle X + \angle Y = 90^\circ$$

Complementary angles do not have to be adjacent, but if two intersecting lines form a right angle, the two acute angles adjacent to the right angle may be complementary.

24.7.4 Angles Generated by Traversals

When a transversal crosses two or more lines, it forms several pairs of angles with specific relationships. Some key types include:

- *Corresponding Angles*: Angles in the same relative position at each intersection. If the lines are parallel, corresponding angles are congruent:

$$\angle 1 \cong \angle 2$$

- *Alternate Interior Angles*: Angles that lie between the two lines but on opposite sides of the transversal. They are congruent if the lines are parallel:

$$\angle 3 \cong \angle 4$$

- *Alternate Exterior Angles*: Angles outside the two lines and on opposite sides of the transversal. Also, congruent when the lines are parallel:

$$\angle 5 \cong \angle 6$$

- *Consecutive (Same-Side) Interior Angles*: Angles on the same side of the transversal and inside the parallel lines. These are supplementary:

$$\angle 7 + \angle 8 = 180^\circ$$

24.8 Triangle Similarity and Congruence

Triangles can be compared using criteria of similarity or congruence, depending on whether their shapes are the same or both shape and size are identical.

24.8.1 Triangle Congruence

Two triangles are *congruent* if all corresponding sides and angles are equal. This means the triangles are identical in shape and size. Common criteria for triangle congruence include:

- *SSS (Side-Side-Side)*: All three pairs of corresponding sides are equal.
- *SAS (Side-Angle-Side)*: Two pairs of sides and the angle between them are equal.
- *ASA (Angle-Side-Angle)*: Two pairs of angles and the included side are equal.
- *AAS (Angle-Angle-Side)*: Two angles and a non-included side are equal.
- *HL (Hypotenuse-Leg)*: For right triangles, if the hypotenuse and one leg are equal.

24.8.2 Triangle Similarity

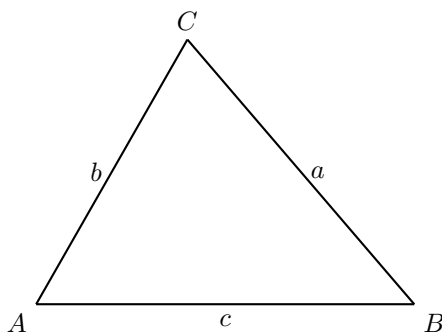
Two triangles are *similar* if their corresponding angles are equal and their corresponding sides are in proportion. This means they have the same shape but not necessarily the same size. Criteria for similarity include:

- *AA (Angle-Angle)*: Two pairs of corresponding angles are equal.
- *SAS (Side-Angle-Side)*: One pair of corresponding angles is equal, and the sides including those angles are in proportion.
- *SSS (Side-Side-Side)*: All three pairs of corresponding sides are in proportion.

24.9 Visualizations of Triangle Similarity and Congruence

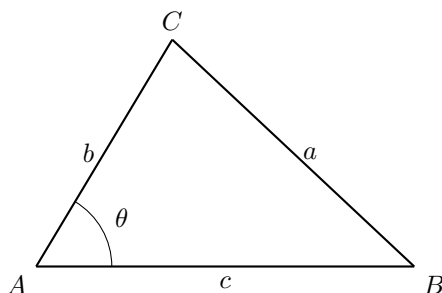
24.9.1 SSS (Side-Side-Side)

A triangle is uniquely determined if all three sides are known.



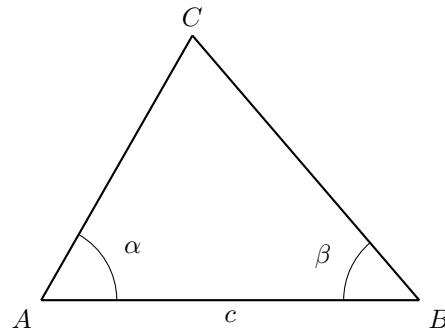
24.9.2 SAS (Side-Angle-Side)

A triangle is uniquely determined if two sides and the included angle are known.



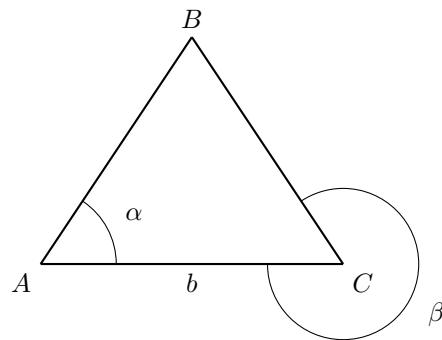
24.9.3 ASA (Angle-Side-Angle)

A triangle is uniquely determined if two angles and the included side are known.



24.9.4 AAS (Angle-Angle-Side)

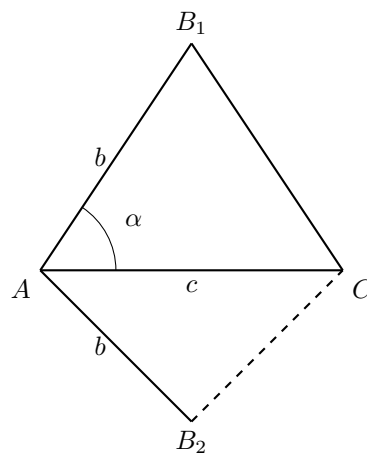
A triangle is uniquely determined if two angles and a non-included side are known.



24.9.5 SSA (Side-Side-Angle)

Two sides and a non-included angle do *not always* determine a unique triangle. This case is ambiguous and can result in:

- One triangle (when the opposite side is long enough),
- Two triangles (ambiguous case),
- No triangle (when the side is too short).



24.10 Triangle Medians, Angle Bisectors, and Altitudes

In any triangle, there are special line segments that connect vertices to specific points on the opposite sides. These segments play key roles in triangle geometry and have unique properties.

Median

A *median* of a triangle is a line segment that connects a vertex to the midpoint of the opposite side. Every triangle has three medians, and they intersect at a single point called the *centroid*, which is the triangle's center of mass. The centroid divides each median in a ratio of 2 : 1, with the longer part closer to the vertex.

Angle Bisector

An *angle bisector* is a line segment that divides an angle of the triangle into two equal parts and extends to the opposite side. All three angle bisectors intersect at a point called the *incenter*, which is the center of the triangle's incircle (the largest circle that fits inside the triangle and touches all three sides).

Altitude

An *altitude* of a triangle is a perpendicular segment from a vertex to the line containing the opposite side (not necessarily within the triangle). Altitudes intersect at a point called the *orthocenter*. Unlike medians and bisectors, altitudes can fall outside the triangle in obtuse triangles.

Centroid \rightarrow Intersection of medians

Incenter \rightarrow Intersection of angle bisectors

Orthocenter \rightarrow Intersection of altitudes

24.11 The Midsegment Theorem

The *Midsegment Theorem* states that the segment connecting the midpoints of two sides of a triangle is:

- *Parallel* to the third side of the triangle
- *Half the length* of the third side

Let $\triangle ABC$ be a triangle, and let D and E be the midpoints of sides AB and AC , respectively. Then the segment \overline{DE} is the *midsegment*, and we have:

$$\overline{DE} \parallel \overline{BC} \quad \text{and} \quad DE = \frac{1}{2}BC$$

This theorem is useful in coordinate geometry, triangle proofs, and for simplifying complex geometric relationships within triangles.

24.12 Intercept Theorems

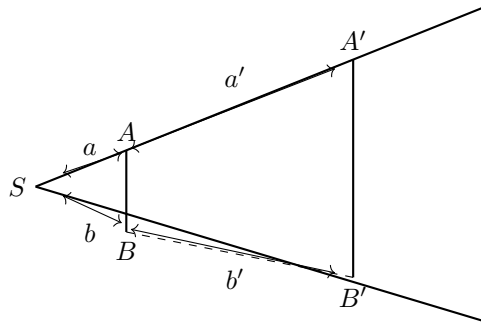
The intercept theorems describe relationships between segment lengths when two rays from a point intersect two parallel lines. They are based on similar triangles and allow us to calculate unknown lengths using proportions.

24.12.1 First Intercept Theorem

If two rays start from a common point and are intersected by two parallel lines, then:

$$\frac{a}{a'} = \frac{b}{b'},$$

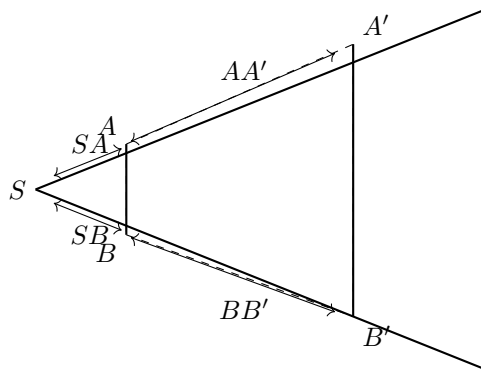
where a and b are segments on one ray, and a' , b' are the corresponding segments on the other ray.



24.12.2 Second Intercept Theorem (General Form)

If a ray intersects two parallel lines, the segments from the origin point to the lines are in the same ratio as the segments along the parallels:

$$\frac{SA}{SA'} = \frac{SB}{SB'} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{AB}{A'B'} = \frac{SA}{SA'}$$



24.13 Proof of the Pythagorean Theorem

We want to prove that $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$ is a true statement.

Let us build a Square with area c^2 and take our original triangle and put it on the sides on the square.

This will create a square of sides $(a + b)^2$ which is bigger than the inner square c^2 .

Now let us find the area c^2 using what we know about this shape.

$$\begin{aligned} (a + b)^2 &= 4\left(\frac{ab}{2}\right) + c^2 \\ (a + b)^2 &= 2ab + c^2 \\ a^2 + 2ab + b^2 &= 2ab + c^2 \\ a^2 + b^2 &= c^2 \end{aligned}$$

QED

25 Trigonometry

In this section, we will cover a variety of trigonometric functions and their properties.

25.1 Trigonometric Functions

- $\sin(x) = \frac{1}{\csc(x)}$
- $\cos(x) = \frac{1}{\sec(x)}$
- $\tan(x) = \frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)} = \frac{1}{\cot(x)}$
- $\csc(x) = \frac{1}{\sin(x)}$
- $\sec(x) = \frac{1}{\cos(x)}$
- $\cot(x) = \frac{\cos(x)}{\sin(x)} = \frac{1}{\tan(x)}$

25.2 SOH-CAH-TOA

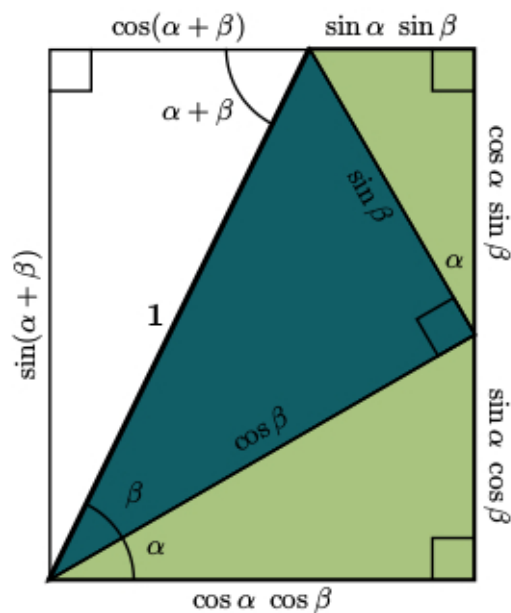
- $\sin(x) = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$
- $\cos(x) = \frac{\text{adjacent}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$
- $\tan(x) = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{adjacent}}$

25.3 Pythagorean Identities

- $\sin^2(x) + \cos^2(x) = 1$
- $1 + \tan^2(x) = \sec^2(x)$
- $1 + \cot^2(x) = \csc^2(x)$

25.4 Sum and Difference Formulas

- $\sin(a + b) = \sin(a) \cos(b) + \cos(a) \sin(b)$
- $\sin(a - b) = \sin(a) \cos(b) - \cos(a) \sin(b)$
- $\cos(a + b) = \cos(a) \cos(b) - \sin(a) \sin(b)$
- $\cos(a - b) = \cos(a) \cos(b) + \sin(a) \sin(b)$
- $\tan(a + b) = \frac{\tan(a) + \tan(b)}{1 - \tan(a) \tan(b)}$
- $\tan(a - b) = \frac{\tan(a) - \tan(b)}{1 + \tan(a) \tan(b)}$



$$\begin{aligned}\sin(\alpha + \beta) &= \sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta \\ \cos(\alpha + \beta) &= \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta\end{aligned}$$

25.5 Double Angle Formulas

- $\sin(2x) = 2 \sin(x) \cos(x)$
- $\cos(2x) = \cos^2(x) - \sin^2(x) = 2 \cos^2(x) - 1 = 1 - 2 \sin^2(x)$
- $\tan(2x) = \frac{2 \tan(x)}{1 - \tan^2(x)}$
- $\csc(2x) = \frac{2 \csc(x) \sec(x)}{1 - \tan^2(x)}$
- $\sec(2x) = \frac{1 + \tan^2(x)}{2 \tan(x)}$
- $\cot(2x) = \frac{1 - \tan^2(x)}{2 \tan(x)}$

25.6 Half Angle Formulas

- $\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 - \cos(x)}{2}}$
- $\cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = \pm \sqrt{\frac{1 + \cos(x)}{2}}$
- $\tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = \frac{\sin(x)}{1 + \cos(x)} = \frac{1 - \cos(x)}{\sin(x)} = \frac{\tan(x)}{1 + \tan^2(x)}$
- $\csc\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{2}{1 - \cos(x)}}$
- $\sec\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{\cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)} = \pm \sqrt{\frac{2}{1 + \cos(x)}}$
- $\cot\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{\tan\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)} = \frac{1 + \cos(x)}{\sin(x)} = \frac{1 - \tan^2(x)}{2 \tan(x)}$

25.7 Product to Sum Formulas

- $\sin(a) \sin(b) = \frac{1}{2} [\cos(a - b) - \cos(a + b)]$
- $\cos(a) \cos(b) = \frac{1}{2} [\cos(a - b) + \cos(a + b)]$
- $\sin(a) \cos(b) = \frac{1}{2} [\sin(a + b) + \sin(a - b)]$
- $\cos(a) \sin(b) = \frac{1}{2} [\sin(a + b) - \sin(a - b)]$

25.8 Power Reducing Formulas

- $\sin^2(x) = \frac{1 - \cos(2x)}{2}$
- $\cos^2(x) = \frac{1 + \cos(2x)}{2}$
- $\tan^2(x) = \frac{1 - \cos(2x)}{1 + \cos(2x)}$
- $\csc^2(x) = \frac{1}{\sin^2(x)} = \frac{2}{1 - \cos(2x)}$
- $\sec^2(x) = \frac{1}{\cos^2(x)} = \frac{2}{1 + \cos(2x)}$
- $\cot^2(x) = \frac{1}{\tan^2(x)} = \frac{1 + \cos(2x)}{1 - \cos(2x)}$

25.9 Even and Odd Functions

- $\sin(-x) = -\sin(x)$
- $\cos(-x) = \cos(x)$
- $\tan(-x) = -\tan(x)$
- $\csc(-x) = -\csc(x)$
- $\sec(-x) = \sec(x)$
- $\cot(-x) = -\cot(x)$

25.10 Graph Identity

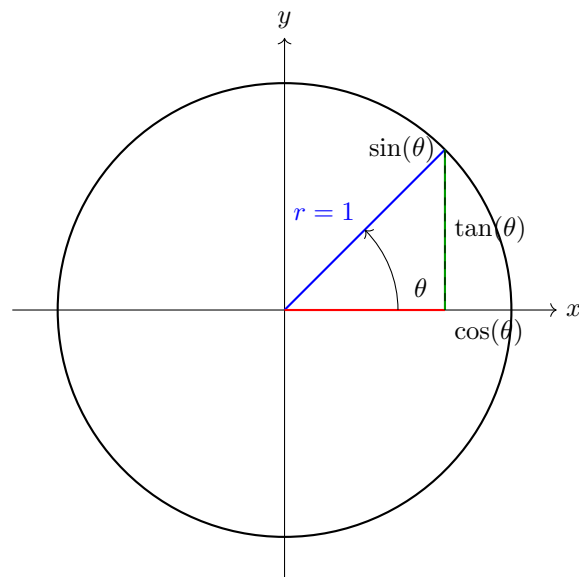
$$\cos(x) = \sin(x + \frac{\pi}{2})$$

25.11 Trigonometric Values

θ (radians)	$\sin(\theta)$	$\cos(\theta)$	$\tan(\theta)$
0	0	1	0
$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	1
$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	1	0	undefined
$\frac{2\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{3\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	-1
$\frac{5\pi}{6}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
π	0	-1	0
$\frac{7\pi}{6}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
$\frac{5\pi}{4}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	1
$\frac{4\pi}{3}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	-1	0	undefined
$\frac{5\pi}{3}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$-\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{7\pi}{4}$	$-\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$	-1
$\frac{11\pi}{6}$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
2π	0	1	0

25.12 Unit Circle and Trigonometric Functions

The unit circle is a circle with a radius of 1 centered at the origin. Trigonometric functions like $\sin(\theta)$, $\cos(\theta)$, and $\tan(\theta)$ can be defined based on the coordinates of a point on the circle corresponding to angle θ .



25.13 Definitions on the Unit Circle:

- $\cos(\theta)$ is the *x-coordinate* of the point on the circle.
- $\sin(\theta)$ is the *y-coordinate*.

- $\tan(\theta) = \frac{\sin(\theta)}{\cos(\theta)}$ is the ratio of the opposite side to the adjacent side in the triangle.

25.14 Trigonometric Rules

$$\begin{aligned} - \frac{\sin \alpha}{a} &= \frac{\sin \beta}{b} = \frac{\sin \gamma}{c} \\ - c^2 &= a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos \gamma \\ - \frac{a-b}{a+b} &= \frac{\tan \frac{1}{2}(\alpha-\beta)}{\tan \frac{1}{2}(\alpha+\beta)} \end{aligned}$$

25.15 Proof of the Cosine Rule

The *Cosine Rule* relates the lengths of the sides of a triangle to the cosine of one of its angles. For any triangle ABC with sides $a = BC$, $b = AC$, and $c = AB$, and angle $\gamma = \angle ACB$, the cosine rule states:

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos(\gamma)$$

Proof

Consider triangle ABC , and place it on the coordinate plane such that point C is at the origin $(0, 0)$, point B is at $(a, 0)$, and point A lies somewhere in the plane. Let angle $\gamma = \angle ACB$.

Let the coordinates of point A be $(b \cos \gamma, b \sin \gamma)$, since $b = AC$ and we're using polar coordinates to define its location relative to point C .

Using the distance formula to find side $c = AB$, we get:

$$\begin{aligned} c^2 &= (a - b \cos \gamma)^2 + (0 - b \sin \gamma)^2 \\ &= a^2 - 2ab \cos \gamma + b^2 \cos^2 \gamma + b^2 \sin^2 \gamma \\ &= a^2 + b^2 (\cos^2 \gamma + \sin^2 \gamma) - 2ab \cos \gamma \\ &= a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos \gamma \end{aligned}$$

Since $\cos^2 \gamma + \sin^2 \gamma = 1$.

Thus, we have proven that:

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos \gamma$$

QED

26 Linear Systems of Equations

In this section, we will discuss the solution of linear systems of equations. A linear system of equations is a set of equations that can be expressed in the form:

$$\begin{aligned} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \cdots + a_{1n}x_n &= b_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \cdots + a_{2n}x_n &= b_2 \\ &\vdots \\ a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \cdots + a_{mn}x_n &= b_m, \end{aligned}$$

where a_{ij} are the coefficients of the variables x_j , and b_i are the constants on the right-hand side of the equations. The goal is to find the values of x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n that satisfy all equations simultaneously.

26.1 Matrix Representation

A linear system can be represented in matrix form as:

$$Ax = b$$

Where A is the coefficient matrix, x is the vector of variables, and b is the vector of constants. The coefficient matrix A is an $m \times n$ matrix, where m is the number of equations and n is the number of variables. The vector x is an $n \times 1$ column vector, and the vector b is an $m \times 1$ column vector.

26.2 Solution Set of a Linear System

In the context of Definition 6.1, the solution set $L(A, b)$ of the system of equations associated with (A, b) is defined as

$$L(A, b) := \{x \in K^n \mid Ax = b\}.$$

26.3 Equality of the Rank $\text{rg}(A) = \text{rg}_S(A)$

We have $\text{rg}(A) = \text{rg}_S(A)$.

Proof:

For $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)^T \in K^n$, it holds that

$$Ax = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i a_i.$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rg}(A) &= \text{rg}(L_A) = \dim(\text{Im}(L_A)) = \dim(\{L_A(x) \mid x \in K^n\}) = \dim(\{Ax \mid x \in K^n\}) \\ &= \dim\left\{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i a_i \mid x_i \in K\right\} = \dim(L(a_1, \dots, a_n)) = \text{rg}_S(A). \end{aligned}$$

26.4 Solvability of the Linear System $Ax = b$

The linear system $Ax = b$ is solvable if and only if

$$\text{rg}(a_1, \dots, a_n) = \text{rg}(a_1, \dots, a_n, b).$$

More concisely, we write

$$\text{rg}(A) = \text{rg}(A, b).$$

Proof:

We have

$$Ax = (a_1, \dots, a_n)x = x_1a_1 + \dots + x_na_n = b.$$

Therefore, a solution vector x exists if and only if

$$b \in L(a_1, \dots, a_n) \Leftrightarrow \text{rg}(A) = \text{rg}(A, b),$$

where $L(a_1, \dots, a_n)$ denotes the linear span of a_1, \dots, a_n .

26.5 Solution Set of the Linear System $Ax = b$

Let $x_s \in K^n$ be a solution of $Ax = b$. Then the solution set is given by

$$L(A, b) = x_s + \ker(A) = \{x_s + x \mid x \in \ker(A)\}.$$

Proof:

$$x \in \ker(A) \Leftrightarrow Ax = 0 \Leftrightarrow A(x_s + x) = Ax_s + Ax = Ax_s = b.$$

26.6 Gaussian Elimination

Gaussian elimination is a method for solving linear systems by transforming the system into an upper triangular form. The steps involved in Gaussian elimination are:

1. Forward elimination: Transform the system into an upper triangular form by eliminating the variables from the equations.
2. Back substitution: Solve for the variables starting from the last equation and substituting back into the previous equations.

The forward elimination process involves performing row operations on the augmented matrix $[A|\mathbf{b}]$ to create zeros below the diagonal. The row operations include:

- Swapping two rows
- Multiplying a row by a non-zero scalar
- Adding or subtracting a multiple of one row from another row

Once the matrix is in upper triangular form, back substitution is used to find the values of the variables. The last equation gives the value of the last variable, which can then be substituted into the previous equations to find the other variables.

26.7 Gauss-Jordan Elimination

Gauss-Jordan elimination is an extension of Gaussian elimination that transforms the matrix into reduced row echelon form (RREF). In RREF, each leading entry in a row is 1, and all entries above and below the leading entry are zeros. The steps involved in Gauss-Jordan elimination are:

1. Forward elimination: Transform the system into an upper triangular form.
2. Back substitution: Transform the upper triangular matrix into RREF by eliminating the entries above the leading 1s.
3. Solve for the variables directly from the RREF matrix.

The Gauss-Jordan elimination method is particularly useful for finding the inverse of a matrix, as it can be applied to the augmented matrix $[A|I]$, where I is the identity matrix. If the left side of the augmented matrix becomes I , then the right side will be the inverse of A .

Example:

Solve the following system of equations using Gaussian elimination:

$$\begin{aligned}2x + 3y + z &= 1 \\4x + y - z &= 2 \\-2x + y + 3z &= 3\end{aligned}$$

Solution: The augmented matrix for the system is:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & 3 & 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 & -1 & 2 \\ -2 & 1 & 3 & 3 \end{array} \right)$$

Performing row operations to eliminate the variables, we can transform the matrix into upper triangular form:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & \frac{3}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & -5 & -3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{array} \right)$$

Now, we can perform back substitution to find the values of x , y , and z :

$$\begin{aligned}z &= 1 \\-5y - 3z &= 0 \implies y = -\frac{3}{5} \\2x + 3y + z &= 1 \implies x = \frac{1}{5}\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the solution to the system is:

$$\begin{aligned}x &= \frac{1}{5} \\y &= -\frac{3}{5} \\z &= 1\end{aligned}$$

26.8 Homogeneous Linear Equations

A linear equation is said to be *homogeneous* if its constant term is zero. That is, it can be written in the form:

$$a_1x_1 + a_2x_2 + \cdots + a_nx_n = 0$$

Such equations always have at least the trivial solution $x_1 = x_2 = \cdots = x_n = 0$.

26.9 Particular Solution

A particular solution to a linear system of equations is a specific solution that satisfies the system. It can be found using various methods, including substitution, elimination, or matrix methods. A particular solution is not unique; there may be multiple particular solutions depending on the system. A particular solution can be found by substituting specific values for the variables and solving for the remaining variables. For example, in the system

$$\begin{aligned}2x + 3y &= 5 \\4x - y &= 1\end{aligned}$$

we can substitute $x = 1$ into the first equation to find y :

$$2(1) + 3y = 5$$

$$3y = 3$$

$$y = 1$$

Thus, $(x, y) = (1, 1)$ is a particular solution to the system. However, this is not the only solution; other values of x may yield different values of y .

26.10 General = Particular + Homogeneous

The general solution of a linear system of equations is the complete set of solutions that satisfy the system. It can be expressed as the sum of a particular solution and the general solution of the associated homogeneous system.

The general solution can be written as:

$$x = x_p + x_h$$

Where x_p is a particular solution to the non-homogeneous system, and x_h is the general solution to the homogeneous system. The homogeneous system is obtained by setting the right-hand side of the equations to zero:

$$Ax = 0$$

The theorem says:

Any linear system's solution set has the form:

$$\left\{ \vec{p} + c_1\vec{\beta}_1 + \cdots + c_k\vec{\beta}_k \mid c_1, \dots, c_k \in \mathbb{R} \right\},$$

where \vec{p} is a particular solution to the system, and the vectors $\vec{\beta}_1, \dots, \vec{\beta}_k$ form a basis of the solution space to the corresponding homogeneous system. The number k equals the number of **free variables** the system has after applying Gaussian elimination.

26.11 Linear Combination Lemma

Any linear combination of linear combinations is a linear combination.

26.12 Example: Gaussian Elimination with 3 Equations and 4 Unknowns

Consider the following system of linear equations:

$$x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 4$$

$$2x_1 + 5x_2 + x_3 + 3x_4 = 10$$

$$x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 + 2x_4 = 7$$

Step 1: Augmented Matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 4 \\ 2 & 5 & 1 & 3 & 10 \\ 1 & 3 & 2 & 2 & 7 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 2: Eliminate below pivot in column 1

- Row 2 = Row 2 - 2 × Row 1
- Row 3 = Row 3 - Row 1

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 3: Eliminate below pivot in column 2

- Row 3 = Row 3 – Row 2

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 1 & 1 & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 4: Back Substitution

From Row 3:

$$2x_3 = 1 \Rightarrow x_3 = \frac{1}{2}$$

From Row 2:

$$x_2 - x_3 + x_4 = 2 \Rightarrow x_2 = 2 + x_3 - x_4 = 2 + \frac{1}{2} - x_4 = \frac{5}{2} - x_4$$

From Row 1:

$$x_1 + 2x_2 + x_3 + x_4 = 4 \Rightarrow x_1 = 4 - 2x_2 - x_3 - x_4$$

Substitute:

$$x_1 = 4 - 2\left(\frac{5}{2} - x_4\right) - \frac{1}{2} - x_4 = 4 - 5 + 2x_4 - \frac{1}{2} - x_4 = -1 - \frac{1}{2} + x_4 = -\frac{3}{2} + x_4$$

General Solution

Let $x_4 = t$ (free variable), then:

$$\begin{aligned} x_1 &= -\frac{3}{2} + t \\ x_2 &= \frac{5}{2} - t \\ x_3 &= \frac{1}{2} \\ x_4 &= t \end{aligned} \quad \text{with } t \in \mathbb{R}$$

Solution Set:

$$\left\{ \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{3}{2} \\ \frac{5}{2} \\ \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} + t \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \mid t \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$$

26.13 The Determinant, the cross product and the solutions of linear Systems of Equations

A linear system of three equation has the following properties:

- There is a unique solution if the determinant of the coefficient matrix is non-zero.

$$\langle (a \times b), c \rangle = \det(a, b, c) \neq 0$$

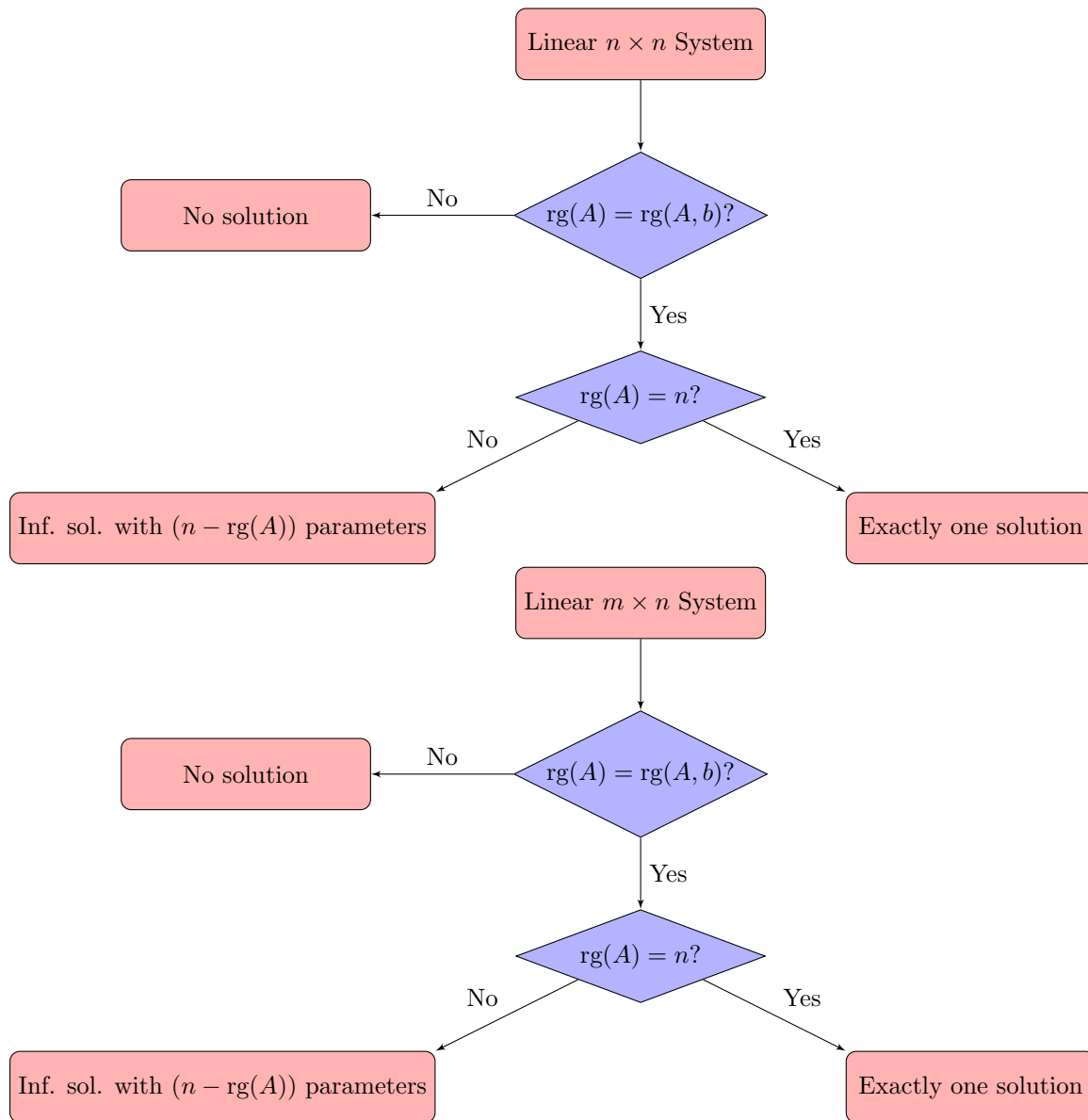
- There are infinitely many solutions if the determinant of the coefficient matrix is zero.

$$\langle (a \times b), c \rangle = \det(a, b, c) = 0$$

- There is no solution if the determinant of the coefficient matrix is zero and the system is inconsistent.

$$\langle (a \times b), c \rangle = 0$$

26.14 Chart for the number of solutions



26.15 Proof of the Gaussian Elimination

The row operations do not change the solution set.

Proof:

A linear system of equations of the form $Ax = b$, $A \in K^{m \times n}$ with some solution x can be multiplied by some elementary matrix C_1, C_2, C_3 which correspond to a row operation $CAx = Cb$.

The Equality is kept and therefore, $L(A, b) \subset L(CA, Cb)$. If $x \in L(CA, Cb)$ then

$$CAx = Cb \implies C^{-1}CAx = C^{-1}Cb \implies Ax = b$$

Because of the invertibility of elementary matrices we can be sure that $L(CA, Cb) \subset L(A, b)$.

Now for the case that $L(A, b) = \emptyset$. If we assume that $L(CA, CB) \neq \emptyset$, then there would be some $x \in L(CA, CB)$ with $CAx = Cb$. By multiplying both side by C^{-1} we get $Ax = b$ and therefore, $L(A, b) \neq \emptyset$, which is a contradiction to our original assumption $L(A, b) = \emptyset$.

□

Now we only have to prove that each regular matrix can be transformed in the reduced echelon form or even row reduced echelon form. This is the equivalent of saying that the row operations do not change the rank of the matrix.

Proof:

If C is an elementary matrix and $A \in K^{m \times n}$ some matrix. The statement $rg(CA) = rg(A)$ is true because of the invertibility of the elementary matrices and the isomorphism in vector spaces.

Given $A = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$. The exchange of two columns preserves $L := L(a_1, \dots, a_n)$, and also the $rg_s(A)$. Concerning the scaling of a column by some λ $L := L(a_1, \dots, \lambda a_k, \dots, a_n)$ also preserves $dim(L) = rg_s(A)$. And finally, the addition $L = L(a_1, \dots, a_i + \lambda a_k, \dots, a_n)$ also preserves $rg_s(A) = rg(A)$. Thus, $rg(CA) = rg(A)$.

□♦♦

The only part left is to prove that if A has an inverse, then with use of the row operations we can transform it in to a matrix with an upper triangular with also no zero element on the main diagonal.

Proof:

First we eliminate all the elements under the main diagonal for all columns until the column $k-1$. With this, we have created a new matrix $A^{(\ell)} = C_\ell \cdots \dot{C}_1 A$ which looks like:

$$A^{(\ell)} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{1,k-1}^{(\ell)} & a_{1k}^{(\ell)} & a_{1,k+1}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{1n}^{(\ell)} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & a_{k-1,k-1}^{(\ell)} & a_{k-1,k}^{(\ell)} & a_{k-1,k+1}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{k-1,n}^{(\ell)} \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & a_{kk}^{(\ell)} & a_{k,k+1}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{kn}^{(\ell)} \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \vdots & a_{k+1,k+1}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{k+1,n}^{(\ell)} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & a_{nk}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & \cdots & a_{nn}^{(\ell)} \end{pmatrix}$$

Because of $rg(A) = rg(A^{(\ell)})$, $a_{ii}^{(\ell)} \neq 0$ for $1 \leq i < k$. All of these elements will not change for the rest of the Gaussian Elimination. Now we want to build another matrix with row operations $A^{(\mu)}$ where $a_{kk}^{(\mu)} \neq 0$ and $a_{ik}^{(\mu)} = 0$ for $i > k$. If $a_{kk}^{(\ell)} \neq 0$ then (i, k) -th element will become 0 by subtracting $\frac{a_{ik}^{(\ell)}}{a_{kk}^{(\ell)}}$ time the k -th row of the i -th row. So can the k -th column be transformed with a series of row operations to the desired form. But if $a_{kk}^{(\ell)} = 0$, then you have to swap it with another row under it. This is the critical point of the algorithm: What if there is no row, also $a_{ik}^{(\ell)} = 0$ for $i \geq k$? Then $A^{(\ell)}$ would be:

$$A^{(\ell)} = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{1,k-1}^{(\ell)} & a_{1k}^{(\ell)} & a_{1,k+1}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{1n}^{(\ell)} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & a_{k-1,k-1}^{(\ell)} & a_{k-1,k}^{(\ell)} & a_{k-1,k+1}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{k-1,n}^{(\ell)} \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & a_{k,k+1}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{kn}^{(\ell)} \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & \vdots & a_{k+1,k+1}^{(\ell)} & \cdots & a_{k+1,n}^{(\ell)} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & 0 & \cdots & \cdots & a_{nn}^{(\ell)} \end{pmatrix}$$

But, that would imply that the k -th column is a linear combination of the other $k-1$ columns, and then $rg(A^{(\ell)}) \leq n-1$ which is a contradiction to the assumption $rg(A^{(\ell)}) = n$

□♦♦

26.16 Alternative Method for finding the Rank of a matrix

For a matrix $A \in K^{(m \times n)}$. The biggest supmatrix of the size $r \times r$ with a non-zero determinant gives us the *rank* of the matrix. $rg(A) = r$.

26.17 Cramer's Rule

For a square matrix $A = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$ and $x, b \in K^n$ with $Ax = b$ with $\det A \neq 0$ then

$$A_i = (a_1, \dots, a_{i-1}, b, a_{i+1}, \dots, a_n), i = 1, \dots, n.$$

The solution i is then

$$x_i = \frac{\det(A_i)}{\det(A)}$$

Proof:

Given a matrix $X_i \in K^{n \times n}$ by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \cdots & x_1 & \cdots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & 0 \\ & x_{i-1} & & \\ 0 & x_i & & \\ & x_{i+1} & & \\ & \vdots & \ddots & \\ & x_n & & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$X_i = (e_1, \dots, e_{i-1}, e_i, e_{i+1}, \dots, e_n)$. By using an n -times the Laplace formula in the first row shows $|X_i| = x_i$.

$$\begin{aligned} AX_i &= A(e_1, \dots, e_{i-1}, e_i, e_{i+1}, \dots, e_n) \\ AX_i &= A(a_1, \dots, a_{i-1}, Ax, a_{i+1}, \dots, a_n) \\ AX_i &= A(a_1, \dots, a_{i-1}, b, a_{i+1}, \dots, a_n) = A_i \end{aligned}$$

This implies $|A_i| = |AX_i| = |A||X_i|$ therefore, $x_i = \frac{|A_i|}{|A|}$.

ΩℰΩ

Another way of thinking about this in a more geometric way is to first think at the determinant as the area/volume/etc. that is spanned by the basis vector and the stretching factor of the transformation $\det(A)$. Now visualize your matrix A as a linear transformation with a non-zero determinant and think about $\det(A_i)$ as the area/volume/etc. which is spanned by the basis vector but with one of the vector substituted by b .

Now in two dimensions, think of the area spanned by the basis vectors $A = xy$. The signed area of the original parallelogram gets stretched by $\det(A)$ this gives us $Area = \det(A)y \Rightarrow y = \frac{Area}{\det(A)}$. This also works for x .

27 Over/Underdetermined Systems of Equations

Let us start with a little motivation for this chapter. Imagine that you have collected some data points, and you want to relate them via a linear function $Ax = (\alpha, \beta, \dots)^T$. This would probably not work because it will be impossible to connect all the points, but you could make an approximation which is the line $\alpha x_1 + \beta x_2 + \dots$ that is the closest to all the points in your data set. Thus, we will find an approximation b that is close to the image of A ($Im(A)$).

For this purpose will use a theorem that says that the best approximation is the orthogonal projection of $p_A(b)$. This projection can be found if there exist an orthonormal basis of the subspace we want to project our vector onto.

27.1 Normal Equations

Given a projection $p_A(b)$ onto the subspace U generated by $A = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$ then there exists an $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$ such that

$$p_A(b) = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k a_k = Ax$$

Also, because of the orthogonal property then

$$\begin{aligned} b - p_A(b) \perp U &\implies b - Ax \in U^\perp \\ &\implies b - Ax \perp a_k \quad \forall k \\ &\implies \langle a_k, b - Ax \rangle = 0 \quad \forall k \\ &\iff A^T(b - Ax) = \vec{0} \\ &\implies A^T b = Ax \end{aligned}$$

This equation $A^T b = Ax$ is called the *normal equation*.

A *normal equation* of a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{(m \times n)}$ has a solution. If $rg(A) = n$ then

$$x = (A^T A)^{-1} A^T b$$

is a unique solution to the system. The term $(A^T A)^{-1} A^T$ is called the *Generalized Inverse* of A .

Proof:

The statement is true because of the existence of the orthogonal projection which give us a concrete basis. Also, the fact that $rg(A) = n$ also implies that. And also because of the invertibility of $(A^T A)^{-1}$.

□◻◻

27.2 Method of the Least Squares

For a linear system of equations $Ax = b$ with $A \in \mathbb{R}^{(m \times n)}$, $b \in \mathbb{B}^m$ and $m \geq n$. For the case $rg(A) = n$ we have

$$x_s = (A^T A)^{-1} A^T b$$

and

$$\|b - Ax_s\| = \min_{z \in \mathbb{R}^n} \|b - Az\|$$

Here the vector z is called *approximation solution via the method of the least squares*.

Proof:

We know that because of $rg(A) = n$ our solution is unique. And that $p_A(b) = Ax$ is our orthogonal projection. We can use Pythagoras theorem to

$$\begin{aligned}
\|b - Ax\|^2 &= \|(b - p_A(b)) + (p + p_A(b))\|^2 \\
&= \|(b - p_A(b))\|^2 + \|(p + p_A(b))\|^2 \\
&\geq \|(b - p_A(b))\|^2 \\
&= \|b - Ax\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, $p_A(b)$ gives us the smallest distance to the $\text{Img}(A)$

□♦♦

Example I:

$$x = 1, x = -1$$

$$\|Ax - b\|^2 = (x + 1)^2 + (x - 1)^2 = 2x^2 + 2$$

Then $\|Ax - b\|^2$ gives us the smallest distance for $x = 0$.

Example II: We can also take the last example and solve it with an alternative method.

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, x = (x), b = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Let us use the normal equations

$$A^T Ax = A^T b$$

$$(1, 1) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} x = (1, 1) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\implies 2x = 0$$

Example 3:

Given are

$$x_1 = 1, x_2 = 2, x_1 + x_2 = -1$$

with the corresponding matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and solution vector

$$b = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now let us build the normal equation

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \vec{x} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now with Gaussian elimination we get $x = (-\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3})^T$.

Finally, we can use the \vec{x} to solve $Ax = b$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{3} \\ \frac{2}{3} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} = \frac{4}{3} \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

And therefore, $\|Ax - b\|^2 = \frac{48}{9}$.

27.3 Underdetermined Systems of Equations

For a linear system $Ax = b$ such that $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$, $x \in \mathbb{R}^n$, $b \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and $m \leq n$. For $rg(A) = m$ we get the solution vector

$$x_s = A^T(AA^T)^{-1}b$$

Also, x_s is the solution with the smallest length.

$$\|x_s\| = \min_{Ax=b} \|x\|,$$

and x_s is orthogonal to the homogenous system $Az = 0$ which means

$$x_s \perp \ker(A)$$

Finally, we call for $rg(A) = m$, $A^T(AA^T)^{-1}$ the *Generalized Inverse* of A .

Proof:

First, we show the invertibility of AA^T because this implies that x_s is defined.

Given $x \in \ker(AA^T)$. This implies that

$$AA^T x = 0$$

which implies

$$x^T AA^T x = 0$$

because of $x^T A = A^T x$ and this gives us

$$\|A^T x\| = 0$$

therefore, $x \in \ker(A^T)$.

Now because of $rg(A^T) = rg(A) = m$ we get $\dim(\ker(A)^T) = 0$, thus $x = \vec{0}$. Because of that $\ker(AA^T) = 0$ and $rg(AA^T) = m$ thus, the invertibility is proven.

x_s is a solution of $Ax = b$ because of

$$Ax_s = A(A^T(AA^T)^{-1}b) = AA^T(AA^T)^{-1}b = b$$

$x_s \perp \ker(A)$ because for $z \in \ker(A)$

$$\langle z, x_s \rangle = z^T A^T(AA^T)^{-1}b = \langle Az, (AA^T)^{-1}b \rangle = 0$$

due to $Az = 0$.

Finally, thanks to the general solution theorem we know that $x = x_s + z$. Using Pythagoras and by taking into consideration $x_s \perp \ker(A)$

$$\|x\|^2 = \|x_s\|^2 + \|z\|^2 \geq \|x_s\|^2$$

Example:

We have the equation $2x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3 = 6$.

In this case the solution build a plane in \mathbb{R}^3 , thus the solution is the normal vector that cuts the plane. We build the hessian normal form.

$$\frac{1}{3}(2x_1 + 2x_2 - x_3) = 2$$

whose solution is $x = \frac{2}{3}(2, 2, -1)^T$.

Now with our method: $A = (2, 2, -1)$, $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3)$, $b = 6$

$$x = A^T(AA^T)^{-1}b = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \left((2, 2, -1) \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} \right)^{-1} 6$$
$$x = \frac{2}{3}(2, 2, -1)^T$$

28 Analytical Geometry

In this section, we will cover the topics for the geometry of \mathbb{R}^2 and \mathbb{R}^3 . And maybe also in higher dimensions.

28.1 Vectors and Points

In analytical geometry, points and vectors are the basic elements.

A point in \mathbb{R}^3 is represented as $\vec{P} = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$. Or as (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) .

A vector is an object with direction and magnitude (in this case), also represented as $\vec{v} = \begin{pmatrix} v_x \\ v_y \\ v_z \end{pmatrix}$.

Or as $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)^T$.

28.2 Vector Addition and Scalar Multiplication

Given two vectors \vec{a} and \vec{b} :

$$\vec{a} \pm \vec{b} = \begin{pmatrix} a_x \\ a_y \end{pmatrix} \pm \begin{pmatrix} b_x \\ b_y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_x \pm b_x \\ a_y \pm b_y \end{pmatrix}$$

For a scalar λ and vector \vec{a} :

$$\lambda \vec{a} = \lambda \begin{pmatrix} a_x \\ a_y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda a_x \\ \lambda a_y \end{pmatrix}$$

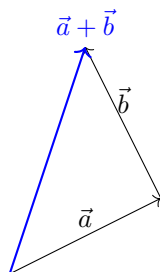


Figure 1: Vector addition: $\vec{a} + \vec{b}$

28.3 Equation of a Line

A line is defined by a point \vec{P} and a direction vector \vec{v} :

$$\vec{r}(t) = \vec{P} + t\vec{v}, \quad t \in \mathbb{R}$$

28.4 Equation of a Plane

A plane is defined by a point \vec{P} and a normal vector \vec{n} :

$$P : \vec{x} = \vec{s} + \lambda_1 \vec{v}_1 + \lambda_2 \vec{v}_2$$

28.5 Scalar (Dot) Product

The inner product of vectors \vec{a} and \vec{b} is a function $\langle x, y \rangle := V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{K}$ with the following properties:
 $\forall \vec{a}, \vec{b} \in V$:

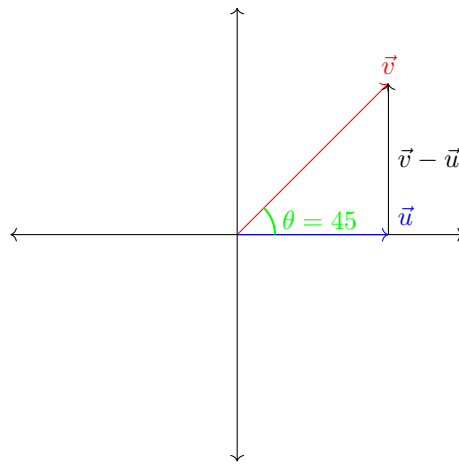
- $\langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} \rangle = \langle \vec{b}, \vec{a} \rangle$
- $\langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} + \vec{c} \rangle = \langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} \rangle + \langle \vec{a}, \vec{c} \rangle$
- $\langle \vec{a}, \lambda \vec{b} \rangle = \lambda \langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} \rangle$
- $\langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} \rangle = 0 \Leftrightarrow \vec{a} = \vec{0} \vee \vec{b} = \vec{0}$

Formula:

$$\langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} \rangle = a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + \cdots + a_n b_n = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i b_i$$

Proof:

Let us look at the following Triangle:



We can use the Cosine law: $\|v - u\|^2 = \|v\|^2 + \|u\|^2 - 2\|u\|\|v\|\cos\theta$.

Now we expand:

$$\|u\|^2 = u_1^2 + u_2^2 \quad \text{and} \quad \|v\|^2 = v_1^2 + v_2^2$$

Then: $\|v - u\|^2 = (v_1 - u_1)^2 + (v_2 - u_2)^2$ and by re-grouping after expansion we get

$$\langle v, u \rangle = v_1 u_1 + v_2 u_2 = \|v\|\|u\|\cos\theta$$

QED

And if we manipulates this expression we can also prove the angle formulas. And with that information we can prove that

$$\cos \frac{\pi}{2} = \frac{\langle v, u \rangle}{\|v\|\|u\|} = 0$$

Only if the Dot Product is equal to zero so, like that we have also proved that only orthogonal vector have a dot product of zero.

28.6 Length (Norm) of a Vector

The norm of a vector \vec{a} is described by different norms:

It also has the following properties:

- $\|\vec{a}\| \geq 0$ and $\|\vec{a}\| = 0 \Leftrightarrow \vec{a} = \vec{0}$
- $\|\lambda\vec{a}\| = |\lambda|\|\vec{a}\|$
- $\|\vec{a} + \vec{b}\| \leq \|\vec{a}\| + \|\vec{b}\|$ (Triangle inequality)
- $\|\vec{a} + \vec{b}\|^2 = \|\vec{a}\|^2 + \|\vec{b}\|^2 + 2\langle\vec{a}, \vec{b}\rangle$ (Pythagorean theorem)

These are the most common norms, although we will be using primarily the euclidean norm:

- *Euclidean norm:*

$$\|\vec{a}\| = \sqrt{\langle\vec{a}, \vec{a}\rangle} = \sqrt{a_1^2 + a_2^2 + \cdots + a_n^2}$$

- *Manhattan norm:*

$$\|\vec{a}\|_1 = |a_1| + |a_2| + \cdots + |a_n|$$

- *Maximum norm:*

$$\|\vec{a}\|_\infty = \max(|a_1|, |a_2|, \dots, |a_n|)$$

28.7 Angle Relations

The angle θ between two vectors is:

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\langle\vec{a}, \vec{b}\rangle}{\|\vec{a}\|\|\vec{b}\|}, \quad \theta = \arccos\left(\frac{\langle\vec{a}, \vec{b}\rangle}{\|\vec{a}\|\|\vec{b}\|}\right)$$

28.7.1 Line-Line Angle

Use direction vectors \vec{v}_1 and \vec{v}_2 :

$$\theta = \arccos\left(\frac{\langle\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2\rangle}{\|\vec{v}_1\|\|\vec{v}_2\|}\right)$$

28.7.2 Line-Plane Angle

Let \vec{v} be the line's direction and \vec{n} the plane's normal:

$$\theta = \arcsin\left(\frac{\langle\vec{v}, \vec{n}\rangle}{\|\vec{v}\|\|\vec{n}\|}\right)$$

28.7.3 Plane-Plane Angle

Angle between planes is angle between their normals:

$$\theta = \arccos\left(\frac{\langle\vec{n}_1, \vec{n}_2\rangle}{\|\vec{n}_1\|\|\vec{n}_2\|}\right)$$

28.8 Line Relations

Two lines can be:

- *Identical*: same direction vector and point
- *Parallel*: direction vectors are proportional
- *Intersecting*: one solution for t_1, t_2 such that $\vec{r}_1(t_1) = \vec{r}_2(t_2)$
- *Skew*: not parallel, do not intersect

To find the relation:

1. Check if direction vectors are scalar multiples \Rightarrow parallel
2. Solve $\vec{P}_1 + t\vec{v}_1 = \vec{P}_2 + s\vec{v}_2$ for t and s :
 - Solution exists \Rightarrow intersect
 - No solution \Rightarrow skew
3. If same point and direction vector \Rightarrow identical

28.9 Normalization of a vector

To normalize a vector \vec{a} , we divide it by its length:

$$\hat{\vec{a}} = \frac{\vec{a}}{\|\vec{a}\|} = \frac{\begin{pmatrix} a_x \\ a_y \\ a_z \end{pmatrix}}{\sqrt{a_x^2 + a_y^2 + a_z^2}} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a_x}{\|\vec{a}\|} \\ \frac{a_y}{\|\vec{a}\|} \\ \frac{a_z}{\|\vec{a}\|} \end{pmatrix}$$

28.10 Orthogonal Vectors and the Orthogonal Projection

Two vectors \vec{a} and \vec{b} are orthogonal if:

$$\langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} \rangle = 0$$

The orthogonal projection of vector \vec{a} onto vector \vec{b} is given by:

$$\text{p}_{\vec{b}}(\vec{a}) = \frac{\langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} \rangle}{\|\vec{b}\|^2} \cdot \vec{b}$$

Proof of the projection formula

$$\begin{aligned} p \parallel q &\implies \alpha q = p \quad \forall \alpha \in \mathbb{K} \text{ and } \forall p, q \in V \\ \langle a - p, q \rangle = 0 &\implies \langle a - \alpha q, q \rangle = 0 \implies \langle a, q \rangle - \alpha \langle q, q \rangle = 0 \\ \alpha &= \frac{\langle a, q \rangle}{\langle q, q \rangle} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the orthogonal projection of vector \vec{a} on \vec{b} is given by multiplying \vec{b} by the scalar α .

QED

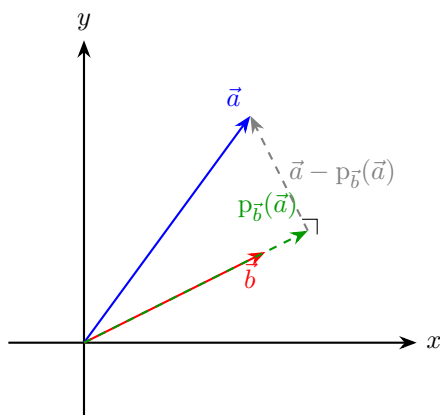


Figure 2: Orthogonal projection of \vec{a} onto \vec{b}

28.11 The Cross Product

The cross product of two vectors \vec{a} and \vec{b} in \mathbb{R}^3 is defined as:

$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a_2 b_3 - a_3 b_2 \\ a_3 b_1 - a_1 b_3 \\ a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

or

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} \hat{i} & \hat{j} & \hat{k} \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 \\ w_1 & w_2 & w_3 \end{pmatrix} = \hat{i}(v_2 w_3 - v_3 w_2) - \hat{j}(v_1 w_3 - v_3 w_1) + \hat{k}(v_1 w_2 - v_2 w_1)$$

The cross product has the following properties:

- $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = -(\vec{b} \times \vec{a})$
- $\vec{a} \times (\vec{b} + \vec{c}) = \vec{a} \times \vec{b} + \vec{a} \times \vec{c}$
- $(\lambda_1 \vec{a}) \times (\lambda_2 \vec{b}) = \lambda_1 \lambda_2 (\vec{a} \times \vec{b})$
- $\|\vec{a} \times \vec{b}\| = \|\vec{a}\| \|\vec{b}\| \sin(\theta)$
- $\langle \vec{a}, (\vec{b} \times \vec{c}) \rangle = 0$ (scalar triple product)
- $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0} \Leftrightarrow \vec{a} = \lambda \vec{b}$ for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$ (parallel vectors)
- $\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = \vec{0} \Leftrightarrow \vec{a} = \vec{0} \vee \vec{b} = \vec{0}$ (zero vector)

The cross product is not defined in \mathbb{R}^2 . The cross product is not commutative, but it is associative:

$$(\vec{a} \times \vec{b}) \times \vec{c} = \vec{a} \times (\vec{b} \times \vec{c})$$

The cross product is distributive over vector addition:

$$\vec{a} \times (\vec{b} + \vec{c}) = \vec{a} \times \vec{b} + \vec{a} \times \vec{c}$$

The cross product is anti-commutative:

$$\vec{a} \times \vec{b} = -(\vec{b} \times \vec{a})$$

The cross product is not associative:

$$(\vec{a} \times \vec{b}) \times \vec{c} \neq \vec{a} \times (\vec{b} \times \vec{c})$$

The cross product is not distributive over scalar multiplication:

$$\lambda(\vec{a} \times \vec{b}) \neq (\lambda \vec{a}) \times \vec{b}$$

The length of the cross product in \mathbb{R}^3 is the area of the parallelogram spanned by the two vectors:

28.12 Orthogonal vectors in \mathbb{R}^2 \mathbb{R}^3

28.12.1 Orthogonal vectors in \mathbb{R}^2

1. Interchange the components
2. Change the sign of one component

28.12.2 Orthogonal vectors in \mathbb{R}^3

1. Interchange two components
2. the one that was not changed, set to zero
3. Change the sign of first component

Example:

$$\vec{a} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \vec{b} = \begin{pmatrix} -2 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

28.13 Hessian Normal Form

The Hessian normal form is a way of expressing the equation of a plane in three-dimensional space using a normalized normal vector. It is particularly useful in computational geometry and physics, where signed distances from points to planes are important.

28.13.1 Geometric Interpretation

The Hessian normal form represents a plane by specifying:

- a unit normal vector $\vec{n} = (a, b, c)$ to the plane,
- and the shortest distance d from the origin to the plane.

This form is derived by normalizing the general plane equation. A plane in 3D can be written as:

$$ax + by + cz + d = 0,$$

where (a, b, c) is a normal vector to the plane and d is the dot product of the normal vector with a point p . If we divide all terms by $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$, we normalize the normal vector:

$$\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}x + \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}y + \frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}z + \frac{d}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}} = 0.$$

Let:

$$\vec{n} = \left(\frac{a}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}, \frac{b}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}}, \frac{c}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}} \right), \quad d' = \frac{d}{\sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}},$$

then the equation becomes:

$$\vec{n} \cdot \vec{r} + d' = 0,$$

which is the Hessian normal form. Here, $\vec{r} = (x, y, z)$ is any point on the plane, and \vec{n} is the unit normal.

28.13.2 Signed Distance to the Plane

This form allows easy calculation of the signed distance from any point \vec{p} to the plane:

$$\text{distance} = \vec{n} \cdot \vec{p} + d',$$

which is positive if \vec{p} lies on the same side of the plane as the normal vector.

28.13.3 Derivation Illustration

To visualize the derivation, imagine a plane with unit normal vector \vec{n} , and a point P in space. The shortest distance from P to the plane is the projection of the vector $\vec{p} - \vec{q}$ onto \vec{n} , where \vec{q} is any point on the plane. This leads to:

$$\text{distance} = (\vec{p} - \vec{q}) \cdot \vec{n}.$$

This gives the signed distance formula and thus, motivates the Hessian form.

28.14 Converting from the parametric form to the Hessian normal form

Steps:

1. Find the normal vector \vec{n} of the plane
2. Normalize the normal vector
3. Find the distance d from the origin to the plane
4. Write the Hessian normal form

28.15 Converting from the Hessian normal form to the parametric form

Steps:

1. Find a point on the plane
2. Find two direction vectors in the plane
3. Write the parametric form

28.16 Properties of lines and planes

- Two planes are parallel if their normal vectors are scalar multiples of each other.
- A line and a plane are parallel if the direction vector of the line is orthogonal to the normal vector of the plane.
- A line intersects a plane if there exists a point on the line that satisfies the equation of the plane.
- Two planes intersect in a line if their normal vectors are not parallel.
- Three planes can intersect in a point, a line, or not at all.
- If we have a line G and a point on the line, for every vector \vec{n} that is orthogonal to the direction vector of the line: $x \in G \iff \langle x, \vec{n} \rangle = \langle p, \vec{n} \rangle$
- If p and q are two points in the line G with a normal vector then $\langle p, \vec{n} \rangle = \langle q, \vec{n} \rangle$
- Let E be a plane with the origin p and the direction vector \vec{v} and \vec{w} , then there exist a normal vector and $x \in E \iff \langle x, \vec{n} \rangle = \langle p, \vec{n} \rangle$

28.17 Convert Normal Vector in Two Direction Vectors

Steps:

1. Given the normal vector $\vec{n} = (a, b, c)$, interchange a and b and multiply b by -1
2. Set the other component to 0. This gives you the first direction vector $\vec{v} = (-b, a, 0)$
3. Take the original normal vector \vec{n} and interchange a and c and multiply c by -1
4. Set the other component to 0. This gives you the second direction vector $\vec{w} = (-c, 0, a)$

28.18 Intersection between Line and Plane

To find the intersection between a line and a plane, we can use the following steps:

1. Write the parametric form of the line: $\vec{r}(t) = \vec{P} + t\vec{v}$, where \vec{P} is a point on the line and \vec{v} is the direction vector.
2. Write the equation of the plane in Hessian normal form: $\langle \vec{n}, \vec{x} - \vec{P} \rangle = 0$, where \vec{n} is the normal vector and \vec{P} is a point on the plane.
3. Substitute the parametric form of the line into the equation of the plane.

4. Solve for t to find the intersection point.
5. Substitute t back into the parametric form of the line to find the intersection point.

Example:

Given the line:

$$g(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and the plane:

$$E(u, m) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + u \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + m \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix},$$

we want to find the intersection point.

Step 1: Determine the normal vector of the plane using the cross product of the two direction vectors:

$$\vec{v}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \vec{v}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\vec{n} = \vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 2: Use the normal vector and a point on the plane to write the plane equation:

$$\langle \vec{n}, \vec{x} - \vec{Q} \rangle = 0, \quad \vec{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 3: Plug the line into the plane equation:

$$\vec{x}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + t \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \vec{x}(t) - \vec{Q} = \begin{pmatrix} t \\ t-1 \\ t-1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now compute the dot product:

$$\langle \vec{n}, \vec{x}(t) - \vec{Q} \rangle = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} t \\ t-1 \\ t-1 \end{pmatrix} = -t + (t-1) + (t-1) = t-2$$

Step 4: Solve for t :

$$t-2=0 \Rightarrow t=2$$

Step 5: Substitute $t=2$ into the line:

$$\vec{x}(2) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} + 2 \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Result: The line intersects the plane at the point

$$\boxed{\begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}}$$

Proof:

$$E : \langle x, n \rangle = \langle p, n \rangle$$

$$\begin{aligned}
G : x &= p + t \cdot v \\
\langle x, n \rangle &= c \\
\langle p + t \cdot v, n \rangle &= c \\
\langle p, n \rangle + t \cdot \langle v, n \rangle &= c \\
t &= \frac{c - \langle p, n \rangle}{\langle v, n \rangle}
\end{aligned}$$

□◻◻

28.19 Distances between points, lines and planes

28.19.1 Distance between two points

The distance between two points \vec{P}_1 and \vec{P}_2 in \mathbb{R}^n is given by:

$$d(\vec{P}_1, \vec{P}_2) = \|\vec{P}_1 - \vec{P}_2\| = \sqrt{(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2 + \cdots + (z_1 - z_2)^2}$$

where $\vec{P}_1 = (x_1, y_1, \dots, z_1)$ and $\vec{P}_2 = (x_2, y_2, \dots, z_2)$.

28.19.2 Distance between a point and a hyperplane

The distance between a point \vec{P} and a hyperplane defined by the equation $\langle \vec{n}, \vec{x} - \vec{P}_0 \rangle = 0$ is given by:

$$d(\vec{P}, \text{hyperplane}) = \frac{|\langle \vec{n}, \vec{P} - \vec{P}_0 \rangle|}{\|\vec{n}\|}$$

where \vec{P}_0 is a point on the hyperplane and \vec{n} is the normal vector of the hyperplane.

28.19.3 Distance between two lines

The distance between two lines in \mathbb{R}^3 can be calculated using the formula:

$$d = \frac{|\langle \vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2, \vec{P}_2 - \vec{P}_1 \rangle|}{\|\vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2\|}$$

where \vec{P}_1 and \vec{P}_2 are points on the two lines, and \vec{v}_1 and \vec{v}_2 are the direction vectors of the lines.

28.19.4 Distance between a point and a line

The distance between a point \vec{P} and a line defined by the parametric equation $\vec{r}(t) = \vec{P}_0 + t\vec{v}$ is given by:

$$d(\vec{P}, \text{line}) = \frac{\|\vec{v} \times (\vec{P} - \vec{P}_0)\|}{\|\vec{v}\|}$$

where \vec{P}_0 is a point on the line and \vec{v} is the direction vector of the line.

28.19.5 Distance between two planes

The distance between two parallel planes defined by the equations $\langle \vec{n}, \vec{x} - \vec{P}_1 \rangle = 0$ and $\langle \vec{n}, \vec{x} - \vec{P}_2 \rangle = 0$ is given by:

$$d = \frac{|\langle \vec{n}, \vec{P}_2 - \vec{P}_1 \rangle|}{\|\vec{n}\|}$$

where \vec{P}_1 and \vec{P}_2 are points on the two planes, and \vec{n} is the normal vector of the planes.

28.19.6 Distance between a point and a plane

The distance between a point \vec{P} and a plane defined by the equation $\langle \vec{n}, \vec{x} - \vec{P}_0 \rangle = 0$ is given by:

$$d(\vec{P}, \text{plane}) = \frac{|\langle \vec{n}, \vec{P} - \vec{P}_0 \rangle|}{\|\vec{n}\|}$$

where \vec{P}_0 is a point on the plane and \vec{n} is the normal vector of the plane.

Example:

Distance Between Two Skew Lines

To find the shortest distance between two skew lines, we use the formula:

$$\text{distance} = \frac{|\langle (\vec{P}_2 - \vec{P}_1), (\vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2) \rangle|}{\|\vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2\|}$$

Where:

- \vec{P}_1 and \vec{P}_2 are points on each line,
- \vec{v}_1 and \vec{v}_2 are the direction vectors,
- $\vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2$ is the cross product of the direction vectors.

Given:

$$g_1 : \vec{r}_1(a) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} + a \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad g_2 : \vec{r}_2(b) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} + b \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 1: Set

$$\vec{P}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 2 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \vec{v}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$\vec{P}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \vec{v}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 2: Compute the vector between base points:

$$\vec{P}_2 - \vec{P}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1-2 \\ 2-2 \\ 3-2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 3: Compute the cross product:

$$\vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} (1)(1) - (1)(2) \\ (1)(3) - (0)(1) \\ (0)(2) - (1)(3) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 4: Compute scalar triple product:

$$\langle (\vec{P}_2 - \vec{P}_1), (\vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2) \rangle = \left\langle \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 3 \\ -3 \end{pmatrix} \right\rangle = (-1)(-1) + (0)(3) + (1)(-3) = 1 + 0 - 3 = -2 \Rightarrow |\dots| = 2$$

Step 5: Magnitude of the cross product:

$$\|\vec{v}_1 \times \vec{v}_2\| = \sqrt{(-1)^2 + 3^2 + (-3)^2} = \sqrt{1 + 9 + 9} = \sqrt{19}$$

Final Answer:

$$\text{distance} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{19}} \approx 0.458$$

$$\text{Shortest distance between the lines is } \frac{2}{\sqrt{19}}$$

28.20 Foot of the Perpendicular and Mirror Point

28.20.1 Foot of the Perpendicular

The *foot of the perpendicular* from a point \vec{P} to a line (or plane) is the point on the line (or plane) where the perpendicular from \vec{P} meets it.

Line case:

Given a line in parametric form:

$$g : \vec{r}(t) = \vec{A} + t\vec{v}$$

and a point \vec{P} not on the line, the foot of the perpendicular \vec{F} satisfies:

$$(\vec{P} - \vec{F}) \perp \vec{v} \quad \Rightarrow \quad (\vec{P} - (\vec{A} + t\vec{v})) \cdot \vec{v} = 0$$

Solve this inner product for t , then compute:

$$\vec{F} = \vec{A} + t\vec{v}$$

Plane case:

Given a plane in normal form:

$$\langle \vec{n}, \vec{x} - \vec{Q} \rangle = 0$$

then the foot of the perpendicular from point \vec{P} to the plane is:

$$\vec{F} = \vec{P} - ((\vec{P} - \vec{Q}) \cdot \vec{n}) \cdot \vec{n}$$

28.20.2 Mirror Point

The *mirror point* (or reflected point) of \vec{P} across a line or plane is the point \vec{P}' such that the midpoint between \vec{P} and \vec{P}' is the foot of the perpendicular.

Formula:

$$\vec{P}' = 2\vec{F} - \vec{P}$$

Where \vec{F} is the foot of the perpendicular from \vec{P} to the line or plane.

29 Algebraic Structures

Algebraic structures are mathematical systems consisting of a set equipped with one or more operations that satisfy certain axioms. They provide a unified language to study various objects in mathematics, from numbers and matrices to functions and vector spaces. Understanding these structures is fundamental in abstract algebra and has applications in computer science, cryptography, coding theory, and physics.

29.1 Operations: Internal and External

An *internal composition law* is a binary operation that takes two elements from a set and returns another element in the same set. Formally, for a set S and operation \circ , we have:

$$\circ : S \times S \rightarrow S$$

An *external composition law* involves a second set acting on the structure, such as scalar multiplication in vector spaces:

$$\cdot : K \times V \rightarrow V$$

where K is a field and V is a vector space.

29.2 Properties of Operations

Let $*$ be a binary operation on a set S . The most important properties include:

- *Associativity*: $(a * b) * c = a * (b * c)$ for all $a, b, c \in S$
- *Commutativity*: $a * b = b * a$ for all $a, b \in S$
- *Identity Element*: There exists $e \in S$ such that $a * e = e * a = a$ for all $a \in S$
- *Inverse Element*: For every $a \in S$, there exists $a^{-1} \in S$ such that $a * a^{-1} = a^{-1} * a = e$
- *Distributivity*: $a \circ (b \bullet c) = (a \circ b) \bullet (a \circ c)$ and/or $(b \bullet c) \circ a = (b \circ a) \bullet (c \circ a)$

29.3 Homomorphisms and Isomorphisms

Let (G, \oplus) and (H, \oplus') be two algebraic structures.

A *homomorphism* is a function $\varphi : G \rightarrow H$ such that:

$$\varphi(a \oplus b) = \varphi(a) \oplus' \varphi(b), \quad \forall a, b \in G$$

An *isomorphism* is a bijective homomorphism. If such a map exists, we say the structures are *isomorphic*, written as $G \cong H$.

29.4 Common Algebraic Structures

29.4.1 Semigroup (S, \oplus)

A *semigroup* is a set S equipped with a binary operation \oplus that is *associative*. This means:

$$(a \oplus b) \oplus c = a \oplus (b \oplus c) \quad \text{for all } a, b, c \in S.$$

There is no requirement for an identity element or inverses. Semigroups capture the essence of combining elements consistently (e.g., string concatenation).

29.4.2 Monoid (M, \oplus)

A *monoid* builds on a semigroup by adding an *identity element* e such that:

$$a \oplus e = e \oplus a = a \quad \text{for all } a \in M.$$

This structure is useful when an operation must have a “do nothing” element, like 0 for addition or 1 for multiplication.

29.4.3 Group (G, \oplus)

A *group* is a monoid where every element has an *inverse*:

$$\text{For each } a \in G, \text{ there exists } a^{-1} \in G \text{ such that } a \oplus a^{-1} = a^{-1} \oplus a = e.$$

Groups model reversible processes and are foundational in symmetry and abstract algebra.

29.4.4 Abelian Group (A, \oplus)

An *Abelian group* (or commutative group) is a group where the operation is *commutative*:

$$a \oplus b = b \oplus a \quad \text{for all } a, b \in A.$$

This property makes Abelian groups especially important theory and linear algebra.

29.4.5 Ring (R, \oplus, \odot)

A *ring* is a set with two operations:

- (R, \oplus) is an Abelian group.
- (R, \odot) is a semigroup (associative multiplication).
- Multiplication distributes over addition:

$$a \odot (b \oplus c) = a \odot b \oplus a \odot c.$$

Rings generalize arithmetic of integers, where addition and multiplication interact in a structured way.

29.4.6 Commutative Ring (R, \oplus, \odot)

A *commutative ring* is a ring where multiplication is also *commutative*:

$$a \odot b = b \odot a \quad \text{for all } a, b \in R.$$

This is the kind of ring most often encountered in basic algebra, such as the integers \mathbb{Z} .

29.4.7 Field (K, \oplus, \odot)

A *field* is a commutative ring where every nonzero element has a *multiplicative inverse*:

$$(K \setminus \{0\}, \odot) \text{ is an Abelian group.}$$

Fields like \mathbb{Q} , \mathbb{R} , and \mathbb{C} allow division (except by zero), enabling the full range of arithmetic operations.

29.4.8 Vector Space (V, \oplus, \cdot)

A *vector space* over a field K consists of:

- An Abelian group (V, \oplus) for vector addition.
- A scalar multiplication $\cdot : K \times V \rightarrow V$ satisfying:
 - Distributivity over vector addition: $a \cdot (v_1 + v_2) = a \cdot v_1 + a \cdot v_2$
 - Distributivity over field addition: $(a + b) \cdot v = a \cdot v + b \cdot v$
 - Associativity: $a \cdot (b \cdot v) = (ab) \cdot v$
 - Identity: $1 \cdot v = v$

Vector spaces provide the foundation for linear algebra, where scalars from a field combine with vectors from a set.

30 Vector Spaces

A *vector space* is a set V with two operations, vector addition and scalar multiplication, such that:

- I. The set V is closed under vector addition.
- II. The set V is closed under scalar multiplication.
- III. Vector addition is commutative.
- IV. Vector addition is associative.
- V. There exists a zero vector $\vec{0} \in V$ such that $\vec{v} + \vec{0} = \vec{v}$ for all $\vec{v} \in V$.
- VI. For every vector $\vec{v} \in V$, there exists a vector $-\vec{v} \in V$ such that $\vec{v} + (-\vec{v}) = \vec{0}$.
- VII. Scalar multiplication is distributive with respect to vector addition: $a(\vec{u} + \vec{v}) = a\vec{u} + a\vec{v}$ for all $a \in F$ and $\vec{u}, \vec{v} \in V$.
- VIII. Scalar multiplication is distributive with respect to field addition: $(a+b)\vec{v} = a\vec{v} + b\vec{v}$ for all $a, b \in F$ and $\vec{v} \in V$.
- IX. Scalar multiplication is associative: $a(b\vec{v}) = (ab)\vec{v}$ for all $a, b \in F$ and $\vec{v} \in V$.
- X. The multiplicative identity acts as a scalar: $1\vec{v} = \vec{v}$ for all $\vec{v} \in V$.

The set F is a field, and the elements of V are called *vectors*.

Examples:

1. The set of all n -tuples of real numbers \mathbb{R}^n is a vector space over the field of real numbers \mathbb{R} .
2. The set of all polynomials of degree less than or equal to n is a vector space over the field of real numbers \mathbb{R} .
3. The set of all continuous functions from \mathbb{R} to \mathbb{R} is a vector space over the field of real numbers \mathbb{R} .
4. The set of all $m \times n$ matrices with real entries is a vector space over the field of real numbers \mathbb{R} .

30.1 Subspaces

A subset W of a vector space V is a *subspace* of V if:

- I. The zero vector $\vec{0} \in W$.
- II. For all $\vec{u}, \vec{v} \in W$, $\vec{u} + \vec{v} \in W$.
- III. For all $a \in F$ and $\vec{v} \in W$, $a\vec{v} \in W$.

If W is a subspace of V , we write $W \subseteq V$.

The intersection of two subspaces is also a subspace.

30.2 Linear Combinations

A *linear combination* of vectors $\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n$ in a vector space V is an expression of the form:

$$a_1\vec{v}_1 + a_2\vec{v}_2 + \dots + a_n\vec{v}_n$$

Where a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n are scalars from the field F . The set of all linear combinations of a set of vectors $\{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$ is called the **span** of those vectors, denoted by $\text{span}(\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n)$. The span of a set of vectors is a subspace of the vector space V .

The span of a set of vectors is the smallest subspace containing those vectors.

30.3 Properties of the subspaces

- The intersection of two subspaces is a subspace.
- The union of two subspaces is not necessarily a subspace.
- The sum of two subspaces U and W is defined as:

$$U + W = \{\vec{u} + \vec{w} : \vec{u} \in U, \vec{w} \in W\}$$

The sum of two subspaces is a subspace.

The sum of two subspaces is the smallest subspace containing both subspaces.

- The direct sum of two subspaces U and W is defined as:

$$U \oplus W = \{\vec{u} + \vec{w} : \vec{u} \in U, \vec{w} \in W\}$$

The direct sum of two subspaces is a subspace.

- The direct sum of two subspaces is the smallest subspace containing both subspaces, such that $U \cap W = \{\vec{0}\}$.
- The direct sum of two subspaces is denoted by $U \oplus W$.

30.4 Linear Independence

A set of vectors $\{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$ in a vector space V is said to be *linearly independent* if the only solution to the equation:

$$\lambda_1 \vec{v}_1 + \lambda_2 \vec{v}_2 + \dots + \lambda_n \vec{v}_n = \vec{0}$$

or

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \vec{v}_i = \vec{0}$$

is $\lambda_1 = \lambda_2 = \dots = \lambda_n = 0$. If there exists a non-trivial solution to this equation, then the set of vectors is said to be linearly dependent. A set of vectors is linearly independent if and only if the only linear combination of those vectors that equals the zero vector is the trivial combination where all coefficients are zero.

30.4.1 Properties of the linear independence

- A set of vectors $\{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$ is linearly independent if and only if the only linear combination of those vectors that equals the zero vector is the trivial combination where all coefficients are zero.
- If a set of vectors $\{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$ is linearly independent, then any subset of that set is also linearly independent.
- If a set of vectors $\{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$ is linearly dependent, then at least one vector in that set can be expressed as a linear combination of the others.

30.5 Base

- A *base* of a vector space V is a set of vectors $\{\vec{v}_1, \vec{v}_2, \dots, \vec{v}_n\}$ that is linearly independent and spans the vector space V .
- The number of vectors in a base of a vector space is called the *dimension* of the vector space.
- The dimension of a vector space V is denoted by $\dim(V)$.
- If V has a finite base, then it is said to be *finite-dimensional*.
- If V does not have a finite base, then it is said to be *infinite-dimensional*.

30.6 Dimension

The *dimension* of a vector space V is the number of vectors in a base of V .

- The dimension of a vector space is denoted by $\dim(V)$.
- The dimension of a vector space can be finite or infinite.
- If the dimension of a vector space is finite, then it is said to be *finite-dimensional*.
- If the dimension of a vector space is infinite, then it is said to be *infinite-dimensional*.

30.6.1 How to find the base of a set vector

To find the base of a set of vectors, we can use the following steps:

1. Write the vectors as columns of a matrix.
2. Row-reduce the matrix to echelon form.
3. The non-zero rows of the echelon form matrix correspond to the base of the vector space spanned by the original set of vectors.

The number of non-zero rows in the echelon form matrix is equal to the dimension of the vector space spanned by the original set of vectors.

The base of a vector space is not unique. Different bases can span the same vector space.

30.7 Basis Extension Theorem

Let V be a vector space over a field K , and let

$$v_1, \dots, v_r, \quad w_1, \dots, w_s \in V.$$

Suppose that (v_1, \dots, v_r) is a linearly independent tuple and that

$$\text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r, w_1, \dots, w_s) = V.$$

Then it is possible to extend (v_1, \dots, v_r) to a basis of V by possibly adding suitable vectors from the set $\{w_1, \dots, w_s\}$.

Proof:

If $\text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r) = V$, the statement is obvious. So assume

$$\text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r) \neq V.$$

Then there exists at least one w_i such that $w_i \notin \text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r)$; otherwise, if all $w_i \in \text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r)$, then

$$\text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r, w_1, \dots, w_s) = \text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r) = V,$$

which contradicts our assumption that $\text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r) \neq V$.

The tuple (w_i, v_1, \dots, v_r) is linearly independent, because of

$$\sum_{j=1}^r \lambda_j v_j + \lambda w_i = 0$$

It follows that $\lambda = 0$ (since $w_i \notin \text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r)$), and then also $\lambda_j = 0$ for all j because the v_j are linearly independent.

Possibly, (w_i, v_1, \dots, v_r) is still not a basis of V . Then we repeat the previous step and keep adding further w_i until the tuple extends (v_1, \dots, v_r) to a basis of V . This process terminates after finitely many steps, since

$$\text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_r, w_1, \dots, w_s) = V.$$

Every finitely generated vector space V has a basis.

30.8 Exchange Lemma

Let (v_1, \dots, v_n) and (w_1, \dots, w_m) be bases of a vector space V . Then, for every v_i , there exists a w_j such that if we replace v_i by w_j in the tuple (v_1, \dots, v_n) , it still forms a basis of V .

Proof:

Let (v_1, \dots, v_n) and (w_1, \dots, w_m) be two bases of V . Suppose we remove v_i from the first basis. The truncated tuple $(v_1, \dots, v_{i-1}, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_n)$ satisfies

$$\text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_{i-1}, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_n) \neq V,$$

because if $\text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_{i-1}, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_n) = V$, then v_i would lie in the span of the remaining vectors and could be written as a linear combination of them. This would contradict the assumption that (v_1, \dots, v_n) is linearly independent and a basis of V .

By the Basis Extension Theorem, we can extend the truncated tuple $(v_1, \dots, v_{i-1}, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_n)$ to a basis of V by adding vectors from $(v_1, \dots, v_{i-1}, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_n, w_1, \dots, w_m)$. Therefore, by the Basis Extension Theorem, there exists a w_j such that

$$w_j \notin \text{span}(v_1, \dots, v_{i-1}, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_n),$$

and the tuple $(v_1, \dots, v_{i-1}, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_n, w_j)$ is linearly independent.

If this tuple does not form a basis, we can again apply the Basis Extension Theorem and add one of the vectors v_1, \dots, v_n to complete the basis. Clearly, the only possibility is to add v_i , but this would imply that the tuple (v_1, \dots, v_n, w_j) is not a basis, as w_j would then be linearly dependent on the other vectors. Therefore, $(v_1, \dots, v_{i-1}, v_{i+1}, \dots, v_n, w_j)$ must form a basis of V .

30.9 Dimension of a sum of subspaces

Let U and W be two subspaces of a vector space V . Then the dimension of the sum of the two subspaces is given by:

$$\dim(U + W) = \dim(U) + \dim(W) - \dim(U \cap W)$$

30.10 Linear Independence of polynomials

Let P_n be the vector space of polynomials of degree at most n . The set of polynomials $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$ is a basis for P_n . The dimension of P_n is $n + 1$.

- The set of polynomials $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$ is linearly independent.
- The set of polynomials $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$ spans the vector space P_n .
- The dimension of P_n is $n + 1$.

To prove that the set of polynomials $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$ is linearly independent, we can use the following steps:

1. Assume that there exists a linear combination of the polynomials that equals zero:

$$a_0 + a_1x + a_2x^2 + \dots + a_nx^n = 0,$$

where a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n are scalars.

2. Since the left-hand side is a polynomial of degree at most n , it can only be equal to zero if all coefficients are zero.

3. Therefore, we have $a_0 = a_1 = \cdots = a_n = 0$, which proves that the set of polynomials $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$ is linearly independent.

So you only have to prove that the set of coefficients vector is linearly independent.

30.11 Interpolation Polynomial

Given the $n + 1$ points (x_k, y_k) , with $0 \leq k \leq n$ and all x_k distinct, there exists exactly one polynomial $p_n \in P_n$ such that $y_k = p_n(x_k)$ for all $0 \leq k \leq n$. This polynomial is called the interpolation polynomial.

Proof

The uniqueness follows immediately. We prove the existence by induction on n . For $n = 0$, choose $p_0(x) = y_0$.

Now assume the statement is true for $n-1$. Let the polynomial p_{n-1} interpolate the points $(x_0, y_0), \dots, (x_{n-1}, y_{n-1})$.

Define

$$p_n(x) = p_{n-1}(x) + q(x),$$

where

$$q(x) = \frac{(x - x_0)(x - x_1) \cdots (x - x_{n-1})}{(x_n - x_0)(x_n - x_1) \cdots (x_n - x_{n-1})} (y_n - p_{n-1}(x_n)).$$

We have $q \in P_n$, and it follows that $p_n \in P_n$. Furthermore, $q(x_k) = 0$ for $k \leq n-1$ because a linear factor in the numerator always vanishes at x_k . Therefore, $p_n(x_k) = y_k$ for $k \leq n-1$. Additionally, we have

$$q(x_n) = y_n - p_{n-1}(x_n),$$

so that $p_n(x_n) = y_n$.

□◻◻

Example:

Consider the three points $(-2, 1)$, $(-1, -1)$, and $(1, 1)$. These points uniquely define an interpolating parabola p_2 . This parabola can be determined using the definition of p_n . For hand calculations and a few points to interpolate, the following approach is also useful. The general form of the polynomial is

$$p_2(x) = ax^2 + bx + c.$$

Substituting the three points into this form gives the system of equations:

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &= a + b + c && \text{(from the point (1, 1))} \\ -1 &= a - b + c && \text{(from the point (-1, -1))} \\ 1 &= 4a - 2b + c && \text{(from the point (-2, 1))} \end{aligned}$$

This leads to the system of equations:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 4 & -2 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Solving this system gives $a = 1$, $b = 1$, and $c = -1$, so the interpolation polynomial is

$$p_2(x) = x^2 + x - 1.$$

31 Dot Product, Euclidean and Unitary Space

31.1 Scalar Product

Let V be a vector space over a field K . A mapping $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle : V \times V \rightarrow K$ is called an inner product (or inner product) if the following conditions are satisfied:

Symmetry

For all $a, b \in V$:

$$\langle a, b \rangle = \begin{cases} \langle b, a \rangle & \text{if } K = \mathbb{R}, \\ \overline{\langle b, a \rangle} & \text{if } K = \mathbb{C}. \end{cases}$$

Linearity in the First Argument

For all $a, b, c \in V$:

$$\langle a, b + c \rangle = \langle a, b \rangle + \langle a, c \rangle$$

and

$$\langle a + b, c \rangle = \langle a, c \rangle + \langle b, c \rangle.$$

Homogeneity in the First Argument

For all $\alpha \in K$, we have:

$$\langle \alpha a, b \rangle = \alpha \langle a, b \rangle = \begin{cases} \langle a, \alpha b \rangle & \text{if } K = \mathbb{R}, \\ \langle a, \alpha b \rangle & \text{if } K = \mathbb{C}. \end{cases}$$

Positive Definiteness

For all $a \in V \setminus \{0\}$:

$$\langle a, a \rangle > 0,$$

and

$$\langle 0, 0 \rangle = 0.$$

It also can be interpreted as a linear transformation that takes a vector and maps it to a real number via matrix vector multiplication. Also, a more practical way of thinking about the *dot product* is the question: How much are two vectors pointing in the same direction?

31.2 Trigonometric Definition

Think about the orthogonal projection as a triangle. Now, remember that to find the adjacent side x you need to take $x = \cos(\theta)h$, which is the value α in our projection formula $p_a(b) = \frac{\langle a, b \rangle}{\langle a, a \rangle} \alpha a$. Here we add $\|a\|\|b\|$ to make this function linear.

$$\langle a, b \rangle = \|a\|\|b\|\cos(\theta)$$

31.3 Standard Scalar Product for Complex Number

Let $a = (a_i)_{i=1}^n$ and $b = (b_i)_{i=1}^n$ be vectors in \mathbb{C}^n . The standard inner product is defined by

$$\langle a, b \rangle := \sum_{i=1}^n a_i \overline{b_i}.$$

31.4 Scalar Product on $C[a, b]$

Let $f, g \in C[a, b]$. The inner product on $C[a, b]$ is defined by

$$\langle f, g \rangle := \int_a^b f(x) \cdot \overline{g(x)} dx.$$

31.5 Euclidean and Unitary Vector Spaces

A real vector space equipped with an inner product is called a *Euclidean vector space*, while a complex vector space with an inner product is called a *unitary vector space*.

31.6 Norms in Vector Spaces

Let V be a K -vector space and $a, b \in V$. A function $\|\cdot\| : V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is called a norm if and only if the following conditions hold:

- $\|a\| \in \mathbb{R}$,
- $\|a\| \geq 0$,
- $\|a\| = 0 \iff a = 0$,
- $\forall \lambda \in K, \|\lambda a\| = |\lambda| \|a\|$,
- $\|a + b\| \leq \|a\| + \|b\|$.

31.6.1 Induced Norm by a Scalar Product

As in the special case $V = \mathbb{R}^n$, an inner product induces a norm. In a unitary (or Euclidean) space, the inner product induces a (standard) norm defined by

$$\|\cdot\| = \sqrt{\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle}.$$

31.7 Cauchy-Schwarz Inequality in Unitary Vector Spaces

In all unitary vector spaces V , the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality holds:

$$|\langle a, b \rangle| \leq \|a\| \|b\| \quad \forall a, b \in V.$$

31.7.1 Proof of the Triangle Inequality

Both sides of the triangle inequality are real and, in particular, non-negative. Therefore, it is sufficient to prove that the squares of both sides satisfy the desired inequality, i.e., we need to show:

$$\langle a + b, a + b \rangle \leq (\|a\| + \|b\|)^2.$$

First, we expand the left-hand side:

$$\langle a + b, a + b \rangle = \langle a, a \rangle + \langle a, b \rangle + \langle b, a \rangle + \langle b, b \rangle.$$

Since $\langle b, a \rangle = \overline{\langle a, b \rangle}$, we have:

$$\langle a, b \rangle + \langle b, a \rangle = 2 \operatorname{Re} \langle a, b \rangle.$$

Now, we know that the absolute value of a complex number is always greater than or equal to its real part, so:

$$2 \operatorname{Re} \langle a, b \rangle \leq 2 |\langle a, b \rangle|.$$

Using the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality, we can further bound this by:

$$2 \operatorname{Re} \langle a, b \rangle \leq 2 \|a\| \|b\|.$$

Thus, we have:

$$\langle a + b, a + b \rangle \leq \langle a, a \rangle + 2 \|a\| \|b\| + \langle b, b \rangle.$$

Using the definition of the norm, $\|a\|^2 = \langle a, a \rangle$ and $\|b\|^2 = \langle b, b \rangle$, we obtain:

$$\langle a + b, a + b \rangle \leq \|a\|^2 + 2 \|a\| \|b\| + \|b\|^2.$$

This is exactly the expansion of $(\|a\| + \|b\|)^2$, which completes the proof.

□

31.8 Definiteness of Inner Products

The concept of the *inner product* plays a major role in linear algebra, and there are various manifestations of this element. We are going to see how inner products are constructed based on the properties we are interested in. Those being linearity for the columns, symmetry and positive definiteness.

Let us start with a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ and a map $(\cdot, \cdot)_A : \mathbb{R}^n \times \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ more specific $(x, y)_A := \langle x, Ay \rangle$ using the standard Euclidean inner product.

For our first property, the linearity; it is granted for every matrix $A = (a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ because of the rules of matrix-vector multiplication. For example for the basis vectors e_i, e_j we get

$$(e_i, e_j)_A = \langle e_i, Ae_j \rangle = e_i^T Ae_j = e_i^T a_j = a_{ij}$$

Therefore, $(e_i, e_j)_A = (e_j, e_i)_A \iff a_{ij} = a_{ji}$. This means that A has to be symmetric. As a side note, the choice for the Euclidean inner product for the structure of our map is optional. Any kind of inner product would also do the job. This implies that each inner product can be described via a matrix.

31.9 Definiteness and Quadratic Forms

Given a symmetric $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ then:

1. The map $x \rightarrow \langle x, Ax \rangle$ is called the *Quadratic Form*
2. A is *positive definite* if $\langle x, Ax \rangle > 0 \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$
3. A is *negative definite* if $\langle x, Ax \rangle < 0 \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$
4. A is *positive semidefinite* if $\langle x, Ax \rangle \geq 0 \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$
5. A is *negative semidefinite* if $\langle x, Ax \rangle \leq 0 \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$
6. A is *indefinite* if $\exists x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\} : \langle x, Ax \rangle < 0 \wedge \langle y, Ay \rangle > 0$

$(\cdot, \cdot)_A$ is only an inner product if A is symmetric and positive definite.

Example:

Given is the term $x_1^2 - x_3^2 + x_1x_4$, show that it is a quadratic form.

First write the formula for the quadratic form $\langle x, Ax \rangle$ where A is real symmetric matrix

$$\left\langle \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a & b & c & d \\ e & f & g & h \\ i & j & k & l \\ m & n & o & q \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} \right\rangle$$

$$\left\langle \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} ax_1 + bx_2 + cx_3 + dx_4 \\ ex_1 + fx_2 + gx_3 + hx_4 \\ ix_1 + jx_2 + kx_3 + lx_4 \\ mx_1 + nx_2 + ox_3 + px_4 \end{pmatrix} \right\rangle$$

$$x_1(ax_1 + bx_2 + cx_3 + dx_4) + x_2(ex_1 + fx_2 + gx_3 + hx_4) + x_3(ix_1 + jx_2 + kx_3 + lx_4) + x_4(mx_1 + nx_2 + ox_3 + px_4)$$

Now we have to compare the coefficients with the original expression $x_1^2 + (0)x_2^2 - x_3^2 + x_1x_4$.

$$ax_1^2 + bx_1x_2 + cx_1x_3 + dx_1x_4 + ex_2x_1 + fx_2^2 + gx_2x_3 + hx_2x_4 + ix_3x_1 + jx_3x_2 + kx_3^2 + lx_3x_4 + mx_4x_1 + nx_4x_2 + ox_4x_3 + px_4^2$$

Note that the only quadratic terms present in the expression are x_1^2 and $-x_3^2$ while the others are zero. This means that they have to disappear in the main diagonal. Also, the only term that x_1 is also

multiplying is x_4 therefore all the others have to be zero like all other non-quadratic terms which are not present. Thus

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & d \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ m & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now the question is what are d and m because A has to be symmetric, but they can not be 1 because then we would have $2x_1x_4$. Because of that, we will take the only available option $\frac{1}{2}$.

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

And now we are done.

31.10 Minors

For a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ the starting from the left $k \times k$ -submatrices $A_k = (a_{ij})_{i,j=1}^k$ of A . The $D_k = \det(A_k)$ is called a *main minor* or *minor* of A .

31.10.1 Minors and Definiteness

Let A be real, square symmetric matrix, then

- A is positive definite if all main minors are positive.
- A is negative definite if all main minors are negative.
- A is positive semidefinite if all main minors are greater or equal to zero but not all zero.
- A is negative semidefinite if all main minors are less or equal to zero but not all zero.
- A is indefinite if all main minors are equal to zero.

31.11 Connection to Symmetric Matrices

For a real symmetric matrix A the following statements are equivalent.

- A is positive definite.
- All eigenvalues of A are positive.
- All main minors of A are positive.

Continuing, A is positive semidefinite, if all eigenvalues of A are not negative and the main minors are all not positive.

31.12 Sign of the D_k

For the main minors D_k of a negative definite matrix it applies that

$$(-1)^k D_k = (-1)^k \det(A_k) = \det(-A_k) > 0,$$

because $-A$ is positive definite.

31.13 Negative Quadratic Form

If A is negative definite then

$$-\langle x, Ax \rangle = \langle x - Ax, x \rangle > 0$$

31.14 Theorems for Non-squares matrices

31.14.1 Theorem I

Given $m \geq n$ and $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ with $rg(A) = n$. Then $A^T A$ is positive definite. For $rg(A) < n$ is $A^T A$ positive semidefinite.

Proof:

Because of $(A^T A)^T = A^T A$ is $A^T A$ symmetric. Therefore, it applies that

$$\langle x, A^T A x \rangle = x^T A^T A x = (Ax)^T Ax = \langle Ax, Ax \rangle = \|Ax\|^2 \geq 0$$

Also, $A^T A$ is positive semidefinite, and it is also invertible for $rg(A) = n$. If there were an $x \neq 0$ such that $\|Ax\| = 0$ this would imply that $Ax = 0$, also $A^T(Ax) = 0$ therefore $x \in \ker(A^T A)$. And $A^T A$ would not be invertible. Finally, $\langle x, A^T A x \rangle > 0 \forall x \neq 0$, and $A^T A$ is symmetric and positive definite.

31.15 Theorem II

Given $m \leq n$ and $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$. Then $A^T A$ is positive semidefinite and even positive definite if $rg(A) = m$.

32 Orthogonality

32.1 Orthogonality and Projection

Let $a, b \in V$. The vectors a and b are orthogonal to each other if

$$\langle a, b \rangle = 0.$$

This is written as $a \perp b$.

With the same proof as in Theorem 2.25, the Pythagorean Theorem holds

$$\|a + b\|^2 = \|a\|^2 + \|b\|^2,$$

for $a \perp b$ in all unitary vector spaces.

For the orthogonal projection $p_b(a)$ of a vector a onto b , with $b \neq 0$, the formula in every unitary vector space is:

$$p_b(a) = \frac{\langle a, b \rangle}{\langle b, b \rangle} b.$$

32.2 Orthogonal Projection and Orthogonal Complement

Let U be a finitely generated subspace of V and $a \in V$. A vector $p_U(a) \in U$ is called the orthogonal projection of a onto U if

$$a - p_U(a) \perp u \quad \forall u \in U$$

The question arises about well-definedness, i.e., whether such a vector $p_U(a)$ always exists and if it is unique. The following concept helps in the discussion of uniqueness.

For $M \subseteq V$, the *orthogonal complement* of M is defined as

$$M^\perp = \{v \in V \mid v \perp u \forall u \in M\}.$$

- M^\perp is a subspace of V .
- Let U be a subspace of V . Then, we have $U \cap U^\perp = \{0\}$.

Proof:

We need to check the closure property. For $u \in M$, $x, y \in M^\perp$, and $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$, we have:

$$\begin{aligned}\langle x + y, u \rangle &= \langle x, u \rangle + \langle y, u \rangle = 0 \\ \langle \lambda x, u \rangle &= \lambda \langle x, u \rangle = 0.\end{aligned}$$

Let $a \in U \cap U^\perp$. Then, we have $\langle a, u \rangle = 0$ for all $u \in U$, because $a \in U^\perp$, and in particular, $\langle a, a \rangle = 0$ since $a \in U$, which implies $a = 0$.

32.3 Orthogonality of the basis to the Complement

Let U be as before, and let (u_1, \dots, u_m) be a basis of U . For $v \in V$, we have:

$$v \in U^\perp \quad \text{if and only if} \quad \langle v, u_i \rangle = 0 \quad \forall 1 \leq i \leq m.$$

32.4 How to find the orthogonal complement

Let U be a finitely generated subspace of V with basis (u_1, \dots, u_m) . To find the orthogonal complement U^\perp , we can solve the system of equations:

$$\langle v, u_i \rangle = 0 \quad \forall 1 \leq i \leq m.$$

This system can be expressed in matrix form as $A \cdot v = 0$, where A is the matrix whose rows are the vectors u_i and v is the vector we want to find in U^\perp .

32.5 Orthogonal and Orthonormal Systems

Let $B = (v_1, \dots, v_m)$ be an m -tuple of vectors in $V \setminus \{0\}$.

- B is called an orthogonal system in V if all the vectors v_i are pairwise orthogonal.
- An orthogonal system is called an orthonormal system if, in addition, $\|v_i\| = 1$ for all $i = 1, \dots, m$.
- An orthogonal system that forms a basis of V is called an orthogonal basis of V .
- An orthonormal system that forms a basis of V is called an orthonormal basis of V .

Notation:

OG-System OG-Basis ON-System ON-Basis

Using the Kronecker delta symbol $\delta_{i,j}$:

$$\delta_{i,j} = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } i = j, \\ 0, & \text{if } i \neq j, \end{cases}$$

we have $\langle v_i, v_j \rangle = \delta_{i,j}$ for any orthonormal system.

32.6 Writing a vector in terms of the Orthogonal Basis

Example:

The vectors

$$a_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad a_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

are orthogonal and normalized, but do not form a basis. Thus, they constitute an *orthonormal system*.

Example:

The vectors

$$a_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad a_2 = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad a_3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

form a basis, are orthogonal and normalized. Therefore, they form an *orthonormal basis*.

32.7 Linear Independence of Orthogonal Systems

An orthogonal system (v_1, \dots, v_n) is linearly independent.

Proof:

Let $\sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i v_i = 0$. Then, for any v_j , it follows that

$$\left\langle \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i v_i, v_j \right\rangle = \sum_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \langle v_i, v_j \rangle = 0.$$

Due to the orthogonality of the system, all terms vanish except $\lambda_j \langle v_j, v_j \rangle$, so

$$\lambda_j \langle v_j, v_j \rangle = 0.$$

Since $v_j \neq 0$ in any orthogonal system, we have $\langle v_j, v_j \rangle = \|v_j\|^2 > 0$, implying $\lambda_j = 0$ for all $1 \leq j \leq n$.

□

32.8 Representation with Respect to an Orthogonal Basis

Let $B = (v_1, \dots, v_n)$ be an orthogonal basis of a vector space V . Then for every $v \in V$, we have:

$$v = \sum_{k=1}^n \frac{\langle v, v_k \rangle}{\langle v_k, v_k \rangle} v_k,$$

that is, the coordinates of v with respect to the basis B are given by

$$\left(\frac{\langle v, v_k \rangle}{\|v_k\|^2} \right)_{1 \leq k \leq n}^T.$$

32.9 Orthogonal Projection and Direct Sum Decomposition

Let $B = (v_1, \dots, v_m)$ be an orthogonal system in V , and let $U = L(B)$ be the subspace of V spanned by B .

- For every $v \in V$, the orthogonal projection of v onto U is given by:

$$p_U(v) = \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\langle v, v_i \rangle}{\langle v_i, v_i \rangle} v_i.$$

- Every vector $v \in V$ can be uniquely written as the sum $v = p_U(v) + w$, with $w \in U^\perp$. In this case, we have:

$$w = v - p_U(v).$$

- $V = U \oplus U^\perp$, which means that every vector in V can be uniquely decomposed into a sum of a vector from U and a vector from U^\perp .
- If $\dim(V) = n$, then:

$$\dim(U) + \dim(U^\perp) = n \quad \text{for every subspace } U.$$

32.10 The Gram-Schmidt Process

The Gram-Schmidt process is a method for orthonormalizing a set of vectors in an inner product space. Given a finite set of linearly independent vectors (v_1, \dots, v_n) , the process generates an orthonormal basis (u_1, \dots, u_n) as follows:

1. Set $u_1 = \frac{v_1}{\|v_1\|}$.
2. For $k = 2, \dots, n$:
 - (a) Set $w_k = v_k - \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \langle v_k, u_j \rangle u_j$.
 - (b) Set $u_k = \frac{w_k}{\|w_k\|}$.
3. The resulting set (u_1, \dots, u_n) is an orthonormal basis of the subspace spanned by (v_1, \dots, v_n) .

The Gram-Schmidt process can be applied to any finite set of linearly independent vectors in an inner product space, and it is particularly useful for constructing orthonormal bases in Euclidean spaces.

Proof:

Let W be a non-zero finite-dimensional subspace of an inner product space and let (u_1, \dots, u_n) be a basis for W . We will show that an *orthonormal basis* exists.

Let $v_1 = u_1$, then compute the vector u_2 orthogonal to the space W_1 spanned by v_1

$$v_2 = u_2 - \text{proj}_{w_1} u_2 = u_2 - \frac{\langle u_2, v_1 \rangle}{\|v_1\|} v_1$$

Then normalize the vector.

We can continue this approach to of projecting the vector of u_i orthogonal to the space W_i spanned by all basis previously computed v_i basis vectors and then normalize it until we get our orthonormal basis. Note, that because our previous vectors formed a basis we can be sure that during this process no zero vector will be generated because then we will have some u_i that is a linear combination of the other vectors. Thus, this would be a contradiction.

QED

Example:

Let $v_1 = (1, 0, 0)$, $v_2 = (1, 1, 0)$, and $v_3 = (1, 1, 1)$. The Gram-Schmidt process yields:

$$u_1 = \frac{v_1}{\|v_1\|} = (1, 0, 0), \quad u_2 = \frac{v_2 - \langle v_2, u_1 \rangle u_1}{\|v_2 - \langle v_2, u_1 \rangle u_1\|} = (0, 1, 0),$$

$$u_3 = \frac{v_3 - \langle v_3, u_1 \rangle u_1 - \langle v_3, u_2 \rangle u_2}{\|v_3 - \langle v_3, u_1 \rangle u_1 - \langle v_3, u_2 \rangle u_2\|} = (0, 0, 1).$$

Thus, the orthonormal basis is $(1, 0, 0), (0, 1, 0), (0, 0, 1)$.

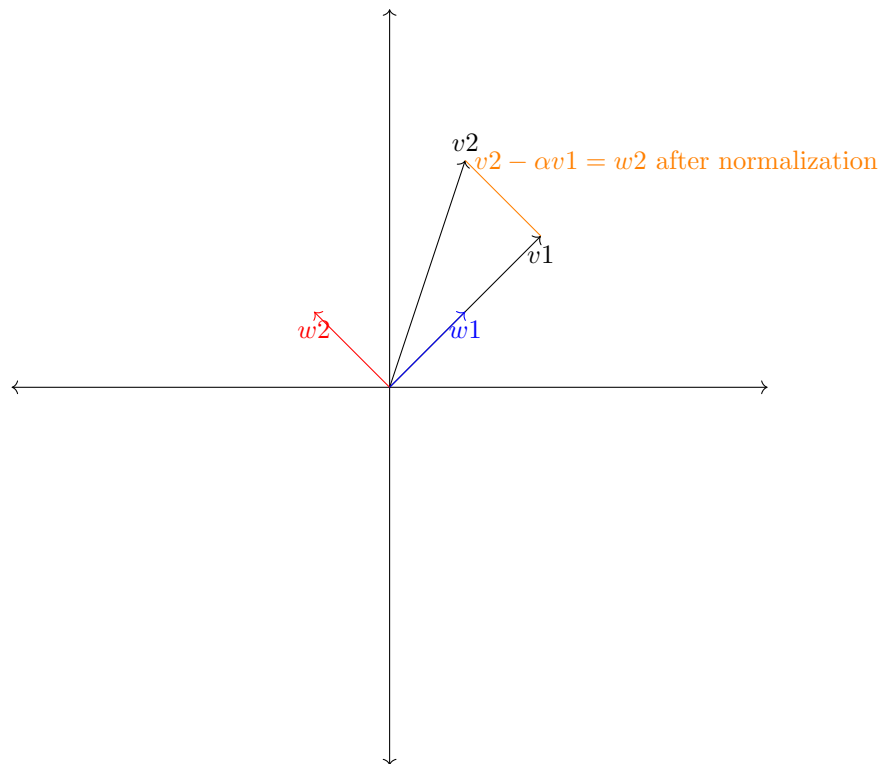
32.11 Existence of Orthonormal Bases and Orthogonal Projections

- Every finitely generated unitary vector space has an orthonormal basis.
- This is in general false for vector spaces that are not finitely generated.
- We now provide the existence proof of the orthogonal projection.
- Let V be a unitary vector space and U a finitely generated subspace. Then for every $v \in V$, the orthogonal projection $p_U(v)$ of v onto U exists.
- Let V be a finitely generated unitary vector space and U any subspace. Then we have $V = U \oplus U^\perp$, and

$$\dim(V) = \dim(U) + \dim(U^\perp).$$

- Every hyperplane in \mathbb{R}^n admits a normal form; the normal vector is unique up to scalar multiplication.
- Let V be as above and let $v_1, \dots, v_m \in V$. If it is possible to construct orthonormal vectors w_1, \dots, w_m from them using the Gram-Schmidt process, then (v_1, \dots, v_m) are linearly independent.

32.11.1 Visualization of the Gram-Schmidt process in 2 dimension



32.12 Best Approximation

Let V be a unitary vector space and U a finitely generated subspace of V . A vector $v^* \in U$ is called Best Approximation in U on v , if:

$$\|v^* - v\| = \inf_{x \in U} \|x - v\|$$

also

$$\|v^* - P_U(v)\| = \inf_{u \in U} \|u - v\|$$

Proof:

Let $x \in V$, v be some point and $v^* = \text{proj}_V v$. Then

$$v - x = v - v^* + v^* - x$$

where $v - v^* \in V^\perp$ and $v^* - x \in V$. By the Pythagorean Theorem

$$\|x - v\|^2 = \|v^* - v\|^2 + \|v^* - x\|^2$$

Therefore

$$\|v^* - v\|^2 \leq \|v^* - x\|^2$$

QED

33 Matrices

In this section, we explore the fundamental concepts of matrices, their operations, and important properties that form the foundation of linear algebra.

33.1 Definition of a Matrix

A matrix is a rectangular array of numbers, symbols, or expressions arranged in rows and columns. Formally, an $m \times n$ matrix A consists of mn elements a_{ij} where $i = 1, 2, \dots, m$ and $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & \cdots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \cdots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \cdots & a_{mn} \end{pmatrix}$$

The set of all $m \times n$ matrices with real entries is denoted by $\mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$. Special cases include:

- Square matrix: matrix with the same number of rows and columns ($m = n$)
- Column vector: $m \times 1$ matrix
- Row vector: $1 \times n$ matrix
- Identity matrix I_n : An $n \times n$ matrix with ones on the main diagonal and zeros elsewhere
- Zero matrix: A matrix where all entries are zero

33.2 Matrix Addition and Subtraction

Matrix addition and subtraction are defined for matrices of the same dimensions.

$$c_{ij} = a_{ij} \pm b_{ij} \quad \text{for all } i = 1, 2, \dots, m \text{ and } j = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

Matrix addition/subtraction satisfies the following properties:

$$\begin{aligned} A \pm B &= B \pm A && \text{(Commutativity)} \\ (A \pm B) + C &= A \pm (B \pm C) && \text{(Associativity)} \\ A \pm O &= A && \text{(Identity element)} \\ A + (-A) &= O && \text{(Inverse element)} \end{aligned}$$

Where O is the zero matrix.

33.3 Matrix Multiplication

Matrix multiplication is defined between matrices where the number of columns in the first matrix equals the number of rows in the second matrix.

For $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times p}$ and $B \in \mathbb{R}^{p \times n}$, their product $C = AB \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ is defined as:

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^p a_{ik}b_{kj} = a_{i1}b_{1j} + a_{i2}b_{2j} + \cdots + a_{ip}b_{pj}$$

Matrix multiplication is defined this way to think as each operation as dot product of two vectors.

An example of this is thinking about the dot product as the total price of a purchase in store. The total price is the sum of the amounts which are given by the number of items per price. Now to extend this idea for matrices we think about the number of items as a vector of size i and the prices of each item as another vector p_1 with dot product $\langle i, p_1 \rangle$. If we want to by other items with different prices, but in the same amounts given by the vector i we get a matrix $A = (p_1, \dots, p_n)$. Now it makes sense that, if we take three different arrays of products we get a vector of three components which represent each of the total amounts to pay.

Thus, each operation in matrix multiplication is taking the dot product of the *transpose* of the current row with the column vector of the other matrix.

$$A \circ \vec{v} = \begin{pmatrix} \langle a_1^T, v \rangle \\ \langle a_2^T, v \rangle \\ \vdots \\ \langle a_n^T, v \rangle \end{pmatrix}$$

As for the case with multiple columns

$$A \circ B = \begin{pmatrix} \langle a_1^T, b_j \rangle & \dots & \langle a_1^T, b_n \rangle \\ \vdots & \dots & \vdots \\ \langle a_n^T, b_j \rangle & \dots & \langle a_n^T, b_n \rangle \end{pmatrix}$$

Matrix multiplication satisfies the following properties:

$$\begin{aligned} A(BC) &= (AB)C && \text{(Associativity)} \\ A(B+C) &= AB+AC && \text{(Left distributivity)} \\ (A+B)C &= AC+BC && \text{(Right distributivity)} \\ AI_n &= A \quad \text{and} \quad I_m A = A && \text{(Identity)} \end{aligned}$$

Note that matrix multiplication is generally not commutative, i.e., $AB \neq BA$ in most cases.

33.4 The Transpose of a Matrix

The transpose of a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$, denoted $A^T \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$, is obtained by interchanging rows and columns:

$$(A^T)_{ij} = a_{ji} \quad \text{for all } i = 1, 2, \dots, n \text{ and } j = 1, 2, \dots, m$$

33.4.1 Properties of the Transpose

$$\begin{aligned} (A^T)^T &= A \\ (A+B)^T &= A^T + B^T \\ (AB)^T &= B^T A^T \\ (\alpha A)^T &= \alpha A^T \quad \text{for any scalar } \alpha \end{aligned}$$

The transpose can also help us interpret the dot product of two vectors being 0 as a matrix multiplication. Here are given $A = (a_1, \dots, a_n)$ with Ax as some vector and b some other vector and a_k is some row of A .

$$\langle a_k, b - Ax \rangle = 0 \quad \forall k \iff A^T(b - Ax) = \vec{0}$$

33.5 The Equivalence of Matrices

Two matrices A and B are said to be equivalent if one can be transformed into the other through a finite sequence of elementary row operations. We write $A \sim B$ to denote this equivalence.

The elementary row operations are:

- Interchanging two rows: $R_i \leftrightarrow R_j$
- Multiplying a row by a non-zero scalar: $R_i \mapsto \alpha R_i$ where $\alpha \neq 0$
- Adding a multiple of one row to another: $R_i \mapsto R_i + \alpha R_j$ where $i \neq j$

Matrix equivalence is an equivalence relation, satisfying reflexivity, symmetry, and transitivity. Equivalent matrices represent the same linear system in different bases.

33.5.1 Row Echelon Form (REF)

A matrix is in row echelon form if:

- All rows consisting entirely of zeros are at the bottom of the matrix.
- The leading entry (first non-zero element) of each non-zero row is to the right of the leading entry of the row above it.
- All entries in a column below a leading entry are zeros.

33.5.2 Reduced Row Echelon Form (RREF)

A matrix is in reduced row echelon form if:

- It is in row echelon form.
- Each leading entry is 1.
- Each leading entry is the only non-zero entry in its column.

The Gauss-Jordan elimination algorithm proceeds as follows:

- Start with the leftmost non-zero column.
- Find the pivot (non-zero element) in this column. If necessary, swap rows to move a non-zero element to the pivot position.
- Divide the pivot row by the pivot value to make the pivot equal to 1.
- Eliminate all other entries in the pivot column by subtracting appropriate multiples of the pivot row.
- Cover the pivot row and column, and repeat steps 1-4 on the submatrix until all rows are processed.
- For RREF, eliminate all entries above each pivot as well.

33.6 The Inverse of a Matrix and Its Properties

For a square matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, the inverse matrix A^{-1} (if it exists) satisfies:

$$AA^{-1} = A^{-1}A = I_n$$

33.6.1 Properties of the Inverse

$$\begin{aligned}(A^{-1})^{-1} &= A \\ (AB)^{-1} &= B^{-1}A^{-1} \\ (A^T)^{-1} &= (A^{-1})^T \\ \det(A^{-1}) &= \frac{1}{\det(A)}\end{aligned}$$

33.6.2 Finding the Inverse

There are several methods to find the inverse of a matrix:

Gauss-Jordan Method

Form the augmented matrix $[A|I_n]$ and apply Gauss-Jordan elimination to transform it into $[I_n|A^{-1}]$:

1. Create the augmented matrix $[A|I_n]$
2. Apply row operations to transform the left side into I_n
3. The right side will be A^{-1}

Adjoint Method

For an $n \times n$ matrix A :

$$A^{-1} = \frac{1}{\det(A)} \text{adj}(A)$$

Where $\text{adj}(A)$ is the adjoint (or adjugate) of A , defined as the transpose of the co-factor matrix.

A matrix is invertible if and only if its determinant is non-zero. Such matrices are called non-singular or regular matrices.

33.7 The Rank of a Matrix and How to Find It

The rank of a matrix A , denoted $\text{rank}(A)$ or $\text{rg}(A)$, is the dimension of the column space (or equivalently, the row space) of A .

Equivalent definitions of rank include:

- The maximum number of linearly independent columns of A
- The maximum number of linearly independent rows of A
- The order of the largest non-zero minor of A
- The number of non-zero rows in any row echelon form of A

33.8 How to isolate Matrices

Like in other types of equations we can isolate a matrix by doing the proper operations.

- $A \pm B = C \implies A = C \mp B$
- $AB = C \implies ABB^{-1} = CB^{-1} \implies A = CB^{-1}$
- $AB = C \implies A^{-1}AB = A^{-1}C \implies B = A^{-1}C$

33.8.1 Finding the Rank

To find the rank of a matrix:

1. Transform the matrix into row echelon form using Gauss-Jordan elimination
2. Count the number of non-zero rows in the resulting matrix

33.8.2 Properties of Rank

$$\text{rank}(A) \leq \min(m, n) \text{ for } A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$$

$$\text{rank}(A^T) = \text{rank}(A)$$

$$\text{rank}(AB) \leq \min(\text{rank}(A), \text{rank}(B))$$

$$\text{rank}(A + B) \leq \text{rank}(A) + \text{rank}(B)$$

For a square matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, the following are equivalent:

- A is invertible
- $\text{rank}(A) = n$
- $\det(A) \neq 0$
- The columns of A are linearly independent
- The rows of A are linearly independent
- $Ax = 0$ has only the trivial solution $x = 0$

33.9 The Definitions of Column Space, Row Space, and Null Space

These fundamental spaces associated with a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$ provide important insights into its structure.

33.9.1 Column Space

The column space of A , denoted $\text{Col}(A)$, is the span of the columns of A :

$$\text{Col}(A) = \{\vec{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m : \vec{y} = A\vec{x} \text{ for some } \vec{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n\}$$

This is also called the range or image of the linear transformation represented by A . The dimension of the column space equals the rank of A .

33.9.2 Row Space

The *row space* of A , denoted $\text{Row}(A)$, is the span of the rows of A : It is also perpendicular to the *Null space*.

$$\text{Row}(A) = \text{Col}(A^T)$$

The dimension of the *row space* also equals the rank of A .

33.9.3 Null Space

The null space (or kernel) of A , denoted $\text{Null}(A)$ or $\text{Ker}(A)$, is the set of all vectors that A maps to zero:

$$\text{Null}(A) = \{\vec{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n : A\vec{x} = \vec{0}\}$$

The dimension of the null space is called the nullity of A , denoted $\text{nullity}(A)$.

33.9.4 Left Null Space

The left null space of A is the null space of A^T :

$$\text{Null}(A^T) = \{\vec{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m : A^T \vec{y} = \vec{0}\} = \{\vec{y} \in \mathbb{R}^m : \vec{y}^T A = \vec{0}^T\}$$

The Rank-Nullity Theorem connects these spaces:

$$\text{rank}(A) + \text{nullity}(A) = n$$

To find a basis for these spaces:

- *Column space*: Take the linearly independent columns of A .
- *Row space*: Take the non-zero rows from any row echelon form of A .
- *Null space*: Solve the homogeneous system $A\vec{x} = \vec{0}$ and express the general solution in terms of free variables.

33.10 Examples of Matrix Operations

In this subsection, we provide detailed examples of Gauss-Jordan elimination and matrix multiplication to illustrate these fundamental matrix operations.

33.10.1 Example of Matrix Multiplication

Consider the matrices A and B given by:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 3 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 3} \quad \text{and} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ -1 & 3 \\ 4 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^{3 \times 2}$$

To compute the product $C = AB \in \mathbb{R}^{2 \times 2}$, we calculate each entry c_{ij} using the formula:

$$c_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^3 a_{ik}b_{kj}$$

Let's calculate each entry of C :

$$\begin{aligned} c_{11} &= a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21} + a_{13}b_{31} \\ &= 2 \cdot 1 + 3 \cdot (-1) + 1 \cdot 4 \\ &= 2 - 3 + 4 = 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} c_{12} &= a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22} + a_{13}b_{32} \\ &= 2 \cdot 2 + 3 \cdot 3 + 1 \cdot 0 \\ &= 4 + 9 + 0 = 13 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} c_{21} &= a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21} + a_{23}b_{31} \\ &= 1 \cdot 1 + 0 \cdot (-1) + (-2) \cdot 4 \\ &= 1 + 0 - 8 = -7 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} c_{22} &= a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22} + a_{23}b_{32} \\ &= 1 \cdot 2 + 0 \cdot 3 + (-2) \cdot 0 \\ &= 2 + 0 + 0 = 2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the product $C = AB$ is:

$$C = AB = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 13 \\ -7 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Let's verify that matrix multiplication is not generally commutative by attempting to compute BA :

Since B is a 3×2 matrix and A is a 2×3 matrix, the product BA would be a 3×3 matrix. However, this calculation cannot be performed since the number of columns in B (which is 2) does not equal the number of rows in A (which is 2). Thus, BA is undefined, demonstrating that matrix multiplication is not always commutative.

Example of Gauss-Jordan Elimination

We'll use Gauss-Jordan elimination to solve the linear system:

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y - z &= 8 \\ -3x - y + 2z &= -11 \\ x + y + z &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

First, we set up the augmented matrix:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 2 & 1 & -1 & 8 \\ -3 & -1 & 2 & -11 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 3 \end{array} \right)$$

Now we apply Gauss-Jordan elimination to transform this into reduced row echelon form:

Step 1: We'll choose the first element in the first row as our pivot. Let's first swap row 1 and row 3 to get a simpler pivot:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ -3 & -1 & 2 & -11 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 8 \end{array} \right)$$

Step 2: Eliminate the first elements in rows 2 and 3:

Row 2 + 3 × Row 1:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 2 & 5 & -2 \\ 2 & 1 & -1 & 8 \end{array} \right)$$

Row 3 - 2 × Row 1:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 2 & 5 & -2 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & 2 \end{array} \right)$$

Step 3: Make the pivot in row 2 equal to 1 by dividing the entire row by 2:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 1 & 1 & 3 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & 2 \end{array} \right)$$

Step 4: Eliminate the second element in rows 1 and 3:

Row 1 - Row 2:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -\frac{3}{2} & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -1 \\ 0 & -1 & -3 & 2 \end{array} \right)$$

Row 3 + Row 2:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -\frac{3}{2} & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & -\frac{1}{2} & 1 \end{array} \right)$$

Step 5: Make the pivot in row 3 equal to 1 by multiplying the entire row by -2:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & -\frac{3}{2} & 4 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 \end{array} \right)$$

Step 6: Eliminate the third element in rows 1 and 2:

Row 1 + $\frac{3}{2}$ × Row 3:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & \frac{5}{2} & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 \end{array} \right)$$

Row 2 - $\frac{5}{2}$ × Row 3:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -1 + 5 = 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 \end{array} \right)$$

The matrix is now in reduced row echelon form:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 4 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 \end{array}\right)$$

This corresponds to the system:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 1 \\ y &= 4 \\ z &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the solution to the original system is $x = 1$, $y = 4$, and $z = -2$.

Example of Finding the Inverse of a Matrix using Gauss-Jordan Elimination

Let's find the inverse of the matrix:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

We form the augmented matrix $[A|I_3]$:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 2 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

Now we apply Gauss-Jordan elimination:

Step 1: Make the first pivot equal to 1 by dividing the first row by 2:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

Step 2: Eliminate the first element in rows 2 and 3:

Row 2 - 3 \times Row 1:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} & 1 & 0 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

Row 3 - 2 \times Row 1:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{2} & -\frac{1}{2} & -\frac{3}{2} & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

Step 3: Make the second pivot equal to 1 by multiplying the second row by 2:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & \frac{1}{2} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -3 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

Step 4: Eliminate the second element in row 1 and the third element in row 2:

Row 1 - $\frac{1}{2} \times$ Row 2:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & -3 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array}\right)$$

Row 2 + Row 3:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 1 & 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right)$$

Step 5: Eliminate the third element in row 1:

Row 1 - Row 3:

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 3 & -1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & -4 & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right)$$

The right side of the augmented matrix now gives us A^{-1} :

$$A^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

To verify, we can check that $AA^{-1} = I_3$:

$$\begin{aligned} AA^{-1} &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -1 & -1 \\ -4 & 2 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 2 \cdot 3 + 1 \cdot (-4) + 1 \cdot (-1) & 2 \cdot (-1) + 1 \cdot 2 + 1 \cdot 0 & 2 \cdot (-1) + 1 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 1 \\ 3 \cdot 3 + 2 \cdot (-4) + 1 \cdot (-1) & 3 \cdot (-1) + 2 \cdot 2 + 1 \cdot 0 & 3 \cdot (-1) + 2 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 1 \\ 2 \cdot 3 + 1 \cdot (-4) + 2 \cdot (-1) & 2 \cdot (-1) + 1 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot 0 & 2 \cdot (-1) + 1 \cdot 1 + 2 \cdot 1 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 6 - 4 - 1 & -2 + 2 + 0 & -2 + 1 + 1 \\ 9 - 8 - 1 & -3 + 4 + 0 & -3 + 2 + 1 \\ 6 - 4 - 2 & -2 + 2 + 0 & -2 + 1 + 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = I_3 \end{aligned}$$

This confirms that we have correctly found the inverse of matrix A .

33.11 Linear Maps as matrices and Their Properties

Let V and W be vector spaces over the field K .

Let $v_1, \dots, v_n \in V$ and $w_1, \dots, w_n \in W$. If (v_1, \dots, v_n) forms a basis of V , then there exists a unique $f \in \text{Hom}(V, W)$ with $f(v_i) = w_i$, $1 \leq i \leq n$. The map f has the following properties:

– $\text{Im}(f) = \text{span}(f(v_1), \dots, f(v_n))$.

– f is injective $\Leftrightarrow w_1, \dots, w_n$ are linearly independent.

Let V and W be two K -vector spaces, $B_V = (v_1, \dots, v_n)$ a basis of V and $B_W = (w_1, \dots, w_m)$ a basis of W , and let $f : V \rightarrow W$ be linear. Then there exists a unique matrix $M_{B_V}^{B_W}(f) = (a_{ij}) \in K^{m \times n}$ with

$$f(v_j) = \sum_{i=1}^m a_{ij} w_i \quad \forall j = 1, \dots, n$$

33.12 Example of an exercise

1. Determination of the kernel
2. Determination of the dimension of the kernel
3. Determination of the rank (dimension formula)
4. Determination of the image

Example:

Given

$$f \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2x_1 + x_2 \\ x_1 - x_2 + x_3 \\ 4x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

It should be shown that f is linear, and $\ker(f)$, $\text{Im}(f)$ and their dimensions should be determined.

A direct proof of linearity is easily possible. Instead, we give the transformation matrix A . The images of the (canonical) basis vectors are

$$f \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}, \quad f \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad f \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

We obtain

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 4 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix}.$$

But now it must be shown that indeed $f(x) = Ax \quad \forall x \in \mathbb{R}^3$ holds, by, for example, calculating both Ax and $f(x)$ for a general x and showing equality: Here, with $x = (x_1, x_2, x_3)^T$

$$A \cdot x = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 4 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2x_1 + x_2 \\ x_1 - x_2 + x_3 \\ 4x_1 - x_2 + 2x_3 \end{pmatrix}.$$

This obviously corresponds to $f(x)$, so that by Theorem 4.36, the map f is linear. To determine the kernel, one has to solve the system of linear equations

$$\begin{array}{cccc} 2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 & 0 \\ 4 & -1 & 2 & 0 \end{array}$$

Which corresponds to the equation $Ax = f(x) = 0$. Gaussian elimination yields $x_3 = \lambda'$; $x_2 = \frac{2}{3} \cdot \lambda'$; $x_1 = -\frac{1}{3} \cdot \lambda'$, thus, with $\lambda = \frac{1}{3}\lambda'$:

$$\ker(f) = \left\{ x = \lambda \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} \mid \lambda \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$$

It follows that $\dim(\ker(f)) = 1$ and because of $\dim(V) = 3$ from the dimension formula $\dim(\text{Im}(f)) = 2$. $\text{Im}(f)$ corresponds to the linear span of the columns of the matrix. One chooses consequently $\dim(\text{Im}(f))$ column vectors, e.g., the first ones, and tests if they are linearly independent. In the concrete case, this is obvious, because the second column is not a multiple of the first. It follows therefore,

$$\text{Im}(f) = \left\{ x \mid x = \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 1 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix} + \mu \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \lambda, \mu \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$$

34 Changing between Basis

To change from one basis to another of the same space, the question we are asking is How to write our basis vector in terms of the other basis. Because after that any linear combination of our basis vector will be directly translated to the other basis, just by writing them in terms of the other basis. So the matrix made of the new basis vectors T times a vector of coefficient in our systems of coordinates gives us the same vector but described in the new basis. And to translate to our language we just have to multiply the vector in the other basis by T^{-1} .

Finally, imagine that you have a matrix that represents some linear transformation in our language, but we want to transform a vector in another language. We need to first take that vector in the foreign basis, apply T^{-1} , apply the transformation M and finally multiply by T to return to the new basis.

Now to formalize these ideas:

Given a vector $\vec{x} = \lambda_1 \vec{v}_1 + \dots + \lambda_n \vec{v}_n$ with $\vec{v}_1, \dots, \vec{v}_n$ being the basis vectors, we can write \vec{x} in terms of its components $(a, b, c, \dots)^T$.

Now imagine having another basis $\vec{b}_1, \dots, \vec{b}_n$ and the same vector \vec{x} with all of its components. The key here is that we want to know how our original vector is described in terms of other basis. More precisely what are its coordinates

So our vector \vec{x} is described:

$$\lambda_1 \vec{v}_1 + \dots + \lambda_n \vec{v}_n = \mu_1 \vec{b}_1 + \dots + \mu_n \vec{b}_n,$$

in the corresponding bases.

Now let us write then a matrix vector multiplication

$$(\vec{v}_1, \dots, \vec{v}_n) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 \\ \vdots \\ \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} = (\vec{b}_1, \dots, \vec{b}_n) \begin{pmatrix} \mu_1 \\ \vdots \\ \mu_n \end{pmatrix}$$

Now let us use the following notation for the Basis and the coefficient vectors.

$$P_B(\vec{x})_B = P_C(\vec{x})_C$$

Here P_X is the matrix of the basis X vectors and $(\vec{x})_X$ the coefficients of the vector \vec{x} described by that basis.

Now that conversion of basis is just a matter of solving for our desired vector by multiplying by the inverse of the corresponding basis matrix.

Example I:

Let us find \vec{x} in terms of that basis C

$$P_C^{-1} P_B(\vec{x})_B = (\vec{x})_C$$

Example II:

Give are the vector $\vec{u}_1 = (1, 2)^T$ and $\vec{u}_2 = (3, 3)^T$ and our canonical basis vector i and j . The vector in the canonical basis has the coordinates $(2, 1)$.

We set them equal

$$\lambda_1 \vec{u}_1 + \lambda_2 \vec{u}_2 = \mu_1 i + \mu_2 j$$

Let us write \vec{u}_1 and \vec{u}_2 in terms of the canonical basis.

$$\vec{u}_1 = i + 2j$$

$$\vec{u}_2 = 3i + 3j$$

Now we can substitute this values in the original expression

$$\lambda_1(i + 2j) + \lambda_2(3i + 3j) = \mu_1 i + \mu_2 j$$

$$\lambda_1 i + \lambda_1 2j + \lambda_2 3i + \lambda_2 3j = \mu_1 i + \mu_2 j$$

$$(\lambda_1 + \lambda_2 3)i + (\lambda_1 2 + \lambda_2 3)j = \mu_1 i + \mu_2 j$$

Now we can write this in matrix form

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 2 & 3 \end{bmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 \\ \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \mu_1 \\ \mu_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

This equation relates the coefficient in the standard basis to the new basis coefficients

What we are really doing here is taking the basis vectors of B and writing them as a linear combination of the basis vectors of C . This will give us n matrices that we can solve.

To go the other way around we take the inverse of the matrix whose columns are the basis vectors of B relative to the new basis C

Now let us understand what really is happening in the step where we multiply by the inverse matrix.

$$\begin{aligned} P_C^{-1} P_B &= P_C^{-1}(\vec{b}_1, \dots, \vec{b}_n) \\ &= (P_C^{-1}\vec{b}_1, \dots, P_C^{-1}\vec{b}_n) \\ &= ((\vec{b}_1)_C, \dots, (\vec{b}_n)_C) \end{aligned}$$

Now it is clear that the inverse is just taking our basis vector and transforming them in to basis vector with respect to C .

34.1 Translation under transformation

For linear transformation we use the formula.

$$A^{-1} M A \vec{v}$$

Where \vec{v} is a vector in the other basis, A the other basis, M the linear transformation and A^{-1} the inverse of the basis vector of A .

We interpret this as taking a vector of the new basis, translating it to our language, performing the transformation and then returning to the new basis.

For the sake of completeness here some important theorems and definitions:

34.2 Theorems and definitions concerning the change of basis

In this section we will use a slightly different notation. Here K_X is the *coefficient* vector with respect to a basis also called the coordinates of the vector. And φ_X is the P_X that is the matrix of the basis vectors with respect to X .

34.2.1 Theorem I

Let V be a K -vector space with a basis $B = (v_1, \dots, v_n)$. Then there exists exactly one isomorphism

$$\varphi_B : K^n \rightarrow V$$

such that

$$\varphi_B(e_i) = v_i, \quad \text{for } 1 \leq i \leq n.$$

34.2.2 Theorem II

The isomorphism φ_B from the previous theorem is called the *coordinate mapping*, and for $v \in V$, we define

$$K_B(\vec{v}) := \varphi_B^{-1}(v) \in K^n$$

as the *coordinates of v with respect to B* .

34.2.3 Theorem III

We define the *Translation* of a vector to another basis as:

$$T_B^A = \varphi_B^{-1} \circ \varphi_A$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & V & \\ \varphi_A \nearrow & & \nwarrow \varphi_B \\ K^n & \xrightarrow{T_B^A = \varphi_B^{-1} \circ \varphi_A} & K^n \end{array}$$

34.2.4 Theorem IV

Let $v \in V$ be arbitrary, with $K_A(v) = (x_1, \dots, x_n)^T$ and $K_B(v) = (y_1, \dots, y_n)^T$. Then the following holds:

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ \vdots \\ y_n \end{pmatrix} = T_B^A \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ \vdots \\ x_n \end{pmatrix}$$

If the coordinates of v with respect to A are known, then the matrix T_B^A can be used to compute the coordinates of v with respect to B .

$$T_B^A = B^{-1}A.$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} K^n & \xrightarrow{M_B^A} & K^m \\ \searrow \varphi_A & & \swarrow \varphi_B \\ & V \xrightarrow{f} W & \end{array}$$

34.2.5 Theorem V

Let V and W be finitely generated K -vector spaces with bases A and B , respectively, and let $f \in \text{Hom}(V, W)$. Then we have

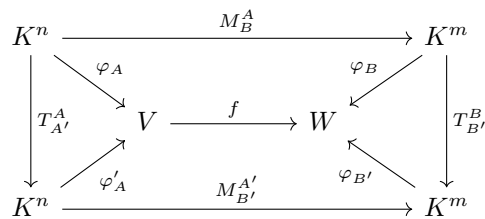
$$M_B^A(f) = \varphi_B^{-1} \circ f \circ \varphi_A$$

Thus, $M_B^A(f)$ tells you how the coordinates change through f .

34.2.6 Theorem VI

Let V and W be finitely generated vector spaces with bases A and A' for V , and B and B' for W , respectively. Furthermore, let $f : V \rightarrow W$ be a linear map. Then the following holds:

$$M_{B'}^{A'}(f) = T_{B'}^B \cdot M_B^A(f) \cdot (T_{A'}^A)^{-1}.$$



The formula says that to interpret a linear transformation in terms of the new coordinates we have to:

1. Take a vector of the new coordinates
2. Multiply it the matrix of its basis vectors. (Translate to our basis)
3. Apply the linear transformation
4. Inverse the change of basis by taking the inverse of the matrix in step 2.

35 The Determinant of a Matrix

The determinant of a square matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$, denoted $\det(A)$ or $|A|$, is a scalar value that provides important information about the matrix, including whether it is invertible and the volume scaling factor of the linear transformation represented by A . The determinant can be computed using various methods, including the Laplace expansion, row reduction, or the Leibniz formula.

The determinant of a 2×2 matrix is given by:

$$\det(A) = \begin{vmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{vmatrix} = ad - bc$$

For a 3×3 matrix, the determinant can be computed using the rule of Sarrus or the co-factor expansion:

$$\det(A) = \begin{vmatrix} a & b & c \\ d & e & f \\ g & h & i \end{vmatrix} = aei + bfg + cdh - ceg - bdi - afh$$

The determinant of larger matrices can be computed using co-factor expansion along any row or column:

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} a_{ij} \det(A_{ij}),$$

where A_{ij} is the $(n-1) \times (n-1)$ sub-matrix obtained by deleting the i -th row and j -th column of A .

35.1 Properties of the determinant

- $\det(A) = 0$ if and only if A is singular (not invertible).
- $\det(AB) = \det(A) \cdot \det(B)$ for any square matrices A and B of the same size.
- $\det(A^T) = \det(A)$.
- If a row (or column) of A is multiplied by a scalar α , then $\det(A)$ is multiplied by α .
- If two rows (or columns) of A are swapped, then $\det(A)$ changes sign.

$$\det(a, b, c) = -\det(b, a, c)$$

- If a row (or column) of A is added to another row (or column), then $\det(A)$ remains unchanged.
- If one of the columns is a linear combination of the others, then $\det(A) = 0$.
- The determinant of the identity matrix I_n is 1.
- The determinant of can split into the sum of more determinants:

$$\det(a, b, c + d) = \det(a, b, c) + \det(a, b, d)$$

- The determinant of a diagonal matrix is the product of its diagonal entries.
- For elementary matrices $\det C1 = 1$, $\det C2 = -1$, $\det C3 = \lambda$

35.2 Proof of the multiplication of determinants

For $A, B \in K^{n \times n}$, it holds that

$$\det(AB) = \det(A) \det(B).$$

Proof:

If $\det(A) = 0$ or $\det(B) = 0$, then $\text{rank}(L_A) < n$ or $\text{rank}(L_B) < n$.

Thus, $\text{rank}(L_{AB}) < n$, and the statement is trivial.

So let us assume that A and B are invertible, i.e., $\text{rank}(A) = \text{rank}(B) = n$.

We now assume that in such a case, a matrix can always be transformed into reduced row echelon form using the row operations from Gaussian elimination.

Then, $A = C_k \cdots C_1$ for certain elementary matrices C_i , and therefore, by Corollary 5.13:

$$\begin{aligned}\det(AB) &= \det(C_k \cdots C_1 B) \\ &= \det(C_k) \det(C_{k-1} \cdots C_1 B) \\ &\vdots \\ &= \det(C_k) \cdots \det(C_1) \det(B) \\ &= \det(C_k \cdots C_1) \det(B) \\ &= \det(A) \det(B).\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, also if A is invertible, then

$$\det(A^{-1}) = (\det(A))^{-1}.$$

Proof:

It holds that

$$\det(A) \det(A^{-1}) = \det(AA^{-1}) = \det(E) = 1.$$

35.3 The Leibniz Formula

Let $A = (a_{ij}) \in K^{n \times n}$ be a square matrix over a field K . The determinant of A is defined via the **Leibniz formula** as:

$$\det(A) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \operatorname{sgn}(\sigma) \cdot a_{1\sigma(1)} a_{2\sigma(2)} \cdots a_{n\sigma(n)},$$

where:

- S_n is the set of all permutations of $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$,
- $\operatorname{sgn}(\sigma)$ is the sign of the permutation σ , equal to $+1$ for even permutations and -1 for odd ones.

35.3.1 Derivation

Step 1: Expansion using multilinearity

Each column vector a_j of the matrix A can be written as a linear combination of the standard basis vectors e_1, \dots, e_n :

$$a_j = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij} e_i.$$

Using the multilinearity of the determinant function (i.e., linearity in each column), we expand:

$$\det(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = \det\left(\sum_{i_1} a_{i_1 1} e_{i_1}, \sum_{i_2} a_{i_2 2} e_{i_2}, \dots, \sum_{i_n} a_{i_n n} e_{i_n}\right).$$

By multilinearity, this becomes a sum over all n -tuples (i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n) :

$$= \sum_{i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n=1}^n a_{i_1 1} a_{i_2 2} \cdots a_{i_n n} \cdot \det(e_{i_1}, e_{i_2}, \dots, e_{i_n}).$$

Step 2: Eliminate repeated indices

If two indices $i_j = i_k$ for $j \neq k$, then the corresponding determinant is zero (because the determinant is alternating and thus, zero for repeated columns). Therefore, only terms with pairwise distinct indices remain. These correspond to permutations of $\{1, 2, \dots, n\}$.

Let $\sigma \in S_n$ be such a permutation. Then we can write:

$$\det(A) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} a_{\sigma(1)1} a_{\sigma(2)2} \cdots a_{\sigma(n)n} \cdot \det(e_{\sigma(1)}, e_{\sigma(2)}, \dots, e_{\sigma(n)}).$$

Step 3: Sign of the permutation

Since the determinant of $(e_{\sigma(1)}, \dots, e_{\sigma(n)})$ is $\text{sgn}(\sigma)$, we obtain:

$$\det(A) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \text{sgn}(\sigma) \cdot a_{\sigma(1)1} a_{\sigma(2)2} \cdots a_{\sigma(n)n}.$$

Equivalently, by re-indexing:

$$\det(A) = \sum_{\sigma \in S_n} \text{sgn}(\sigma) \cdot \prod_{i=1}^n a_{i\sigma(i)}.$$

This formula expresses the determinant as a sum over all permutations of the indices $\{1, \dots, n\}$, where each term is a product of matrix entries taken from different rows and columns, weighted by the sign of the corresponding permutation.

35.4 Laplace's Method (Co-factor Expansion)

The determinant of an $n \times n$ matrix $A = [a_{ij}]$ can be computed using the **Laplace expansion**, also known as co-factor expansion. This method expands the determinant along a specific row or column.

Expansion Along Row i :

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} a_{ij} \det(M_{ij})$$

Expansion Along Column j :

$$\det(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n (-1)^{i+j} a_{ij} \det(M_{ij})$$

Where:

- a_{ij} is the element in the i -th row and j -th column of matrix A .
- M_{ij} is the **minor** of a_{ij} , i.e., the determinant of the submatrix formed by removing the i -th row and j -th column from A .
- $(-1)^{i+j}$ is the **sign factor**, determining the sign of each co-factor term.

Steps:

1. **Choose a Row or Column:** Select any row or column of the matrix. It's often easiest to choose one with many zeros.

2. **For Each Element:** For each element, a_{ij} , in the chosen row or column:

Find the Minor, M_{ij} : The minor M_{ij} is the determinant of the sub-matrix formed by deleting the i -th row and the j -th column of the original matrix.

Find the Co-factor, C_{ij} : The co-factor C_{ij} is the minor multiplied by a sign factor:

$$C_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} M_{ij}$$

The term $(-1)^{i+j}$ gives a checkerboard pattern of signs:

$$\begin{pmatrix} + & - & + & - & \cdots \\ - & + & - & + & \cdots \\ + & - & + & - & \cdots \\ - & + & - & + & \cdots \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots \end{pmatrix}$$

3. **Calculate the Determinant:** The determinant of the matrix, A , is the sum of the products of the elements in the chosen row or column and their corresponding co-factors.

Expansion along the i -th row:

$$\det(A) = \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}C_{ij} = a_{i1}C_{i1} + a_{i2}C_{i2} + \cdots + a_{in}C_{in}$$

Expansion along the j -th column:

$$\det(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ij}C_{ij} = a_{1j}C_{1j} + a_{2j}C_{2j} + \cdots + a_{nj}C_{nj}$$

Both expansions give the same result.

Example (3×3 Matrix):

Let

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{pmatrix}$$

Expanding along the first row:

1. a_{11} : $M_{11} = \det \begin{pmatrix} a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{32} & a_{33} \end{pmatrix}$, $C_{11} = +M_{11}$
2. a_{12} : $M_{12} = \det \begin{pmatrix} a_{21} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{33} \end{pmatrix}$, $C_{12} = -M_{12}$
3. a_{13} : $M_{13} = \det \begin{pmatrix} a_{21} & a_{22} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} \end{pmatrix}$, $C_{13} = +M_{13}$

Therefore,

$$\det(A) = a_{11}C_{11} + a_{12}C_{12} + a_{13}C_{13}$$

Example of Determinant Calculation

Let's calculate the determinant of the matrix:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Using the rule of Sarrus for 3×3 matrices:

$$\begin{aligned} \det(A) &= 2 \cdot 0 \cdot 1 + 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 3 + 3 \cdot 1 \cdot 1 - (3 \cdot 0 \cdot 0 + 1 \cdot 2 \cdot 2 + 2 \cdot 1 \cdot 1) \\ &= 0 + 6 + 3 - (0 + 4 + 2) \\ &= 9 - 6 = 3 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the determinant of matrix A is $\det(A) = 3$.

Now consider the following 4×4 matrix:

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 3 & 2 \\ 4 & 0 & -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 3 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

For a 4×4 matrix, we can use Laplace Method along the first row:

$$\begin{aligned} \det(A) &= a_{11}C_{11} + a_{12}C_{12} + a_{13}C_{13} + a_{14}C_{14} \\ &= 2 \cdot \det \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 3 \\ 3 & 1 & 5 \\ -1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} - 1 \cdot \det \begin{pmatrix} 4 & -1 & 3 \\ -2 & 1 & 5 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\quad + 3 \cdot \det \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & 3 \\ -2 & 3 & 5 \\ 1 & -1 & 2 \end{pmatrix} - 2 \cdot \det \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 0 & -1 \\ -2 & 3 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\det(A) = 145$$

35.5 Determinant of the reduced echelon form

The determinant has another trait that states that if your matrix A is REF then its determinant is given by the product of the main diagonal.

35.6 Gaussian Method for finding determinants

Another method for finding determinants is using the row operations we already knew plus also column operations but with the catch that for the column case we have to take into consideration how operating with columns affect the determinant, in contrast to the row operations, except for scaling a row by some λ in this case we would need to undo the change by multiplying the determinant by $\frac{1}{\lambda}$.

Example:

We are given the matrix:

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

We apply Gaussian elimination:

Swap $R_2 \leftrightarrow R_3$:

$$\Rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 2 \end{bmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Now the matrix is upper triangular. The determinant is the product of diagonal elements times -1 for one row swap:

$$\det(A) = (-1)^1 \cdot (1) \cdot (-1) \cdot (-1) \cdot (3) = -3$$

$$\det(A) = -3$$

36 Elementary Matrix

We are going to define 3 matrices that can be obtained from the Elementary Row Operations on the *Identity Matrix* and call them *Elementary Matrices*.

C1: Row Addition

$$C_1 := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ & \ddots & & & \\ & & 1 & & \\ & & \lambda & 1 & \\ & & & & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \in K^{n \times n} \quad \text{or} \quad C_1 := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ & \ddots & & & \\ & & 1 & \lambda & \\ & & & 1 & \\ & & & & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \in K^{n \times n}$$

C2: Row swap

$$C_2 := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ & \ddots & & & \\ & & 0 & 1 & \\ & & 1 & 0 & \\ & & & & \ddots \end{pmatrix} \in K^{n \times n}$$

C3: Row Scaling

$$C_3 := \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & & \\ & \ddots & & & \\ & & \lambda & & \\ & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in K^{n \times n}$$

Each of them also encodes the row Operations from where they came from. So now Gaussian Elimination can be encoded as matrix multiplication.

36.1 Invertibility

Because every row operation is invertible now we can also claim that Elementary Matrices are invertible and they also represented that inverted row operation.

36.2 Determinants

The determinants corresponding to each matrix are:

$$\begin{aligned} \det C_1 &= 1 \\ \det C_2 &= -1 \\ \det C_3 &= \lambda \end{aligned}$$

37 Geometry of Linear Maps

In this section we are going to take a look at some special type of linear maps that are called *orthogonal* and at the term *isometry*. It will be useful to remember some concepts about the dot product such as $\langle x, x \rangle = x^T \cdot x = \|x\|^2$.

37.1 Isometry

Given two vector spaces $(V, \|\cdot\|_V)$ and $(W, \|\cdot\|_W)$. Then a map $f : V \rightarrow W$ is called *Isometric* if and only if $\|x - y\|_V = \|f(x) - f(y)\|_W$.

It also has the following traits:

1. *Length-Preserving*: $\|x\|_V = \|y\|_W \quad \forall x \in V$.
2. *Angle-Preserving*: $\angle(x, y) = \angle(f(x), f(y)) \quad \forall x, y \in V$
3. *Linear*: If $f(x + \lambda y) = f(x) + \lambda f(y)$

37.2 The Rotation Matrix

This matrix is a common example of an isometric linear map, because of the way it transforms the space.

For the 2D we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos(\phi) & -\sin(\phi) \\ \sin(\phi) & \cos(\phi) \end{pmatrix}$$

The derivation comes from the addition theorems for $\sin(\phi)$ and $\cos(\phi)$.

Given two vectors \vec{v} and \vec{g} whose angles are α and $\theta = \alpha + \beta$. We can rotate the vector \vec{v} by some β to transform into \vec{g} .

$$\begin{aligned} x &= r \cos(\alpha) \\ y &= r \sin(\alpha) \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= r' \cos(\alpha + \beta) \\ y' &= r' \sin(\alpha + \beta) \end{aligned}$$

And therefore

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= r' \cos(\alpha) \cos(\beta) - r' \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta) \\ y' &= r' \cos(\alpha) \sin(\beta) + r' \sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) \end{aligned}$$

Because, a rotation does not change the magnitude we can say that $r = r'$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= r \cos(\alpha) \cos(\beta) - r \sin(\alpha) \sin(\beta) \\ y' &= r \cos(\alpha) \sin(\beta) + r \sin(\alpha) \cos(\beta) \end{aligned}$$

Now notice that we have our x and y inside the expression

$$\begin{aligned} x' &= x \cos(\beta) - y \sin(\beta) \\ y' &= x \sin(\beta) + y \cos(\beta) \end{aligned}$$

which gives us

$$\begin{pmatrix} \cos(\phi) & -\sin(\phi) \\ \sin(\phi) & \cos(\phi) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix}$$

QED

37.2.1 Other rotation matrices

$$R_x(\phi) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos(\phi) & -\sin(\phi) \\ 0 & \sin(\phi) & \cos(\phi) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$R_y(\phi) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & \sin(\phi) \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\sin(\phi) & 0 & \cos(\phi) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$R_z(\phi) = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\phi) & -\sin(\phi) & 0 \\ \sin(\phi) & \cos(\phi) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

37.3 Orthogonal Matrices

A matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ is *orthogonal* if its columns vectors form an orthonormal basis.

The set of all *orthogonal* matrices is $O(n)$.

37.3.1 Properties of orthogonal matrices

1. $A \in O(n)$
2. If A has an inverse then $A^{-1} = A^T$
3. $A^T \in O(n)$

Proof 1-2:

$$\begin{aligned} A^T = A^{-1} &\iff A^T A = E \\ &\iff (A^T A)_{ij} = \langle a_i, a_j \rangle = \delta_{ij} \quad 1 \leq i, j \leq n \\ &\iff a_i \perp a_j, i \neq j, \text{ and } \|a_i\| = 1, 1 \leq i \leq n \\ &\iff A \in O(n) \end{aligned}$$

Proof 1-3:

$$\begin{aligned} A \in O(n) &\iff \\ &\iff A^{-1} = A^T \\ &\iff (A^T)^{-1} = (A^T)^T \\ &\iff (A^T)^T = A \\ &\iff A^T \in O(n) \end{aligned}$$

Example of a proof

Prove that H_n is *orthogonal* for all $\vec{u} \in \mathbb{R}^n \setminus \{0\}$.

$$H_n = I_n - 2 \frac{u u^T}{u^T u}$$

I_n is the identity matrix.

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned}
(H_n)^2 &= I \\
&= \left(I_n - 2 \frac{uu^T}{u^T u} \right)^2 \\
&= I_n^2 - 4 \frac{uu^T}{u^T u} + 4 \left(\frac{uu^T}{u^T u} \right)^2 \\
&= I_n - 4 \frac{uu^T}{u^T u} + 4 \frac{uu^T uu^T}{(u^T u)^2} \\
&= I_n - 4 \frac{uu^T}{u^T u} + 4 \frac{u(u^T u)u^T}{(u^T u)^2} \\
&= I_n - 4 \frac{uu^T}{u^T u} + 4 \frac{uu^T}{u^T u} \\
&= I_n
\end{aligned}$$

□◻◻

37.4 The Determinants of Orthogonal Matrices

The *determinant* of this kind of matrices can only be either positioning 1 or negative 1.

Proof:

We know that $\det(I) = 1$, therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
\det(I) &= \det(AA^{-1}) \\
&= \det(AA^T) \\
&= \det(A) \det(A^T) \\
&= (\det(A))^2 \\
&= \|\det(A)\| = 1
\end{aligned}$$

□◻◻

37.5 The Orthogonal Group

$O(n)$ with the operation matrix multiplication forms the *orthogonal group*.

37.6 Dot Product

Given $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ then this two statements are equivalent.

$$\langle f(x), f(y) \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle \quad \forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n$$

and

f preserves the angles and length.

f is also called *orthogonal*.

Proof \Rightarrow :

$$\|x\|^2 = \langle x, x \rangle = \langle f(x), f(x) \rangle = \|f(x)\|^2$$

This implies the length preservation. The isometry gives us:

$$\begin{aligned}
\|f(x) - f(y)\|^2 &= \langle f(x) - f(y), f(x) - f(y) \rangle \\
&= \langle f(x), f(x) \rangle - 2\langle f(x), f(y) \rangle + \langle f(y), f(y) \rangle \\
&= \langle x, x \rangle - 2\langle x, y \rangle + \langle y, y \rangle \\
&= \langle x - y, x - y \rangle = \|x - y\|^2
\end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
\angle(f(x), f(y)) &= \arccos\left(\frac{\langle f(x), f(y) \rangle}{\|f(x)\| \cdot \|f(y)\|}\right) \\
&= \arccos\left(\frac{\langle x, y \rangle}{\|x\| \cdot \|y\|}\right) \\
&= \angle(x, y)
\end{aligned}$$

□

Proof \Leftarrow :

With $\alpha = \angle(x, y) = \angle(f(x), f(y))$ gilt:

$$\langle f(x), f(y) \rangle = \cos(\alpha) \cdot \|f(x)\| \cdot \|f(y)\| = \cos(\alpha) \cdot \|x\| \cdot \|y\| = \langle x, y \rangle$$

□

37.7 Theorem of the Matrix Representation

The mapping $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is orthogonal if and only if the associated matrix representation Q (with respect to the standard basis) is an orthogonal matrix, i.e., $Q \in O(n)$.

Proof \Rightarrow :

f is linear, and thus has a matrix representation Q . It follows that

$$\langle Qx, Qy \rangle = \langle Q^\top Qx, y \rangle = \langle x, y \rangle \quad \forall x, y \in \mathbb{R}^n,$$

thus,

$$\langle Q^\top Qx - x, y \rangle = 0 \quad \forall x, y.$$

Choosing $y = Q^\top Qx - x$, we get

$$\langle Q^\top Qx - x, Q^\top Qx - x \rangle = 0 \quad \forall x,$$

and hence $(Q^\top Q - I)x = 0 \quad \forall x$. It follows that $Q^\top Q = I$, and by Theorem 7.3, $Q \in O(n)$.

□

Proof \Leftarrow :

Follows by the same calculation as above.

□

37.8 Change of Basis

Let f be orthogonal. Then the matrix representation of f with respect to any orthonormal basis is orthogonal.

Proof:

Let E be the standard basis and B an orthonormal basis. Let $Q = M_E^B(f)$ and $S = T_E^B$ be the change-of-basis matrix from B to E . Since the columns of S are the basis vectors of B , we have $S \in O(n)$.

$$M_B^B(f) = S^{-1}QS \in O(n),$$

due to the group property of $O(n)$.

□◻◻

37.9 QR-Decomposition

A use case of orthogonal matrices is the *QR-Decomposition*. The goal is that given a system $Ax = b$ with a matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$, $m \geq n$ and $rg(A) = n$ we can find two matrices Q and R such that $A = QR$ with $R \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ and $Q \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$. R is matrix with only an upper triangle and Q is orthogonal for the columns.

We know that the best approximation by the method of the least squares is given by

$$x_s = (A^T A)^{-1} A^T b$$

Because of the orthogonality of the columns $rg(Q) = rg(A)$ therefore it can be inverted. Therefore, we get:

$$\begin{aligned} x_s &= (A^T A)^{-1} A^T b \\ &= ((QR)^T (QR))^{-1} (QR)^T b \\ &= (R^T Q^T Q R)^{-1} (QR)^T b \\ &= (R^T R)^{-1} R^T Q^T b \\ &= R^{-1} (R^T)^{-1} R^T Q^T b \\ &= R^{-1} Q^T b \\ R x_s &= Q^T b \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we can solve the linear system by finding Q which is matrix with an orthonormal basis of the vector space which can be found via the Gram-Schmidt algorithm. The matrix R consists of the matrix of the inner products our A matrix and Q

$$R = \begin{pmatrix} \langle q_1, a_1 \rangle & \langle q_1, a_2 \rangle & \cdots & \langle q_1, a_n \rangle \\ 0 & \langle q_2, a_2 \rangle & \cdots & \langle q_2, a_n \rangle \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & \langle q_n, a_n \rangle \end{pmatrix}$$

Or even simpler $R = Q^T A$.

Example:

Find the *QR-Decomposition* of the matrix A given by:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 3 \\ 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

First, we find the orthonormal basis of the columns of our matrix A

$$q_1 = \frac{a_1}{\|a_1\|} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$r_2 = a_2 - \langle a_2, q_1 \rangle q_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix} - \langle \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \rangle \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$q_2 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{8}} \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$Q = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & \frac{2}{\sqrt{8}} \\ \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} & -\frac{2}{\sqrt{8}} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$R = \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{2} & \text{sqrt}2 \\ 0 & \sqrt{8} \end{pmatrix}$$

38 Eigenvectors and Eigenvalues

Eigenvector:

An eigenvector of a square matrix A is a non-zero vector \vec{v} that, when multiplied by A , results in a vector that is a scalar multiple of itself. In other words, the direction of the vector \mathbf{v} remains unchanged (up to scaling) when the linear transformation represented by A is applied to it.

Eigenvalue:

The scalar multiple, denoted by λ , is called the eigenvalue associated with the eigenvector \mathbf{v} . It represents the factor by which the eigenvector is scaled when transformed by the matrix A .

Mathematically, the relationship between a square matrix A , an eigenvector \vec{v} , and its corresponding eigenvalue λ is expressed by the following equation:

$$A\vec{v} = \lambda\vec{v}$$

Where $A = f : V \rightarrow V$ is an *endomorphism*, $\vec{v} \neq \vec{0}$ and $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$.

The way we find a method to find them is by manipulating the equation above

$$\begin{aligned} A\vec{v} &= \lambda\vec{v} \\ A\vec{v} - \lambda\vec{v} &= \vec{0} \\ A\vec{v} - \lambda I\vec{v} &= \vec{0} \\ (A\vec{v} - \lambda I)\vec{v} &= \vec{0} \end{aligned}$$

Here note that if $(A\vec{v} - \lambda I)$ were invertible then we could multiply both sides by its inverse and then get $\vec{v} = \vec{0}$. But we do not want that therefore, $(A\vec{v} - \lambda I)$ must be linear transformation whose determinant is 0 which means that it can not be invertible.

$$\begin{aligned} (A\vec{v} - \lambda I)\vec{v} &= \vec{0} \\ \det(A\vec{v} - \lambda I) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

38.1 Characteristic Polynomial

The polynomial which we get from the determinant $\det(A\vec{v} - \lambda I) = 0$ is called the characteristic polynomial of A .

$$\mathcal{X}_A = \det(A\vec{v} - \lambda I) = 0$$

38.1.1 Eigenspace

The *Eigenspace* of an eigenvalue are the solution of the homogeneous system $A - \lambda I$.

$$Eig(f; \lambda) = \ker(A - \lambda I)$$

38.2 Theorems of Eigenvalues and Eigenvectors

38.2.1 Theorem I

Given an eigenvalue λ of f and v_1, \dots, v_n being the eigenvectors of f with λ then $v \in L(v_1, \dots, v_n) \setminus \{0\}$ is an eigenvector of f with λ .

38.2.2 Theorem II

For $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$ is $Eig(f; \lambda) := \{c \in V | f(v) = \lambda v\}$ the *Eigenspace* of f with λ and, it is a subspace of V .

38.2.3 Theorem III

For $\lambda \neq \gamma$ $Eig(f; \lambda) \cap Eig(f; \gamma) = \{0\}$.

38.2.4 Theorem IV

Eigenvectors with different eigenvalues are linearly independent.

38.2.5 Theorem V

Given the following eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$, then the determinant of the matrix A is given by

$$\det(A) = \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i$$

Proof:

Given the eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$ are the roots of the characteristic polynomial

$$\begin{aligned} \det(A - \lambda I) &= p(\lambda) = (-1)^n (\lambda - \lambda_1)(\lambda - \lambda_2) \cdots \\ &= (-1)(\lambda - \lambda_1)(-1)(\lambda - \lambda_2) \cdots \\ &= (\lambda - \lambda_1)(\lambda - \lambda_2) \cdots \end{aligned}$$

Now, by setting $\lambda = 0$ we get

$$\det(A) = \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i$$

Or by using the definition of the diagonal matrix:

$$\begin{aligned} A &= XDX^{-1} \\ \det(A) &= \det(XDX^{-1}) \\ \det(A) &= \det(X) \det(D) \det(X^{-1}) \\ \det(A) &= \det(D) = \prod_{i=1}^n \lambda_i \end{aligned}$$

□◻◻

38.2.6 Theorem VI

For all linear isometric map f with some eigenvalue λ it applies that

$$\|x\| = \|f(x)\| = \|\lambda x\| = \|\lambda\| \|x\|$$

Also, $\lambda = 1$.

An example for this are rotation matrices which map to the same space and preserve the length and whose eigenvalue are complex with a modulus of length of one.

38.2.7 Theorem VII

For some eigenvector x with an eigenvalue λ of A . It applies that

$$A^k x = \lambda^k x$$

38.3 How to find the Eigenvectors and Eigenvalues

To find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of a square matrix A , we solve the eigenvalue equation:

1. Form the characteristic equation:

Rewrite the equation $A\vec{v} = \lambda\vec{v}$ as $(A - \lambda I)\vec{v} = \vec{0}$, where λI is the identity matrix times λ because this matrix encodes the multiplication by some scalar.

To have a non-trivial solution $\vec{0}$ for \vec{v} , the matrix $(A - \lambda I)$ must be singular like said before, which means its determinant must be zero because otherwise \vec{v} would be $\vec{0}$. Thus, we have the characteristic equation:

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$$

2. Solve for the eigenvalues:

Solve the characteristic equation for λ . The solutions $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ are the eigenvalues of the matrix A .

3. Find the eigenvectors:

For each eigenvalue λ_i , substitute it back into the equation $(A - \lambda_i I)\vec{v} = \vec{0}$ and solve for the vector \vec{v} . The non-zero solutions for \vec{v} are the eigenvectors corresponding to the eigenvalue λ_i . Note that we are going to get infinite solutions thus, we have to write our vector with dependence on the free parameters.

Example:

Find the eigenvalues and vectors of

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Let us build the characteristic equation and solve it

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} 1 - \lambda & 1 \\ 4 & 1 - \lambda \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

$$(1 - \lambda)^2 - 4 = 0$$

$$1 - 2\lambda + \lambda^2 - 4 = 0$$

$$\lambda^2 - 2\lambda - 3 = 0$$

$$(\lambda - 3)(\lambda + 1) = 0$$

We have got the eigenvalues $\lambda_1 = 3$ and $\lambda_2 = -1$. Now let us continue by substituting our eigenvalues in the original equation.

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 1 - \lambda_2 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 - \lambda_2 \end{pmatrix} &= \vec{0} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 1 - 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 1 - 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \vec{0} \\ \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 4 & 2 \end{pmatrix} &= \vec{0} \end{aligned}$$

Using Gaussian elimination we get:

$$\begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus, let $v_2 = -2$ and $v_1 = \frac{2}{2} = 1$. This give us the first eigenvector and all of it scalar versions.

$$e_1 = \left\{ c \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -2 \end{pmatrix} \mid c \in \mathbb{R} \right\}$$

The process for the other eigenvalue is exactly the same.

38.3.1 Complex Eigenvalues

This is a special case of *eigenvalues* which are not as easy to visualize.

Example:

Find the eigenvalues and vectors of

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$\det \left(\begin{pmatrix} -\lambda & 1 \\ -1 & -\lambda \end{pmatrix} \right) = 0$$
$$\lambda^2 + 1 = 0$$
$$\lambda = \pm i$$

Now the corresponding eigenvectors.

For $\lambda = i$

$$\begin{pmatrix} -i & 1 \\ -1 & -i \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & i \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Therefore, our first eigenvector is

$$c \begin{pmatrix} -i \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

For $\lambda = -i$

$$\begin{pmatrix} i & 1 \\ -1 & i \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -i \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Therefore, the second eigenvector is

$$c \begin{pmatrix} i \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

38.4 Similar Matrices

$A \sim B$ if there is some X such that

$$A = XDX^{-1} \iff X^{-1}AX = D$$

If our matrices are really similar then:

$$\begin{aligned} \det(A - \lambda I) &= \det(XDX^{-1} - \lambda I) \\ \det(A - \lambda I) &= \det(XDX^{-1} - \lambda XIX^{-1}) \\ \det(A - \lambda I) &= \det(X[D - \lambda I]X^{-1}) \\ \det(A - \lambda I) &= \det(X) \det(D - \lambda X) \det(X^{-1}) \\ \det(A - \lambda I) &= \det(D - \lambda X) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, similar matrices have the same eigenvalues with multiplicity.

38.5 Diagonal Matrices

A *diagonal matrix* is matrix of dimensions $n \times n$ where only the entries of the main diagonal are not zero. This kind of matrices make a lot of the computations in linear algebra trivial. Therefore, if our matrix is not diagonal we are interested in finding a way of transforming the original matrix into a diagonal matrix.

A matrix is diagonalizable if and only if the eigenvectors of it are linear independent.

38.5.1 Complex Diagonalization

Given a matrix $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ with n distinct eigenvalues then is A diagonalizable. But this does not guaranty the diagonalizability for \mathbb{R} .

38.5.2 Geometric and Algebraic Multiplicity

Given a matrix $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ with λ as eigenvalue. The multiple occurrences of the zero λ of \mathcal{X}_A is called *algebraic multiplicity* $a(\lambda)$. Continuing, $g(\lambda) := \dim(\text{Eig}(A; \lambda))$ is the *geometrical multiplicity* of λ .

Also, A is diagonalizable if and only if the *geometric multiplicity* of every eigenvalue is equal to its *algebraic multiplicity*.

38.5.3 Eigenvalues of Real Symmetric Matrices

Eigenvalues of real symmetric matrices are real and also they respective eigenvectors.

Proof:

By definition, we have that $Ax = \lambda x$. The let us multiply both sides by \bar{x}^T . Note that because x is a real vector then the conjugate does not change anything.

$$\begin{aligned} Ax &= \lambda x \\ \bar{x}^T Ax &= \bar{x}^T \lambda x \\ \bar{x}^T Ax &= \lambda \bar{x}^T x \\ \bar{x}^T Ax &= \lambda \langle \bar{x}, x \rangle \\ \bar{x}^T Ax &= \lambda \|x\|^2 \\ \frac{\bar{x}^T Ax}{\|x\|^2} &= \lambda \end{aligned}$$

With this we know that the denominator is a real number thus, if we prove that the numerator is also real we are done. For this we will use the properties of the conjugate.

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{x}^T Ax &= \overline{(\bar{x}^T Ax)} \\ &= \overline{\bar{x}^T} \overline{Ax} \\ &= \overline{\bar{x}^T} \bar{A} \bar{x} \\ &= x^T \bar{A} x \\ &= (\bar{A} \bar{x})^T x \\ &= \bar{x}^T Ax \end{aligned}$$

Notice that we ended just were we started. Therefore, the conjugate had no effect on whole term, thus it is real-valued.

□◻◻

38.5.4 Orthogonality of Eigenvectors

Given a symmetric matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ with $\lambda \neq \mu$ as two eigenvalues of A with eigenvectors v and w . Then v and w are *orthogonal* to each other.

Proof:

$$\langle w, Av \rangle = w^T Av = (A^T w)^T v = (Aw)^T v = \langle Aw, v \rangle$$

Therefore, $\lambda \langle v, w \rangle = \langle Av, w \rangle = \langle v, Aw \rangle = \mu \langle v, w \rangle$. Because $\mu \neq \lambda$ and $\lambda - \mu \langle v, w \rangle = 0$ the vectors must be orthogonal.

□◻◻

38.5.5 Eigenvalue Decomposition of Symmetric Matrices

Given a symmetric matrix $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ with eigenvalues $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$. Then because of the orthogonality of its eigenvectors and the fact that they can be normalized write the matrix Q as an orthogonal matrix, and therefore

$$A = QDQ^T$$

38.5.6 Matrix Diagonalization

Diagonalizing a matrix involves finding a diagonal matrix that is similar to the given matrix. A square matrix A is diagonalizable if there exists an invertible matrix X made of eigenvectors of A such that $X^{-1}AX = D$, where D is a diagonal matrix made of eigenvalues.

The order of the eigenvalue and eigenvectors matters if you choose $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \dots, \lambda_n$ then the order of the eigenvectors v_1, v_2, \dots, v_n must also correspond. This process only works if A has unique eigenvalues or if they are duplicates they have to be linearly independent.

The process of diagonalization is as follows:

1. Find the eigenvalues and eigenvectors of A .

2. Form the matrix X :

Create a matrix X whose columns are the linearly independent eigenvectors of A .

3. Form the diagonal matrix D :

Create a diagonal matrix D whose diagonal entries are the eigenvalues of A , corresponding to the order of the eigenvectors in P . That is, if the i -th column of P is the eigenvector corresponding to the eigenvalue λ_i , then the i -th diagonal entry of D is λ_i .

4. Verify the diagonalization:

Check that $X^{-1}AX = D$.

A matrix A is diagonalizable if and only if it has n linearly independent eigenvectors, where n is the size of the matrix.

Example:

Consider the matrix

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} -3 & -4 \\ 5 & 6 \end{pmatrix}$$

The characteristic equation is

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = \det \begin{pmatrix} -3 - \lambda & -4 \\ 5 & 6 - \lambda \end{pmatrix} = (-3 - \lambda)(6 - \lambda) + 20 = \lambda^2 - 3\lambda + 2 = 0$$
$$(\lambda - 1)(\lambda - 2)$$

Solving for λ , we get $\lambda_1 = 1$ and $\lambda_2 = 2$.

For $\lambda_1 = 1$:

$$(A - I)\vec{v} = \begin{pmatrix} -4 & -4 \\ 5 & 5 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Note that this is telling us that $x = -y$. Now choose $x = -1$ and $y = 1$, which gives us the vector

$$\vec{x} = (-1/1)$$

For $\lambda_2 = 2$ the process is similar, so we are going to skip it. We get the vector

$$\vec{y} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{4}{5} \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now we will complete the process by writing D , X , and X^{-1} .

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} X = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & -\frac{4}{5} \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} X^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & \frac{4}{5} \\ -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

38.5.7 Normal Matrices

A matrix $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ is considered *normal* if and only if

$$AA^T = A^T A$$

Also, then there exist with the euclidean inner product in \mathbb{C}^n an orthonormal basis of eigenvector and therefore, A is diagonalizable.

This implies that

1. All real symmetric matrices are diagonalizable, and their eigenvalues are real.
2. All real antisymmetric matrices $A^T = -A$ are diagonalizable, and their eigenvalues are purely imaginary or 0.
3. All orthogonal matrices are diagonalizable.

39 The Exponential Function and Relatives

The exponential function and its related functions such as sine, cosine, and the hyperbolic functions are fundamental in both pure and applied mathematics. This section explores these functions through their series expansions and interrelationships.

39.1 Exponential Function as a Series

The exponential function e^x is defined as an infinite series:

$$e^x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!} = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \cdots$$

This series converges for all real and complex values of x .

39.2 Sine and Cosine Definitions with e

Using Euler's identities and Taylor series, sine and cosine can be defined in terms of exponential functions:

$$\sin x = \frac{e^{ix} - e^{-ix}}{2i}, \quad \cos x = \frac{e^{ix} + e^{-ix}}{2}$$

These definitions are consistent with their Taylor expansions:

$$\sin x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n+1}}{(2n+1)!}, \quad \cos x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (-1)^n \frac{x^{2n}}{(2n)!}$$

39.3 Euler's Formula

One of the most elegant formulas in mathematics is Euler's formula:

$$e^{ix} = \cos x + i \sin x$$

This identity provides a deep connection between exponential and trigonometric functions and is valid for all real (and complex) x .

Special Case:

$$e^{i\pi} + 1 = 0$$

This is known as Euler's Identity and is often celebrated as one of the most beautiful equations in mathematics.

39.4 Reason for the Infinite Series of e (Differentiation)

The exponential series:

$$e^x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

has the remarkable property that its derivative is the same function:

$$\frac{d}{dx} e^x = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{nx^{n-1}}{n!} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{x^{n-1}}{(n-1)!}$$

Now replace the index $m = n - 1$:

$$= \sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^m}{m!} = e^x$$

This shows that e^x is the unique function (up to constant multiples) that is equal to its own derivative.

39.5 Hyperbolic Functions with e

The hyperbolic functions are analogs of the trigonometric functions but defined using the exponential function:

$$\begin{aligned}\sinh x &= \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2} \\ \cosh x &= \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2} \\ \tanh x &= \frac{\sinh x}{\cosh x} = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{e^x + e^{-x}}\end{aligned}$$

These functions satisfy identities similar to those of trigonometric functions, for example:

$$\cosh^2 x - \sinh^2 x = 1$$

They naturally arise in the study of differential equations, special relativity, and the geometry of hyperbolas.

39.6 Inverse of the Hyperbolic Trigonometric Functions

- $\sinh^{-1}(x) = \ln(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1})$
- $\cosh^{-1}(x) = \ln(x + \sqrt{x^2 - 1})$
- $\tanh^{-1}(x) = \frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{1+x}{1-x}\right)$
- $\coth^{-1}(x) = \frac{1}{2 \ln\left(\frac{x+1}{x-1}\right)}$
- $\operatorname{sech}^{-1} = \ln\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{1-x^2}}{x}\right)$
- $\operatorname{csch}^{-1} = \ln\left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{\sqrt{1+x^2}}{|x|}\right)$

40 Growth

Growth models are fundamental in understanding population dynamics, resource consumption, and many natural and artificial processes. Two primary models of growth are the **exponential** and the **logistic** growth models. Each of these has discrete and continuous forms.

40.1 Exponential Growth

Exponential growth describes a process that increases at a rate proportional to its current value.

40.1.1 Discrete Exponential Growth

$$P_n = P_0 \cdot (1 + r)^n$$

Where:

- P_n is the population at time step n
- P_0 is the initial population
- r is the growth rate per time step
- n is the number of time steps

Example:

If $P_0 = 100$ and $r = 0.1$, after 5 steps:

$$P_5 = 100 \cdot (1 + 0.1)^5 = 100 \cdot 1.61051 \approx 161.05$$

40.1.2 Continuous Exponential Growth

$$P(t) = P_0 \cdot e^{rt}$$

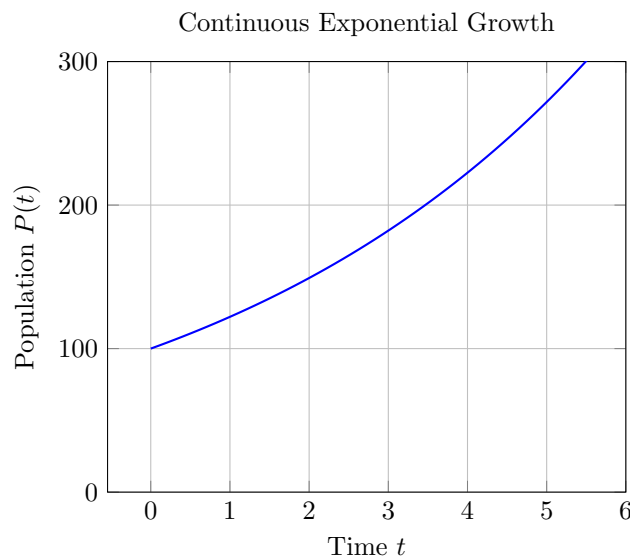
Where:

- $P(t)$ is the population at time t
- e is Euler's number (≈ 2.718)
- r is the continuous growth rate

Example:

If $P_0 = 100$, $r = 0.1$, and $t = 5$:

$$P(5) = 100 \cdot e^{0.5} \approx 100 \cdot 1.64872 \approx 164.87$$



40.2 Logistic Growth

Logistic growth occurs when a population grows rapidly at first and then slows as it approaches a maximum sustainable size (carrying capacity).

40.2.1 Discrete Logistic Growth

$$P_{n+1} = P_n + r \cdot P_n \cdot \left(1 - \frac{P_n}{K}\right)$$

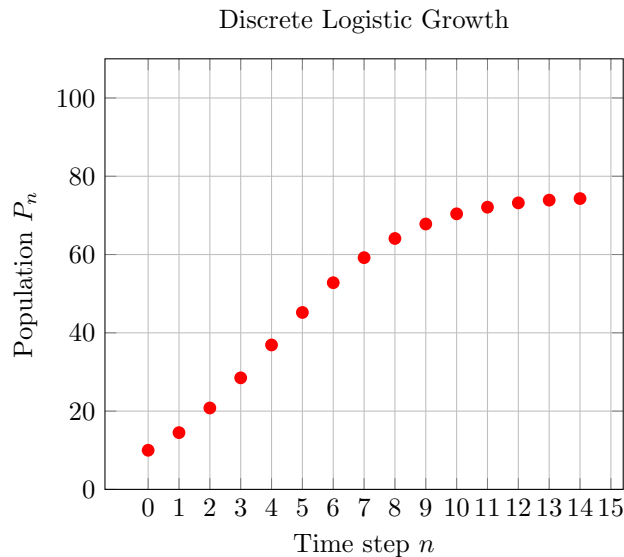
Where:

- K is the carrying capacity
- r is the intrinsic growth rate

Example:

With $P_0 = 10$, $r = 0.5$, $K = 100$:

$$P_1 = 10 + 0.5 \cdot 10 \cdot \left(1 - \frac{10}{100}\right) = 10 + 0.5 \cdot 10 \cdot 0.9 = 10 + 4.5 = 14.5$$



40.2.2 Continuous Logistic Growth

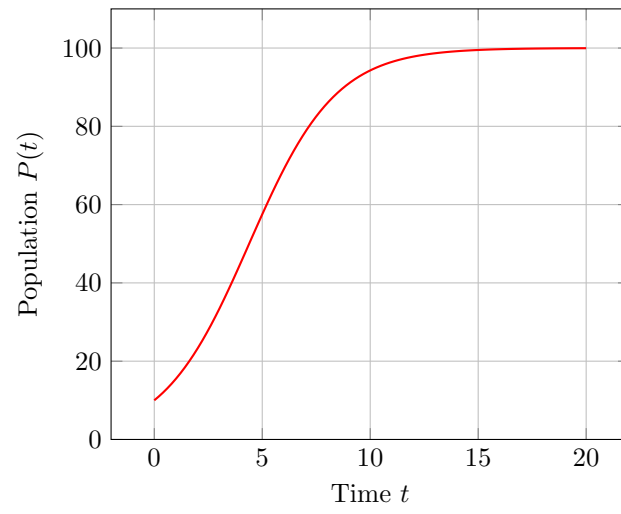
$$P(t) = \frac{K}{1 + \left(\frac{K-P_0}{P_0}\right) e^{-rt}}$$

Example:

With $P_0 = 10$, $K = 100$, and $r = 0.5$, at $t = 5$:

$$P(5) = \frac{100}{1 + \left(\frac{90}{10}\right) e^{-0.5 \cdot 5}} = \frac{100}{1 + 9e^{-2.5}} \approx \frac{100}{1.7387} \approx 57.52$$

Continuous Logistic Growth



41 Asymptotes

An *asymptote* of a curve is a line that the curve approaches but never touches as the input or output grows infinitely large in magnitude. There are three main types of asymptotes: vertical, horizontal, and oblique (slant). Each one describes a different long-term behavior of a function.

41.1 Vertical Asymptotes

A *vertical asymptote* is a vertical line $x = a$ where the function grows without bound as x approaches a from the left or right.

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = \pm\infty \quad \text{or} \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = \pm\infty$$

41.1.1 How to Find Vertical Asymptotes

1. Find values of x that make the denominator of a rational function zero.
2. Eliminate removable discontinuities (common factors).
3. For each remaining zero in the denominator, check if the limit tends to infinity.

Example:

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x-2} \quad \Rightarrow \quad x = 2 \text{ is a vertical asymptote}$$

41.2 Horizontal Asymptotes

A *horizontal asymptote* is a horizontal line $y = L$ that the function approaches as x tends to infinity or negative infinity:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \pm\infty} f(x) = L$$

41.2.1 How to Find Horizontal Asymptotes (Rational Functions)

1. Compare the degrees of the numerator (n) and denominator (m):
 - If $n < m$: Horizontal asymptote at $y = 0$
 - If $n = m$: Horizontal asymptote at $y = \frac{\text{leading coefficient of numerator}}{\text{leading coefficient of denominator}}$
 - If $n > m$: No horizontal asymptote (check for slant)

Example:

$$f(x) = \frac{2x^2 + 3}{x^2 - 1} \quad \Rightarrow \quad y = \frac{2}{1} = 2 \text{ is the horizontal asymptote}$$

41.3 Oblique (Slant) Asymptotes

An *oblique or slant asymptote* occurs when the degree of the numerator is exactly one more than the degree of the denominator.

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} [f(x) - (mx + b)] = 0$$

41.3.1 How to Find Oblique Asymptotes

1. Perform polynomial long division (or synthetic division) on the rational function.
2. The quotient (ignoring the remainder) is the equation of the slant asymptote.

Example:

$$f(x) = \frac{x^2 + 1}{x - 1}$$

Long division gives:

$$\frac{x^2 + 1}{x - 1} = x + 1 + \frac{2}{x - 1} \Rightarrow \text{Slant asymptote: } y = x + 1$$

41.4 Summary Table

Type	Equation	Occurs When
Vertical	$x = a$	Denominator $\rightarrow 0$ (non-removable)
Horizontal	$y = L$	$\lim_{x \rightarrow \pm\infty} f(x) = L$
Oblique	$y = mx + b$	Degree numerator = degree denominator + 1

42 Sequences and Series

A sequence is an ordered list of numbers, usually defined by a formula or a recurrence relation. It is one of the fundamental objects of study in mathematical analysis.

42.1 Arithmetic Sequence

An *arithmetic sequence* is a sequence where the difference between consecutive terms is constant.

$$a_n = a_1 + (n - 1)d$$

- a_1 is the first term
- d is the common difference $d = a_{n+1} - a_n$

Example:

$$a_n = 3 + (n - 1) \cdot 2 = 2n + 1 \quad (\text{Odd numbers})$$

42.2 Geometric Sequence

A *geometric sequence* is a sequence where each term is obtained by multiplying the previous term by a fixed non-zero constant.

$$a_n = a_1 \cdot r^{n-1}$$

- a_1 is the first term
- r is the common ratio $r = \frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n}$

Example:

$$a_n = 2 \cdot 3^{n-1} = 2, 6, 18, 54, \dots$$

42.3 Function Sequence

A *function sequence* is sequence composed of functions and its noted like:

$$(f)_n \text{ with } x^t := \{f : D \rightarrow R \mid f \text{ is a function}\}$$

42.4 Convergence

A sequence (a_n) *converges* to a limit L if for every $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists an integer n_0 such that for all $n \geq n_0$:

$$|\forall \varepsilon > 0 \exists n \in \mathbb{N} : \forall i \geq n \mid a_i - L \mid < \varepsilon$$

In this case, we write:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = L$$

42.5 Cauchy Sequence

A sequence (a_n) is a *Cauchy sequence* if for every $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists an integer n_0 such that for all $n, m \geq n_0$:

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0 \exists n, m \in \mathbb{N} : |a_n - a_m| < \varepsilon \text{ with } n < m$$

Every convergent sequence is a Cauchy sequence. In complete metric spaces (like \mathbb{R}), the converse also holds.

Example: Convergence Exercise

Let $a_i = \frac{1}{i}$ and $\varepsilon = 0.01$. We want to find i_0 such that:

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{1}{n} - 0 \right| < \varepsilon &\implies \frac{1}{i} \leq \frac{1}{n} < \varepsilon \rightarrow \frac{1}{\varepsilon} < n \\ &\implies \frac{1}{i} < 0.01 \implies i > 100 \implies i_0 = 101 \end{aligned}$$

42.6 Definition of ε -Neighborhood

The ε -neighborhood of a point $a \in \mathbb{R}$ is the set:

$$B_\varepsilon(a) = \{x \in \mathbb{R} \mid |x - a| < \varepsilon\}$$

This is the open interval $(a - \varepsilon, a + \varepsilon)$.

42.7 Supremum, Infimum, Maximum and Minimum

The *supremum* of a set $A \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ is the least upper bound: the smallest real number s such that $a \leq s$ for all $a \in A$.

The *infimum* of a set A is the greatest lower bound: the largest number t such that $a \geq t$ for all $a \in A$.

The *maximum* is the largest element in the set, if it exists.

The *minimum* is the smallest element in the set, if it exists.

Example:

For $A = (0, 1)$:

- $\sup A = 1$ (not in A)
- $\inf A = 0$ (not in A)
- $\max A$ and $\min A$ do not exist

42.8 Limit and Accumulation Point

- A *limit* of a sequence (a_n) is the value the terms get arbitrarily close to as $n \rightarrow \infty$.
- An *accumulation point* (or limit point) of a set A is a point x such that every neighborhood of x contains infinitely many points of A .

Example:

The sequence $a_n = (-1)^n + \frac{1}{n}$ has two accumulation points: 1 and -1.

42.9 Monotonicity by Difference and Quotient

Monotonicity by Difference:

- If $a_{n+1} - a_n \geq 0$ for all n , then the sequence is non-decreasing.
- If $a_{n+1} - a_n \leq 0$, it is non-increasing.

Monotonicity by Quotient: (Typically for positive sequences)

- If $\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \geq 1$, then the sequence is non-decreasing.
- If $\frac{a_{n+1}}{a_n} \leq 1$, it is non-increasing.

42.10 Divergence (Definition)

A sequence *diverges* if it does not converge. That is, there is no real number L such that:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = L$$

- A sequence can diverge to ∞ or $-\infty$
- A sequence can also oscillate without approaching any limit

Example: The sequence $a_n = (-1)^n$ diverges since it oscillates between 1 and -1 .

42.11 Subsequences and Their Properties

A *subsequence* of a sequence (a_n) is a sequence (a_{n_k}) where (n_k) is a strictly increasing sequence of natural numbers.

Properties:

- Every subsequence of a convergent sequence converges to the same limit.
- A sequence converges if and only if all of its subsequences converge to the same limit.
- A bounded sequence always has at least one convergent subsequence (Bolzano-Weierstraß theorem).

42.12 Series

A *series* is the sum of the terms of a sequence:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n$$

We define the partial sums $S_n = \sum_{k=1}^n a_k$. If the sequence (S_n) converges to a limit S , then the series is said to converge:

$$\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n = S$$

42.13 Power Series

A *power series* is a series of the form:

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n (x - x_0)^n$$

Where x_0 is the center of the expansion. Power series converge within a radius R :

$$R = \frac{1}{\limsup_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{|a_n|}}$$

42.14 Point-wise Convergence

A sequence of functions (f_n) converges *point-wise* to a function f on a set A if:

$$\forall x \in A, \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f_n(x) = f(x)$$

Point-wise convergence does not preserve properties like continuity or differentiability.

42.15 Uniform Convergence

A sequence of functions (f_n) converges *uniformly* to f on A if:

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists n_0 \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n \geq n_0, \forall x \in A, \quad |f_n(x) - f(x)| < \varepsilon$$

Key Property: Uniform convergence preserves continuity, integration, and differentiation under certain conditions.

42.16 Cauchy Criterion for Series

A series $\sum a_n$ converges if and only if for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists n_0 such that:

$$\left| \sum_{k=m}^n a_k \right| < \varepsilon \quad \forall n > m \geq n_0$$

42.17 Interval Nesting and the Interval Nesting Theorem

Let (I_n) be a sequence of closed intervals:

$$I_n = [a_n, b_n] \quad \text{with } I_{n+1} \subseteq I_n, \text{ and } \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (b_n - a_n) = 0$$

Then, the intersection contains exactly one point:

$$\bigcap_{n=1}^{\infty} I_n = \{x\}$$

This is useful in proving the existence of limits, roots, and fixed points.

42.18 Weierstraß Approximation Theorem

The *Weierstraß Approximation Theorem* states:

Every continuous function $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ can be uniformly approximated by a polynomial $P(x)$, i.e., for every $\varepsilon > 0$ there exists a polynomial $P(x)$ such that:

$$|f(x) - P(x)| < \varepsilon \quad \forall x \in [a, b]$$

This theorem is foundational in numerical analysis and approximation theory.

42.19 Zero Sequence

A sequence (a_n) is called a *null sequence* or *zero sequence* if:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = 0$$

Every zero sequence is convergent (to 0), and plays an essential role in convergence proofs and epsilon-delta arguments.

42.20 The Monotony Principle

Every bounded monotonic sequence converges.

- If (a_n) is non-decreasing and bounded above, then $\lim a_n$ exists and equals $\sup\{a_n\}$.
- If (a_n) is non-increasing and bounded below, then $\lim a_n = \inf\{a_n\}$.

To prove the convergence of a sequence via this principle we follow the next steps

1. Prove the Monotonicity by induction
2. Calculate the limit
3. Prove the limitedness via induction
4. Write the conclusion

Example:

$$a_{n+1} = \sqrt{2a_n - 3} + 1$$

Let us assume that the series is decreasing or $a_{n+1} < a_n$

$$\begin{aligned}a_{n+2} &< a_{n+1} + 1 \\ \sqrt{2a_{n+1} - 3} + 1 &< \sqrt{2a_n - 3} + 1 \\ \sqrt{2a_{n+1} - 3} &< \sqrt{2a_n - 3} \\ 2a_{n+1} - 3 &< 2a_n - 3 \\ a_{n+1} &< a_n\end{aligned}$$

□◻◻

Now let us calculate the limit

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_{n+1} = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt{2a_n - 3} + 1$$

Because of the recursion we know that both a_{n+1} and a_n have the same value, and we call it a .

$$\begin{aligned}a &= \sqrt{2a - 3} + 1 \\ a &= 2\end{aligned}$$

We only have to prove the limitedness now:

For $n = 0$ we have $a_1 = 4 > 2$ then let us assume that the a is never going below 2.

$$a_{n+1} = \sqrt{2a_n - 3} + 1 \geq \sqrt{2(2) - 3} + 1 = 2$$

By setting $a_n = 2$ we get the limit again

□◻◻

42.21 Operations on Sequences

42.21.1 Sum of Sequences

The sum of two sequences (a_n) and (b_n) is a new sequence (c_n) where each term c_n is the sum of the corresponding terms of (a_n) and (b_n) :

$$c_n = a_n + b_n, \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = A$ and $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = B$, then the limit of the sum sequence is:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (a_n + b_n) = A + B.$$

42.21.2 Multiplication of Sequences

The product of two sequences (a_n) and (b_n) is a new sequence (d_n) where each term d_n is the product of the corresponding terms of (a_n) and (b_n) :

$$d_n = a_n \cdot b_n, \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = A$ and $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} b_n = B$, then the limit of the product sequence is:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} (a_n \cdot b_n) = A \cdot B.$$

42.21.3 Absolute Value of a Sequence

The absolute value of a sequence (a_n) is a new sequence (e_n) where each term e_n is the absolute value of the corresponding term of (a_n) :

$$e_n = |a_n|, \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = A$, then the limit of the absolute value sequence is:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} |a_n| = |A|.$$

42.21.4 Conjugate of a Complex Sequence

If (a_n) is a sequence of complex numbers, where $a_n = x_n + iy_n$ with $x_n, y_n \in \mathbb{R}$, then the conjugate of (a_n) is a new sequence $(\overline{a_n})$ where each term $\overline{a_n}$ is the complex conjugate of a_n :

$$\overline{a_n} = x_n - iy_n, \quad \forall n \in \mathbb{N}.$$

If $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = A = X + iY$, then the limit of the conjugate sequence is:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \overline{a_n} = \overline{A} = X - iY.$$

42.21.5 Complex Limit (Real and Imaginary Parts)

For a sequence of complex numbers (a_n) where $a_n = x_n + iy_n$, the limit of the sequence $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = A = X + iY$ exists if and only if the limits of the real part sequence (x_n) and the imaginary part sequence (y_n) exist individually:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = A \iff \left(\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \operatorname{Re}(a_n) = \operatorname{Re}(A) = X \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \operatorname{Im}(a_n) = \operatorname{Im}(A) = Y \right).$$

This means we can analyze the convergence of a complex sequence by examining the convergence of its real and imaginary parts separately.

42.21.6 Asymptotic Equality

Two sequences $(a_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ and $(b_n)_{n \in \mathbb{N}}$ are said to be asymptotically equal, denoted by $a_n \sim b_n$, if

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{a_n}{b_n} = 1,$$

provided that $b_n \neq 0$ for all sufficiently large n . Asymptotic equality implies that the sequences behave similarly as n approaches infinity.

43 Limits

Limits are a foundational concept in calculus and analysis. They describe the behavior of functions and sequences as the input approaches a particular value or infinity.

43.1 Definition of the Limit

Let f be a function defined near a point a . We say:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L$$

if for every $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists a $\delta > 0$ such that:

$$0 < |x - a| < \delta \Rightarrow |f(x) - L| < \varepsilon$$

This is the precise ε - δ *definition* of a limit.

43.2 Limit Calculation Rules

Sum Rule: $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} (f(x) + g(x)) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) + \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)$

Difference Rule: $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} (f(x) - g(x)) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) - \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)$

Product Rule: $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} (f(x)g(x)) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) \cdot \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)$

Quotient Rule: $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)}{\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x)}$ if $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) \neq 0$

Power Rule: $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)^n = (\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x))^n$

Root Rule: $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \sqrt[n]{f(x)} = \sqrt[n]{\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)}$ (when defined)

43.3 Limits at Infinity

$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} f(x) = L$ means that $f(x)$ approaches L as $x \rightarrow \infty$

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{x} = 0, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} e^x = \infty, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{x^2} = 0$$

43.4 Indeterminate Forms

Indeterminate forms arise in limits when the expression does not directly imply a limit value:

$$\frac{0}{0}, \quad \frac{\infty}{\infty}, \quad 0 \cdot \infty, \quad \infty - \infty, \quad 1^\infty, \quad \infty^0, \quad 0^0$$

43.5 Limit of a Composite Function

If $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L$ and $\lim_{x \rightarrow L} g(x) = g(L)$ (i.e., g is continuous at L), then:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(f(x)) = g\left(\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)\right)$$

43.6 Right and Left Limits

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a^-} f(x) = L_-, \quad \lim_{x \rightarrow a^+} f(x) = L_+$$

The two-sided limit $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x)$ exists if and only if $L_- = L_+$.

43.7 L'Hôpital's Rule

If $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) = 0$ or $\pm\infty$, and $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)}$ exists, then:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)}$$

This rule is used to resolve indeterminate forms $\frac{0}{0}$ and $\frac{\infty}{\infty}$.

43.8 Limit of a fraction

For expressions like:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^n$$

- If $\frac{a}{b} < 1$: limit is 0
- If $\frac{a}{b} > 1$: limit diverges to ∞

43.9 Limit of a Recursive Sequence

Let (a_n) be defined recursively:

$$a_{n+1} = f(a_n)$$

If (a_n) converges to L and f is continuous, then:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = L \Rightarrow L = f(L)$$

This is used to find fixed points of recursive definitions.

43.10 Important Limits

- $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$
- $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1 - \cos x}{x^2} = \frac{1}{2}$
- $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\ln(1+x)}{x} = 1$
- $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{e^x - 1}{x} = 1$
- $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{n!}{n^n} = 0$
- $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sqrt[n]{a} = 1$ (for $a > 0$)
- $\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{\cos x} = 1$

43.11 Squeeze Theorem (Sandwich Theorem)

If $g(x) \leq f(x) \leq h(x)$ near a , and:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow a} g(x) = \lim_{x \rightarrow a} h(x) = L \Rightarrow \lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L$$

Example:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow 0} x^2 \cos\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = 0$$

43.12 The Number e as a Limit

The number e is defined as:

$$e = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$$

More generally:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{a}{bn}\right)^n = e^{a/b}$$

Example of a limit using e

$$\begin{aligned} & \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{x^2 + 1}{x^2 + 2} \right)^{x^2} \\ & \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left(\left(\frac{x^2 + 1}{x^2 + 2} \right)^{x^2} \right)^x \\ & \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left(\left(\frac{1 + \frac{1}{x^2}}{1 + \frac{2}{x^2}} \right)^{x^2} \right)^x \\ & \lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{e}{e^2} \right)^x = \left(\frac{1}{e} \right)^x = 0 \end{aligned}$$

43.13 Limits of \arctan

- $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \arctan x = \frac{\pi}{2}$
- $\lim_{x \rightarrow -\infty} \arctan x = -\frac{\pi}{2}$
- $\arctan x$ is continuous and differentiable everywhere, with a horizontal asymptote at $y = \pm \frac{\pi}{2}$

43.14 Bolzano-Weierstraß Theorem

Every bounded, convergent sequence in \mathbb{C} has a convergent subsequence. More precisely the sequence a has biggest and smallest accumulation point h^* and h_*

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0 : h_* - \varepsilon < a_n < h^* + \varepsilon \text{ for all-most all } n \in \mathbb{N}$$

$$h^* := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sup a_n$$

$$h_* := \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \inf a_n$$

43.15 Uniqueness of the Limit

Let $f : D \subset \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, and suppose a is a limit point of D . Then: If $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L_1$ and $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L_2$, then $L_1 = L_2$.

In other words, a function can have at most one limit at a given point. This is the *uniqueness of limits*.

Proof (by contradiction)

Assume $L_1 \neq L_2$, and let $\varepsilon = \frac{|L_1 - L_2|}{3} > 0$.

- Since $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L_1$, there exists $\delta_1 > 0$ such that for all $x \in D$, $0 < |x - a| < \delta_1$ implies:

$$|f(x) - L_1| < \varepsilon$$

- Since $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = L_2$, there exists $\delta_2 > 0$ such that for all $x \in D$, $0 < |x - a| < \delta_2$ implies:

$$|f(x) - L_2| < \varepsilon$$

Let $\delta = \min(\delta_1, \delta_2)$, and choose $x \in D$ such that $0 < |x - a| < \delta$.

Then:

$$|f(x) - L_1| < \varepsilon, \quad |f(x) - L_2| < \varepsilon$$

Using the triangle inequality:

$$|L_1 - L_2| = |L_1 - f(x) + f(x) - L_2| \leq |f(x) - L_1| + |f(x) - L_2| < \varepsilon + \varepsilon = 2\varepsilon$$

But we chose $\varepsilon = \frac{|L_1 - L_2|}{3}$, so:

$$|L_1 - L_2| < \frac{2}{3}|L_1 - L_2| \Rightarrow \frac{1}{3}|L_1 - L_2| < 0$$

Which is a contradiction since absolute values are always non-negative.

Conclusion: Our assumption was false. Hence, $L_1 = L_2$. The limit is unique.

□

43.16 Every Convergent Sequence is a Cauchy Sequence

Let (a_n) be a sequence in \mathbb{R} . We say:

If (a_n) converges, then it is a Cauchy sequence.

A sequence (a_n) is a *Cauchy sequence* if:

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists N \in \mathbb{N} \text{ such that } \forall n, m \geq N, \quad |a_n - a_m| < \varepsilon$$

Proof:

Assume $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a_n = L$. Then:

- For every $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that:

$$\forall n \geq N, \quad |a_n - L| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2}$$

- Now, for any $n, m \geq N$, use the triangle inequality:

$$|a_n - a_m| = |a_n - L + L - a_m| \leq |a_n - L| + |a_m - L| < \frac{\varepsilon}{2} + \frac{\varepsilon}{2} = \varepsilon$$

Conclusion:

$|a_n - a_m| < \varepsilon$ for all $n, m \geq N \Rightarrow (a_n)$ is Cauchy

This completes the proof that every convergent sequence is Cauchy.

□

44 Convergence Radius

44.1 Definition

Consider a power series of the form

$$f(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n (x - a)^n,$$

where c_n are the coefficients, x is the variable, and a is the center of the series. The radius of convergence, denoted by R , is a non-negative real number (or ∞) such that the series converges if $|x - a| < R$ and diverges if $|x - a| > R$. In other words, the interval of convergence is $(a - R, a + R)$, possibly including one or both endpoints.

44.2 Test of the Borders

When the absolute value of the difference between x and a is equal to the radius of convergence (i.e., $|x - a| = R$), the convergence of the power series must be checked separately. This involves substituting the values $x = a \pm R$ into the series and determining whether the resulting series converges or diverges using other convergence tests (e.g., the comparison test, ratio test, alternating series test).

44.3 Approximating the Error

When a power series is used to approximate a function, it is often necessary to estimate the error in the approximation. If the power series converges, the error can be made arbitrarily small by including a sufficient number of terms. For an alternating series that satisfies the conditions of the Alternating Series Test, the error in approximating the sum by the first n terms is bounded by the absolute value of the $(n + 1)$ -th term:

$$\left| \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} c_k (x - a)^k - \sum_{k=0}^n c_k (x - a)^k \right| \leq |c_{n+1} (x - a)^{n+1}|.$$

For other power series, techniques such as Taylor's Theorem with remainder can be used to estimate the error.

45 Calculating Series Values

45.1 Telescoping Sums and Partial Fraction Decomposition

Telescoping sums are series where most of the terms cancel out, leaving only a few terms. Partial fraction decomposition is a technique used to rewrite rational functions as a sum of simpler fractions, which can often lead to telescoping sums.

Example: $\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4k^2-1}$

Consider the infinite series

$$S = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4k^2-1}.$$

We can decompose the fraction using partial fraction decomposition:

$$\frac{1}{4k^2-1} = \frac{1}{(2k-1)(2k+1)} = \frac{A}{2k-1} + \frac{B}{2k+1}.$$

Multiplying both sides by $(2k-1)(2k+1)$ gives

$$1 = A(2k+1) + B(2k-1).$$

To solve for A and B , we can use the following values of k :

- For $k = \frac{1}{2}$: $1 = A(1+1) + B(0) \implies A = \frac{1}{2}$.
- For $k = -\frac{1}{2}$: $1 = A(0) + B(-1-1) \implies B = -\frac{1}{2}$.

Thus, we have

$$\frac{1}{4k^2-1} = \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{2k-1} - \frac{1}{2k+1} \right).$$

Now we can write the series as a telescoping sum:

$$S = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2k-1} - \frac{1}{2k+1} \right).$$

Let S_n be the n -th partial sum:

$$\begin{aligned} S_n &= \frac{1}{2} \left[\left(\frac{1}{1} - \frac{1}{3} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{5} \right) + \left(\frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} \right) + \cdots + \left(\frac{1}{2n-1} - \frac{1}{2n+1} \right) \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[1 - \frac{1}{2n+1} \right]. \end{aligned}$$

Taking the limit as n approaches infinity, we get

$$S = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2} \left(1 - \frac{1}{2n+1} \right) = \frac{1}{2}(1-0) = \frac{1}{2}.$$

Therefore, the value of the series is $\frac{1}{2}$.

46 Transforming Functions into Power Series

Many functions can be represented as power series, which is useful for various applications in calculus and analysis. This section discusses some common techniques for transforming functions into power series.

46.1 Common Cases

Here are some common cases where functions can be easily transformed into power series:

$$\frac{1}{1-x}$$

The function $\frac{1}{1-x}$ has the well-known geometric series representation:

$$\frac{1}{1-x} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x^n, \quad |x| < 1.$$

$$\frac{1}{1-(x-x_0)^n}$$

A slight generalization is:

$$\frac{1}{1-(x-x_0)^n} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (x-x_0)^{nk}, \quad |x-x_0| < 1.$$

$$\frac{1}{1-d(x-x_0)^n}$$

For a constant d :

$$\frac{1}{1-d(x-x_0)^n} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} d^k (x-x_0)^{nk}, \quad |d(x-x_0)^n| < 1.$$

Example: $\frac{x+1}{3-x}$

Let's find the power series representation of the function $f(x) = \frac{x+1}{3-x}$.

46.1.1 Partial Fractions

First, we perform partial fraction decomposition. We can rewrite the function as:

$$\frac{x+1}{3-x} = \frac{-(3-x)+4}{3-x} = -1 + \frac{4}{3-x}.$$

46.1.2 Manipulating the Expression

Now, we manipulate the fraction to fit the form $\frac{1}{1-u}$:

$$\frac{4}{3-x} = \frac{4}{3(1-\frac{x}{3})} = \frac{4}{3} \cdot \frac{1}{1-\frac{x}{3}}.$$

46.1.3 Power Series Representation

Using the geometric series formula, we have

$$\frac{1}{1-\frac{x}{3}} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{x}{3}\right)^n, \quad \left|\frac{x}{3}\right| < 1.$$

Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{x+1}{3-x} &= -1 + \frac{4}{3} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{x}{3}\right)^n \\
&= -1 + \frac{4}{3} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{3^n} \\
&= -1 + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{4}{3^{n+1}} x^n, \quad |x| < 3.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the power series representation of the function is

$$\frac{x+1}{3-x} = -1 + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{4}{3^{n+1}} x^n, \quad |x| < 3.$$

47 Continuity

Continuity describes functions whose values change smoothly, without abrupt jumps or breaks. This concept is fundamental in calculus, analysis, and fixed point theory.

47.1 Definition of Continuity at a Point

A function f is *continuous* at a point x_0 if:

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0, \exists \delta > 0 \text{ such that } |x - x_0| < \delta \Rightarrow |f(x) - f(x_0)| < \varepsilon$$

Equivalently,

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow x_0} f(x) = f(x_0)$$

Example:

$\varepsilon\delta$ Exercise for $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$ at $x_0 > 0$

We want to find δ such that:

$$|x - x_0| < \delta \Rightarrow \left| \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{x_0} \right| < \varepsilon$$

Start by rewriting:

$$\left| \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{x_0} \right| = \left| \frac{x_0 - x}{xx_0} \right| = \frac{|x - x_0|}{|x||x_0|}$$

Assume:

$$x \in \left[\frac{x_0}{2}, \frac{3x_0}{2} \right] \Rightarrow |x| \geq \frac{x_0}{2}$$

Then:

$$\left| \frac{1}{x} - \frac{1}{x_0} \right| \leq \frac{|x - x_0|}{\frac{x_0}{2} \cdot x_0} = \frac{2}{x_0^2} |x - x_0|$$

Choose:

$$\delta = \min \left\{ \frac{x_0}{2}, \frac{x_0^2 \varepsilon}{2} \right\}$$

47.2 Rules of Continuity

Let f and g be continuous at x_0 :

- $f + g$, $f - g$, $f \cdot g$ are continuous at x_0
- $\frac{f}{g}$ is continuous at x_0 if $g(x_0) \neq 0$
- Compositions: if g is continuous at x_0 , and f is continuous at $g(x_0)$, then $f \circ g$ is continuous at x_0

47.3 Lipschitz Continuity

A function $f : D \subset \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is *Lipschitz continuous* if:

$$\exists L > 0 \text{ such that } |f(x) - f(y)| \leq L|x - y| \quad \forall x, y \in D$$

- Every Lipschitz continuous function is uniformly continuous.
- The smallest such L is called the *Lipschitz constant*.

47.4 Banach Fixed Point Theorem

Let (X, d) be a complete metric space, and $f : X \rightarrow X$ a *contraction mapping*, i.e.,

$$\exists L < 1 \text{ such that } d(f(x), f(y)) \leq L \cdot d(x, y)$$

Then:

- f has a unique fixed point $x^* \in X$, such that $f(x^*) = x^*$
- Iterating $x_{n+1} = f(x_n)$ converges to x^*

Interpretation and Meaning

The Banach Fixed Point Theorem ensures:

- Existence and uniqueness of solutions (fixed points)
- Convergence of approximation by iteration
- Powerful tool in numerical methods and differential equations

47.4.1 A Priori and A Posteriori Approximations

A priori estimate:

$$|x_n - x^*| \leq \frac{L^n}{1 - L} |x_1 - x_0|$$

A posteriori estimate:

$$|x_n - x^*| \leq \frac{L}{1 - L} |x_n - x_{n-1}|$$

47.4.2 Steps for a Fixed Point Exercise

Given $f : [a, b] \rightarrow [a, b]$, to prove existence and convergence:

1. **Show monotonicity:** f is increasing or decreasing.
2. **Check interval preservation:** $f([a, b]) \subseteq [a, b]$
3. **Check Lipschitz continuity:** Find $L < 1$
4. **Fixed point iteration:** Choose x_0 , compute $x_{n+1} = f(x_n)$
5. **Apply a priori or a posteriori bound**

Example: $f(x) = \frac{1}{x} + 3$ on $[2, 5]$

- *Domain check:* $x \in [2, 5] \Rightarrow \frac{1}{x} \in [0.2, 0.5] \Rightarrow f(x) \in [3.2, 3.5] \subset [2, 5]$
- *Lipschitz constant:*

$$f'(x) = -\frac{1}{x^2} \Rightarrow |f'(x)| \leq \frac{1}{2^2} = \frac{1}{4} < 1 \Rightarrow \text{Lipschitz with } L = \frac{1}{4}$$

- *Contraction verified:* By derivative bound
- *Fixed point iteration:*

$$x_0 = 3, \quad x_1 = f(3) = \frac{1}{3} + 3 = \frac{10}{3}, \quad x_2 = f(x_1), \dots$$

- *Use approximation bounds:*

$$|x_n - x^*| \leq \frac{L^n}{1 - L} |x_1 - x_0|$$

48 Differentiation

Differentiation is a core concept in calculus. It describes the rate at which a quantity changes and provides tools for analyzing and modeling change in real-world phenomena.

48.1 Definition of the Derivative

The derivative of a function f at a point x is defined as the limit:

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

or

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow a} \frac{f(x) - f(a)}{x - a}$$

provided this limit exists.

Geometrically, $f'(a)$ is the slope of the tangent line to the graph of f at $x = a$.

48.2 Derivative Rules

Power Rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx} x^n = nx^{n-1}, \quad \text{for } n \in \mathbb{R}$$

Constant Rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx} c = 0, \quad \text{for constant } c$$

Constant Multiple Rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx} [c \cdot f(x)] = c \cdot f'(x)$$

Sum and Difference Rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx} [f(x) \pm g(x)] = f'(x) \pm g'(x)$$

Product Rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx} [f(x)g(x)] = f'(x)g(x) + f(x)g'(x)$$

Quotient Rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \right) = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{g(x)^2}$$

Chain Rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx} f(g(x)) = f'(g(x)) \cdot g'(x)$$

48.3 Extrema and Critical Points Test

A function f has a critical point at $x = c$ if:

$$f'(c) = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad f'(c) \text{ does not exist}$$

To determine the nature of the critical point:

- *First Derivative Test:* Check sign changes of f' around c
- *Second Derivative Test:*

$$f''(c) > 0 \Rightarrow \text{local minimum} \quad f''(c) < 0 \Rightarrow \text{local maximum}$$

48.4 Trigonometric Derivatives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx} \sin x &= \cos x \\ \frac{d}{dx} \cos x &= -\sin x \\ \frac{d}{dx} \tan x &= \sec^2 x \\ \frac{d}{dx} \cot x &= -\csc^2 x \\ \frac{d}{dx} \sec x &= \sec x \tan x \\ \frac{d}{dx} \csc x &= -\csc x \cot x\end{aligned}$$

48.5 Derivatives of Inverse Trigonometric Functions

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx} \arcsin x &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \\ \frac{d}{dx} \arccos x &= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} \\ \frac{d}{dx} \arctan x &= \frac{1}{1+x^2} \\ \frac{d}{dx} \operatorname{arccot} x &= -\frac{1}{1+x^2} \\ \frac{d}{dx} \operatorname{arcsec} x &= \frac{1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-1}} \\ \frac{d}{dx} \operatorname{arccsc} x &= -\frac{1}{|x|\sqrt{x^2-1}}\end{aligned}$$

48.6 The Differential

The differential dy of a function $y = f(x)$ is defined as:

$$dy = f'(x) dx$$

This linear approximation estimates the change in y for a small change in x .

48.7 The Secant Equation and Graphical Meaning

The *secant line* through points $(x_0, f(x_0))$ and $(x_0 + h, f(x_0 + h))$ has slope:

$$\frac{f(x_0 + h) - f(x_0)}{h}$$

As $h \rightarrow 0$, the secant line approaches the tangent line. Graphically, this means:

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \text{slope of secant} = \text{slope of tangent} = f'(x) = \Delta_h$$

The secant line equation is given by:

$$L(x) = f(x_0) + \Delta_h f'(x_0)(x - x_0)$$

48.8 Optimization via the Derivative

To find local or global extrema:

1. Compute $f'(x)$

2. Solve $f'(x) = 0$ to find critical points
3. Use the first or second derivative test to classify
4. Evaluate endpoints if optimizing over a closed interval

Example:

Maximize area $A = x(10 - 2x)$

$$A = 10x - 2x^2, \quad A' = 10 - 4x, \quad A' = 0 \Rightarrow x = 2.5$$

48.9 Power Rule Derivation

We derive the power rule:

$$\frac{d}{dx}x^n = nx^{n-1}$$

for $n \in \mathbb{N}$ using the limit definition:

$$\frac{d}{dx}x^n = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{(x+h)^n - x^n}{h}$$

Use the Binomial Theorem:

$$(x+h)^n = x^n + nx^{n-1}h + \cdots + h^n \Rightarrow \text{Only the linear term survives after dividing by } h$$

48.10 Implicit Differentiation

Given:

$$9x^2 + 4y^2 = 25$$

Differentiate both sides implicitly:

$$18x + 8y \frac{dy}{dx} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{18x}{8y} = -\frac{9x}{4y}$$

This method is used when y is not isolated and is defined implicitly.

49 Integration

Integration is the reverse process of differentiation and is used to calculate areas, volumes, accumulated change, and more.

49.1 Definition (Riemann Integral)

Let $f : [a, b] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be a bounded function. We define the *definite integral* as:

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \lim_{\|P\| \rightarrow 0} \sum_{i=1}^n f(\xi_i) \Delta x_i$$

Where $P = \{x_0, \dots, x_n\}$ is a partition, $\xi_i \in [x_{i-1}, x_i]$, and $\Delta x_i = x_i - x_{i-1}$.

49.2 Upper and Lower Sums

Let f be bounded on $[a, b]$ and P a partition:

$$\underline{S}(f, P) = \sum_{i=1}^n m_i \Delta x_i, \quad \overline{S}(f, P) = \sum_{i=1}^n M_i \Delta x_i$$

with:

$$m_i = \inf_{x \in [x_{i-1}, x_i]} f(x), \quad M_i = \sup_{x \in [x_{i-1}, x_i]} f(x)$$

If $\sup \underline{S} = \inf \overline{S}$, then f is Riemann integrable.

49.3 Concrete and Non-Concrete Integrals

- *Concrete*: Can be explicitly evaluated with anti-derivatives.
- *Non-concrete*: Cannot be integrated in elementary terms (e.g., $\int e^{-x^2} dx$).

49.4 Rules of Integration

- $\int 0 dx = C$
- $\int c dx = cx$
- $\int x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + C \quad (n \neq -1)$
- $\int \frac{1}{x} dx = \ln |x| + C$
- $\int e^x dx = e^x + C$
- $\int \sin x dx = -\cos x + C$
- $\int \cos x dx = \sin x + C$
- Linearity: $\int (af + bg) dx = a \int f dx + b \int g dx$

49.5 Substitution Rule (U-Substitution)

If $u = g(x)$ and $f = F'$, then:

$$\int f(g(x))g'(x) dx = \int f(u) du$$

Example:

$$\int \frac{1}{(x-1)^4} dx, \quad u = x-1 \Rightarrow \int \frac{1}{u^4} du = -\frac{1}{3u^3} + C = -\frac{1}{3(x-1)^3} + C$$

49.6 Integration by Parts

$$\int u \, dv = uv - \int v \, du$$

ILATE: Use this order to choose u :

1. Inverse Trig
2. Logarithmic
3. Algebraic
4. Trigonometric
5. Exponential

Cyclic Integrals: Some integrals cycle back to the original (e.g., $e^x \sin x$).

Example: $\int e^x \sin x \, dx$

Let:

$$u = \sin x, \, dv = e^x dx \Rightarrow du = \cos x \, dx, \, v = e^x \Rightarrow \int e^x \sin x \, dx = e^x \sin x - \int e^x \cos x \, dx$$

Repeat integration by parts to complete.

49.7 Integration by Partial Fractions

Applies to rational functions. Four cases:

- Linear factors
- Repeated linear factors
- Irreducible quadratic factors
- Repeated irreducible quadratic factors

Example:

$$\int \frac{1}{x^2 - 1} dx = \int \left(\frac{1}{2(x-1)} - \frac{1}{2(x+1)} \right) dx = \frac{1}{2} \ln \left| \frac{x-1}{x+1} \right| + C$$

49.8 Trigonometric Substitution

Trigonometric substitution is useful for evaluating integrals involving square roots of quadratic expressions.

- $\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}$: use $x = a \sin \theta$
- $\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}$: use $x = a \tan \theta$
- $\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}$: use $x = a \sec \theta$

Example 1: $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{4-x^2}} dx$

We use: $x = 2 \sin \theta \Rightarrow dx = 2 \cos \theta \, d\theta$

$$\sqrt{4 - x^2} = \sqrt{4 - 4 \sin^2 \theta} = \sqrt{4 \cos^2 \theta} = 2 \cos \theta$$

Substitute:

$$\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{4 - x^2}} dx = \int \frac{1}{2 \cos \theta} \cdot 2 \cos \theta \, d\theta = \int d\theta = \theta + C$$

Return to x using:

$$x = 2 \sin \theta \Rightarrow \theta = \arcsin \left(\frac{x}{2} \right) \Rightarrow \boxed{\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{4-x^2}} dx = \arcsin \left(\frac{x}{2} \right) + C}$$

Example 2: $\int \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{x^2+4}} dx$

Use: $x = 2 \tan \theta \Rightarrow dx = 2 \sec^2 \theta d\theta$

$$\sqrt{x^2+4} = \sqrt{4 \tan^2 \theta + 4} = \sqrt{4 \sec^2 \theta} = 2 \sec \theta$$

Substitute:

$$\int \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{x^2+4}} dx = \int \frac{(2 \tan \theta)^3}{2 \sec \theta} \cdot 2 \sec^2 \theta d\theta = \int \frac{8 \tan^3 \theta}{\sec \theta} \cdot 2 \sec^2 \theta d\theta$$

Simplify:

$$\begin{aligned} 8 \int \tan^2 \theta \sec \theta \tan \theta dx &= 8 \int (\sec^2 \theta - 1) \sec \theta \tan \theta dx \\ &= 8 \int (\sec^2 \theta \sec \theta - \sec \theta) \tan \theta dx \\ &= 8 \left(\int \sec^2 \theta \sec \theta \tan \theta dx - \int \sec \theta \tan \theta dx \right) \\ &= 8 \left(\int \sec^2 \theta \sec \theta dx - \int \sec \theta \tan \theta dx \right) \end{aligned}$$

For the first one let $u = \sec^3 \theta$ and $du = 3 \sec^2 \theta d\theta$

$$\int u du = \frac{\sec^3 \theta}{3} + c$$

For the second one

$$\int \sec \theta \tan \theta = \sec \theta + c$$

Together

$$8 \left(\frac{\sec^3 \theta}{3} - \sec \theta + c \right)$$

Then solve the integral using trigonometric identities and reduction formulas. Return to x using:

$$\tan \theta = \frac{x}{2} \quad \sec \theta = \frac{\sqrt{x^2+4}}{2}$$

This leaves us with

$$\frac{8}{3} \left(\frac{\sqrt{x^2+4}}{2} \right)^3 - 8 \left(\frac{\sqrt{x^2+4}}{2} \right) + c$$

Example 3: $\int \frac{x^3}{\sqrt{x^4-4}} dx$

Use: $x = 2 \sec \theta$, $dx = 2 \sec \theta \tan \theta d\theta$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \int \frac{(2 \sec \theta)^2 2 \sec \theta \tan \theta d\theta}{2 \tan \theta} &= \int 8 \sec^4 \theta d\theta \\ 8 \int (\tan^2 \theta + 1) \sec^2 \theta &= 8 \left(\int \tan^2 \theta \sec^2 \theta + \int \sec^2 \theta \right) \end{aligned}$$

Now let $u = \tan \theta$ and $du = \sec^2 \theta d\theta$

$$8 \left(\int u du + \int \sec^2 \theta d\theta \right) = \frac{8}{3} \tan^3 \theta + 8 \tan \theta + c$$

Now we return to x via our triangle:

$$\tan \theta = \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + 4}}{2}$$

$$\frac{8}{3} \left(\frac{\sqrt{x^2 + 4}}{2} \right)^3 + 8 \frac{\sqrt{x^2 + 4}}{2} + c$$

49.9 Average Value of a Function

$$\bar{f} = \frac{1}{b-a} \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

49.10 Mean Value Theorem for Integrals

If f is continuous on $[a, b]$, then:

$$\exists c \in [a, b] \text{ such that } \int_a^b f(x) dx = f(c)(b-a)$$

49.11 Length, Area, Volume Formulas

Arc length:

$$L = \int_a^b \sqrt{1 + f'(x)^2} dx$$

Area between curves:

$$A = \int_a^b |f(x) - g(x)| dx$$

Volume (disk):

$$V = \pi \int_a^b f(x)^2 dx$$

Shell:

$$V = 2\pi \int_a^b x f(x) \sqrt{1 + f'(x)^2} dx$$

49.12 Differentiation of Integrals with Variable Bounds

If:

$$F(x) = \int_{a(x)}^{b(x)} f(t) dt$$

Then:

$$F'(x) = f(b(x)) \cdot b'(x) - f(a(x)) \cdot a'(x)$$

49.13 Parameter-Dependent Integrals

Let $F(p) = \int_a^b f(x, p) dx$. If f is continuous and differentiable in p , then:

$$\frac{d}{dp} \int_a^b f(x, p) dx = \int_a^b \frac{\partial f}{\partial p}(x, p) dx$$

49.14 Leibniz Rule for Differentiating Under the Integral Sign

$$\frac{d}{dp} \int_{a(p)}^{b(p)} f(x, p) dx = f(b(p), p) \cdot b'(p) - f(a(p), p) \cdot a'(p) + \int_{a(p)}^{b(p)} \frac{\partial f}{\partial p}(x, p) dx$$

49.15 Improper Integrals (Infinite Bounds)

$$\begin{aligned} \int_a^\infty f(x) dx &= \lim_{R \rightarrow \infty} \int_a^R f(x) dx \\ \int_{-\infty}^\infty f(x) dx &= \int_{-\infty}^0 f(x) dx + \int_0^\infty f(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

49.16 Improper Integrals (Unbounded Functions)

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \text{ improper if } f \text{ has an infinite discontinuity on } [a, b]$$

Example:

$$\int_0^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} dx = \lim_{\varepsilon \rightarrow 0^+} \int_\varepsilon^1 \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}} dx = 2$$

49.17 Convergence Criteria for Improper Integrals

- *Majorant:* If $0 \leq f(x) \leq g(x)$ and $\int g(x) dx$ converges, then so does $\int f(x) dx$.
- *Minorant:* If $f(x) \geq g(x) \geq 0$ and $\int g(x) dx$ diverges, then $\int f(x) dx$ diverges.

49.18 Integral Test for Series

Let $f(n) = a_n$ where f is continuous, decreasing, and positive for $n \geq N$:

$$\sum_{n=N}^{\infty} a_n \text{ converges} \iff \int_N^{\infty} f(x) dx \text{ converges}$$

Example:

$$\sum \frac{1}{n^p} \text{ converges} \iff p > 1$$

50 Important Theorems of Single Variable Calculus

50.1 Intermediate Value Theorem

Let f be a continuous function on the closed interval $[a, b]$. If $f(a) \neq f(b)$ and N is any number between $f(a)$ and $f(b)$, then there exists $c \in (a, b)$ such that $f(c) = N$.

Proof:

Without loss of generality, assume $f(a) < N < f(b)$. Define:

$$S = \{x \in [a, b] \mid f(x) \leq N\}$$

Since $a \in S$, S is non-empty and bounded above by b . Let $c = \sup S$.

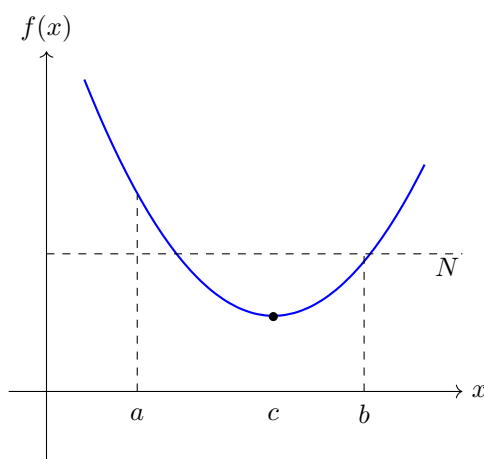
By the continuity of f , we have:

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow c^-} f(x) = f(c) = \lim_{x \rightarrow c^+} f(x)$$

Since $f(x) \leq N$ for all $x < c$, and for any $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $x > c$ with $f(x) > N$, then by the definition of supremum and continuity:

$$f(c) = N$$

□◻◻



50.2 Extreme Value Theorem

If f is continuous on the closed interval $[a, b]$, then f attains a maximum and a minimum value on $[a, b]$. That is, there exist $c, d \in [a, b]$ such that:

$$f(c) \leq f(x) \leq f(d) \quad \text{for all } x \in [a, b]$$

Proof:

Since f is continuous on the compact interval $[a, b]$, the image $f([a, b]) \subset \mathbb{R}$ is also compact. A compact subset of \mathbb{R} is closed and bounded, and hence attains its supremum and infimum.

Therefore, there exist $c, d \in [a, b]$ such that:

$$f(c) = \min\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\}, \quad f(d) = \max\{f(x) : x \in [a, b]\}$$

□◻◻

50.3 Rolle's Theorem

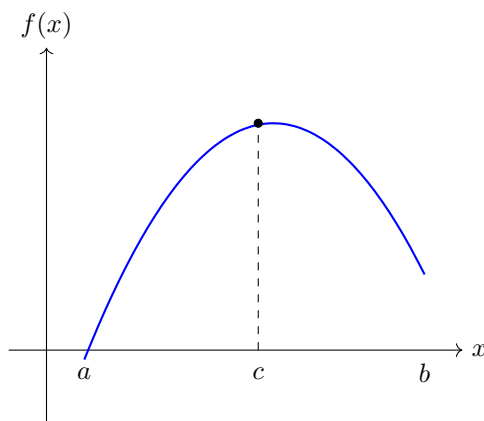
Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$, differentiable on (a, b) , and suppose $f(a) = f(b)$. Then, there exists $c \in (a, b)$ such that $f'(c) = 0$.

Proof:

By the Extreme Value Theorem, f attains a maximum or minimum at some point $c \in [a, b]$.

If $c \in (a, b)$, then by Fermat's theorem, $f'(c) = 0$. If the maximum or minimum occurs at a or b , since $f(a) = f(b)$, f must be constant, so $f'(x) = 0$ everywhere on (a, b) , and in particular for some $c \in (a, b)$.

□◻◻



50.4 Mean Value Theorem

Let f be continuous on $[a, b]$ and differentiable on (a, b) . Then there exists $c \in (a, b)$ such that:

$$f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

Proof:

Define the auxiliary function:

$$g(x) = f(x) - \left(\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a} \right) (x - a)$$

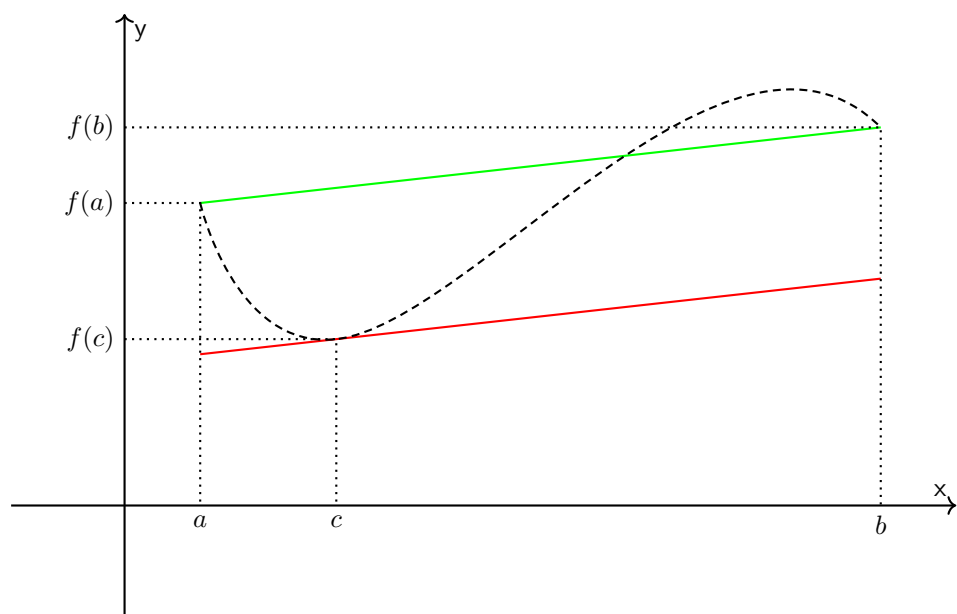
Then $g(a) = f(a)$, $g(b) = f(b) - m(b - a) = f(a) \Rightarrow g(a) = g(b)$

Apply Rolle's theorem to $g(x)$: Since $g(a) = g(b)$, and g is continuous and differentiable, there exists $c \in (a, b)$ such that $g'(c) = 0$

Then:

$$g'(x) = f'(x) - \left(\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a} \right) \Rightarrow f'(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$

□◻◻



51 Coordinate Systems

Coordinate systems provide different ways of describing points in space, adapted to the geometry of the problem. Below are the most common systems used in multi-variable calculus.

51.1 Cartesian Coordinates

The *Cartesian coordinate system* uses mutually orthogonal axes. A point in \mathbb{R}^2 is given by:

$$(x, y) \quad \text{and in } \mathbb{R}^3 : \quad (x, y, z)$$

This is the most natural system for rectangular domains and is the basis for most definitions in vector calculus. The coordinate axes are orthogonal and equidistant.

51.2 Polar Coordinates

In polar coordinates, a point $(x, y) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ is described by:

$$r \geq 0 \text{ (radius from origin), } \quad \varphi \in [0, 2\pi) \text{ (angle from x-axis)}$$

Transformations:

$$x = r \cos \varphi, \quad y = r \sin \varphi$$

This comes from our right triangle with $r = 1$ where

$$\cos \varphi = \frac{x}{r} \quad \sin \varphi = \frac{y}{r}$$

Inverse:

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \quad \varphi = \arctan\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$$

This system is useful for circular or radial symmetry. The Jacobian determinant is:

$$|J| = r$$

51.3 Cylindrical Coordinates

Cylindrical coordinates extend polar coordinates by adding a height z component:

$$(r, \varphi, z) \quad \text{where } r \geq 0, \quad \varphi \in [0, 2\pi), \quad z \in \mathbb{R}$$

Transformations:

$$x = r \cos \varphi, \quad y = r \sin \varphi, \quad z = z$$

Inverse:

$$r = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}, \quad \varphi = \arctan\left(\frac{y}{x}\right), \quad z = z$$

This coordinate system is ideal for objects with rotational symmetry about the z -axis. The Jacobian determinant is:

$$|J| = r$$

51.4 Spherical Coordinates

In spherical coordinates, a point $(x, y, z) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ is represented using:

$$\rho \geq 0 \text{ (radial distance), } \theta \in [0, \pi] \text{ (inclination), } \varphi \in [0, 2\pi) \text{ (azimuth)}$$

Transformations:

$$x = \rho \sin \theta \cos \varphi, \quad y = \rho \sin \theta \sin \varphi, \quad z = \rho \cos \theta$$

Inverse:

$$\rho = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}, \quad \theta = \arccos\left(\frac{z}{\rho}\right), \quad \varphi = \arctan\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$$

Spherical coordinates are useful for spherical symmetry (e.g., in gravitational or electric fields). The Jacobian determinant is:

$$|J| = \rho^2 \sin \theta$$

Each coordinate system is tailored to specific geometries and greatly simplifies integrals when used appropriately. Coordinate transformations require careful application of the Jacobian determinant to account for stretching or distortion of space.

52 Parameterized Curves

52.1 Definition

A *parameterized curve* is a mathematical object where each point on the curve is described as a function of one or more parameters, typically denoted by t . Formally, a parameterized curve in \mathbb{R}^n is a continuous function:

$$\mathbf{r}(t) = (x(t), y(t), z(t), \dots)$$

Where t ranges over some interval $I \subseteq \mathbb{R}$, and each component function (e.g., $x(t)$, $y(t)$) is real-valued.

52.2 Purpose

The purpose of parameterizing a curve is to provide a flexible and detailed way of describing geometric objects, particularly when they cannot be easily expressed as a simple function $y = f(x)$. Parameterizations allow us to:

- Describe curves that loop, cross themselves, or have vertical segments.
- Compute quantities like arc length, tangent vectors, and curvature.
- Easily model motion along a curve, where t can represent time.

52.3 How to Parameterize a Function

To parameterize a curve or a function:

1. Introduce a new parameter t , often representing time or distance along the curve.
2. Express the coordinates (x, y) (or (x, y, z)) as functions of t .
3. Ensure that as t varies over a chosen interval, the set of points $(x(t), y(t))$ traces the desired curve.

Sometimes, parameterizations are natural (e.g., circles using trigonometric functions), while in other cases, one must carefully design a suitable parameterization based on the curve's properties.

Example:

Parameterizing a Circle:

Consider the unit circle defined by the equation:

$$x^2 + y^2 = 1$$

A natural parameterization uses the trigonometric functions sine and cosine:

$$x(t) = \cos(t), \quad y(t) = \sin(t)$$

For $t \in [0, 2\pi]$.

As t varies from 0 to 2π , the point $(x(t), y(t))$ traces out the entire circle exactly once.

52.4 Arclength and t Parameter

Recall that the arclength of a curve in 3 dimensions is

$$\int_a^b \sqrt{f'(t)^2 + g'(t)^2 + h'(t)^2} dt,$$

which is norm of our tangent vector.

$$\int_a^b \sqrt{|\vec{v}(t)|} dt$$

52.4.1 Arclength Parameter

This is given by

$$s(t) = \int_a^t \sqrt{|\vec{r}'(t)|} dt,$$

where τ is the length parameter.

This parameter is intrinsic to the curve, and represents one choice because there only one valid interpretation of the length. The downside is that this is hard to compute.

52.4.2 The t Parameter

For the t parameter, we can say that this is intrinsic to the object along the curve, it can be interpreted in multiple ways therefore, many choices and is easy to compute.

53 Multi-variable Functions

53.1 Open Sets

Let $\|\cdot\|$ be a norm on \mathbb{R}^n . The ε -neighborhood of a point $\vec{x}_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is defined as:

$$U_\varepsilon(\vec{x}_0) := \{\vec{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n \mid \|\vec{x} - \vec{x}_0\| < \varepsilon\}$$

A point $\vec{x}_0 \in D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is called an *interior point* of D if there exists $\varepsilon > 0$ such that $U_\varepsilon(\vec{x}_0) \subseteq D$. A set D is called *open* if all its points are interior points.

Although ε -neighborhoods depend on the chosen norm, due to the equivalence of norms in \mathbb{R}^n , openness is norm-independent.

53.2 Closed Sets

Let $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ and $\|\cdot\|$ a norm. A point \vec{x}_0 is called an *accumulation point* (or limit point) of D if for every $\varepsilon > 0$, the neighborhood $U_\varepsilon(\vec{x}_0)$ contains a point $\vec{x} \neq \vec{x}_0$ such that $\vec{x} \in D$.

A set $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is called *closed* if it contains all its accumulation points.

53.3 Boundedness and Order

A set $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is called *bounded* if there exists a real number $M > 0$ such that:

$$\|\vec{x}\| < M \quad \text{for all } \vec{x} \in D$$

If no such bound M exists, the set is called *unbounded*.

53.4 Sequences

Let $(\vec{x}_n) \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ be a sequence of vectors. We say that $\vec{x}_n \rightarrow \vec{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ if for every $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that:

$$\|\vec{x}_n - \vec{x}\| < \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } n > n_0$$

The sequence (\vec{x}_n) is called *convergent* if such \vec{x} exists.

The sequence (\vec{x}_n) is called a *Cauchy sequence* if for every $\varepsilon > 0$, there exists $n_0 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that:

$$\|\vec{x}_n - \vec{x}_m\| < \varepsilon \quad \text{for all } n, m > n_0$$

Example I:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \vec{X}_n = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{n} \\ 1 + \frac{1}{n^2} \\ \frac{\sin n}{n} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Example II:

Given is

$$\vec{X}_n = \begin{pmatrix} 5 - \frac{10}{n} \\ \frac{1}{n} \end{pmatrix}$$

we want to find n_0 for $\varepsilon = 0, 1$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \vec{X}_n = \begin{pmatrix} 5 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \vec{X}_0$$

Now use the definition for convergence

$$\|\vec{X}_n - \vec{X}_0\| < \varepsilon$$

$$\left\| \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{10}{n} \\ \frac{1}{n} \end{pmatrix} \right\|$$

$$\frac{\sqrt{101}}{n} < 0,1$$

$$n > 0,1\sqrt{101} = 100,5$$

Therefore, $n_0 = 101$.

53.5 Accumulation Point

A vector $\vec{x}_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is called an *accumulation point* of a set $D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ if for every $\varepsilon > 0$, the neighborhood $U_\varepsilon(\vec{x}_0)$ contains a point $\vec{x} \in D \setminus \{\vec{x}_0\}$.

In the context of sequences, an accumulation point of a sequence (\vec{x}_n) is a point $\vec{x} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ for which there exists a subsequence (\vec{x}_{n_k}) such that $\vec{x}_{n_k} \rightarrow \vec{x}$.

53.6 Bolzano–Weierstraß Theorem

Every infinite, bounded sequence in \mathbb{R}^n has at least one accumulation point.

- Every bounded infinite sequence has at least one convergent subsequence.
- A bounded sequence is *convergent* if and only if it has exactly one accumulation point.
- Every Cauchy sequence in \mathbb{R}^n is convergent (since \mathbb{R}^n is complete).

53.7 Limits

A function $f : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ has the limit $g \in \mathbb{R}$ at a point $\vec{X}_0 \in U$ if:

$$\lim_{\vec{X} \rightarrow \vec{X}_0} f(\vec{X}) = g$$

means that for every sequence $(\vec{X}_n) \subset U$ converging to \vec{X}_0 , we have:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(\vec{X}_n) = g$$

The convergence must hold along all possible paths to the point \vec{X}_0 , making the multi-variable limit path-independent and unique (if it exists).

Example:

$$\vec{X}_n = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{n} \\ 1 + \frac{1}{n^2} \\ \frac{\sin(n)}{n} \end{pmatrix}$$

The limit towards infinity is then

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{n} \\ 1 + \frac{1}{n^2} \\ \frac{\sin(n)}{n} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

53.8 Partial Functions

For a function $f : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, a *partial function* is a restriction of f to a variable by fixing all others.

Examples in \mathbb{R}^3 :

$$f(x_1, x_2, x_3) = 5x_1 + x_2x_3$$

Fixing values:

$$x_2 = 3, \quad x_3 = 5 \Rightarrow f_1(x_1) = 5x_1 + 15$$

$$x_1 = 2, \quad x_3 = 5 \Rightarrow f_2(x_2) = 10 + 5x_2x_1 = 2, \quad x_2 = 3 \Rightarrow f_3(x_3) = 10 + 3x_3$$

Each f_i reduces the multi-variable function to a single-variable slice (cross-section), allowing analysis along coordinate axes.

53.9 Continuity

Let $f : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, and $\vec{X}_0 \in U$. The function f is said to be *continuous at \vec{X}_0* if:

$$\lim_{\vec{X} \rightarrow \vec{X}_0} f(\vec{X}) = f(\vec{X}_0)$$

This means that for any sequence $(\vec{X}_n) \rightarrow \vec{X}_0$, we have:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} f(\vec{X}_n) = f(\vec{X}_0)$$

To check if a multi-variable function is continuous it is enough to prove that it is continuous towards the origin

$$\begin{aligned} \lim_{\vec{X} \rightarrow \vec{X}_0} f(\vec{X}) &= f(\vec{X}_0) \\ \iff \lim_{\vec{X} \rightarrow \vec{X}_0} (f(\vec{X}) - f(\vec{X}_0)) &= 0 \\ \iff \lim_{\vec{h} \rightarrow 0} (f(\vec{X}_0 + \vec{h}) - f(\vec{X}_0)) &= 0 \\ \iff \lim_{\vec{h} \rightarrow 0} g(\vec{h}) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Example:

Given is $\frac{x^3 + 2yx^2 + y^2x + 2y^3}{x + 2y}$ for $(x, y) \neq (0, 0)$ and 0 for $(0, 0)$.

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x^3 + 2yx^2 + y^2x + 2y^3}{x + 2y} &= \frac{x^2(x + 2y) + y(x + 2y)}{x + 2y} \\ &= \frac{(x + 2y)(x^2 + y^2)}{x + 2y} \\ &= x^2 + y^2 \end{aligned}$$

Now by taking the limit we see that

$$\lim_{(x,y) \rightarrow (0,0)} x^2 + y^2 = 0$$

Thus, the function is continuous.

53.9.1 Continuity in Polar Coordinates for 2D

Let $\vec{X} = (x, y)$ be written in polar coordinates:

$$x = r \cos \varphi, \quad y = r \sin \varphi$$

Then:

$$\vec{X}_n \rightarrow (0, 0) \iff r_n \rightarrow 0$$

This alternative approach helps evaluate limits and continuity at the origin using radial convergence.

Example:

Given is

$$f(xy) = \begin{cases} \frac{xy}{x^2+y^2} & \text{for } (x, y) \neq (0, 0) \\ 0 & \text{else} \end{cases}$$

Let $x = r \cos(\theta)$ and $y = r \sin(\theta)$

$$\begin{aligned} & \lim_{r \rightarrow 0} \frac{r \cos(\theta) r \sin(\theta)}{r^2 \cos^2(\theta) + r^2 \sin^2(\theta)} \\ &= \lim_{r \rightarrow 0} \frac{r^2 \cos(\theta) \sin(\theta)}{r^2 (\cos^2(\theta) + \sin^2(\theta))} \\ &= \lim_{r \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos(\theta) \sin(\theta)}{1} \end{aligned}$$

Because of the dependence on θ which can give us for $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$ $\frac{1}{2}$ this functions is not continuous.

53.9.2 Substitution

When dealing with multi-variable functions we can sometimes use *substitution* for converting our function into a single variable function to use *L'Hospital's Rule*.

Example:

Given is $\frac{e^{x^2+y^2}-1}{x^2+y^2}$.

See, that we have repeated terms we can substitute. $p^2 = x^2 + y^2$.

$$\frac{e^{p^2} - 1}{p^2}$$

Now differentiate

$$\frac{2pe^{p^2}}{2p} = e^{p^2}$$

Now take the limit

$$\lim_{p \rightarrow 0} e^{p^2} = 1$$

53.10 Uniform and Lipschitz Continuity

53.10.1 Uniform Continuity:

A function $f : D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is called *uniformly continuous* on D if:

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \text{ such that } \|\vec{X} - \vec{X}_0\| < \delta \Rightarrow |f(\vec{X}) - f(\vec{X}_0)| < \varepsilon$$

The key feature is that δ depends only on ε , not on the points \vec{X}, \vec{X}_0 themselves. If f is continuous on a compact set (closed and bounded), then f is uniformly continuous.

53.10.2 Lipschitz Continuity:

A function $f : D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is *Lipschitz continuous* if there exists a constant $L > 0$ such that:

$$|f(\vec{X}) - f(\vec{Y})| \leq L \|\vec{X} - \vec{Y}\| \quad \text{for all } \vec{X}, \vec{Y} \in D$$

If $L < 1$, then f is called a *contraction*.

53.11 Epsilon–Delta Criterion

Let $f : D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, and $\vec{X}_0 \in D$. The function f is continuous at \vec{X}_0 if:

$$\forall \varepsilon > 0 \exists \delta > 0 \text{ such that } \|\vec{X} - \vec{X}_0\| < \delta \Rightarrow |f(\vec{X}) - f(\vec{X}_0)| < \varepsilon$$

This generalizes the familiar epsilon-delta criterion from single-variable calculus to multi-variable settings using norms.

53.12 Fixpoints

A point $\vec{X}_0 \in D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is called a *fix-point* of a function $\vec{\varphi} : D \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ if:

$$\vec{\varphi}(\vec{X}_0) = \vec{X}_0$$

That is, applying the function does not change the point — it maps to itself.

53.13 Banach Fixed Point Theorem

Let $\vec{\varphi} : D \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ be a *contraction mapping*, i.e., there exists a constant $L < 1$ such that:

$$\|\vec{\varphi}(\vec{X}) - \vec{\varphi}(\vec{Y})\| \leq L \|\vec{X} - \vec{Y}\| \quad \text{for all } \vec{X}, \vec{Y} \in D$$

Then:

- There exists a unique fix-point $\vec{X}^* \in D$ such that $\vec{\varphi}(\vec{X}^*) = \vec{X}^*$
- Iteratively defined sequences $\vec{X}_{n+1} = \vec{\varphi}(\vec{X}_n)$ converge to the fix-point

This result is fundamental in nonlinear analysis and iterative numerical methods.

53.14 Vector fields

A *vector field* is a function $\vec{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$. Also, just a function with vectors as inputs and outputs.

$$\vec{f}(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = A_1(x_1, \dots, x_n)\vec{e}_1 + \dots + A_n(x_1, \dots, x_n)\vec{e}_n$$

We call a vector field *continuous/differentiable* if all functions

$$A_1, A_2, \dots, A_n$$

are continuous/differentiable.

As a side note, the *gradient* of a multi-variable function is a vector field.

54 Multi-variable Differentiation

54.1 Partial Derivatives

Let $f : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ and $\vec{X}_0 = (x_1^{(0)}, \dots, x_n^{(0)}) \in U$. Then f is *partially differentiable with respect to x_i* at \vec{X}_0 if the limit:

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(\vec{X}_0) := \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x_1^{(0)}, \dots, x_i^{(0)} + h, \dots, x_n^{(0)}) - f(\vec{X}_0)}{h}$$

exists. This derivative measures the rate of change of f in the direction of the x_i -axis while keeping all other variables fixed.

A function is (*partially*) *differentiable* at \vec{X}_0 if all partial derivatives $\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(\vec{X}_0)$ exist.

54.2 Differentiability

We call a function f differentiable at (x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) if and only if:

$$f(x_1 + \Delta x_1, x_2 + \Delta x_2, \dots, x_n + \Delta x_n) - f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) =$$

$$\frac{\partial f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)}{\partial x_1} \Delta x_1 + \frac{\partial f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)}{\partial x_2} \Delta x_2 + \dots + E_1(\Delta x_1) + E_2(\Delta x_2) + \dots + E_n(\Delta x_n)$$

where $\lim_{\Delta x_1 \rightarrow 0} \frac{E_1(\Delta x_1)}{\Delta x_1} = \lim_{\Delta x_2 \rightarrow 0} \frac{E_2(\Delta x_2)}{\Delta x_2} = \dots = 0$

54.3 The Gradient

Let $f : U \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable at $\vec{X}_0 = (x_1^{(0)}, \dots, x_n^{(0)})$. The *gradient* of f at \vec{X}_0 is:

$$\nabla f(\vec{X}_0) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}(\vec{X}_0) \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n}(\vec{X}_0) \end{pmatrix}$$

54.3.1 Origin of the formula

Suppose along the curve $r(t) = x_1(t)\hat{v}_1 + x_2(t)\hat{v}_2 + \dots + x_n(t)\hat{v}_n$ that $f(x_1(t), \dots, x_n(t)) = C$

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial t} f(x_1(t), \dots, x_n(t)) = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} C$$

$$\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1} \frac{dx_1}{dt} + \dots + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n} \frac{dx_n}{dt} = 0$$

$$\left\langle \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1} \hat{v}_1 + \dots + \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n} \hat{v}_n \right), \left(\frac{dx_1}{dt} \hat{v}_1 + \dots + \frac{dx_n}{dt} \hat{v}_n \right) \right\rangle = 0$$

From the formula we see that: ∇f is the normal and $\frac{d\vec{r}}{dt}$ the tangent vector of the curve

ΩΕΘ

54.3.2 Gradient Operations:

- $\nabla(f + g) = \nabla f + \nabla g$
- $\nabla(\lambda f) = \lambda \nabla f$ for $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$
- $\nabla(fg) = f \nabla g + g \nabla f$

The $\frac{\text{grad } f}{\|\text{grad } f\|}$ points in the direction of the steepest increase of f and $-\frac{\text{grad } f}{\|\text{grad } f\|}$ in the lowest increase.

54.4 The Tangent Plane

The tangent plane to a differentiable surface $z = f(x, y)$ at the point (x_0, y_0) is the plane that best approximates the surface near that point. It is given by the linearization of f :

$$T(x, y) = f(x_0, y_0) + f_x(x_0, y_0)(x - x_0) + f_y(x_0, y_0)(y - y_0)$$

This plane touches the graph of the function at a single point and shares its slope in both x - and y -directions.

It can also be written in the parameterized form:

$$T(x, y) = \begin{pmatrix} x_0 \\ y_0 \\ z_0 \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ f_x(x_0, y_0) \end{pmatrix} + \mu \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ f_y(x_0, y_0) \end{pmatrix}$$

54.4.1 Generalization

$$\begin{aligned} T(\vec{X}) &= f(\vec{x}_0) + \sum_{i=1}^n f_{x_i}(\vec{x}_0)(x_i - x_i^0) \\ &= f(\vec{x}_0) + \langle \nabla f, (\vec{x} - \vec{x}_0) \rangle \end{aligned}$$

Example: $f(x, y) = 4x^2y + xy^2 + 1$

Compute partial derivatives:

$$f_x(x, y) = 8xy + y^2, \quad f_y(x, y) = 4x^2 + 2xy$$

At the point $(1, 1)$:

$$f(1, 1) = 4(1)^2(1) + 1(1)^2 + 1 = 6, \quad f_x(1, 1) = 8(1)(1) + 1 = 9, \quad f_y(1, 1) = 4(1)^2 + 2(1)(1) = 6$$

Thus, the tangent plane is:

$$T(x, y) = 6 + 9(x - 1) + 6(y - 1) \Rightarrow T(x, y) = 9x + 6y - 9$$

54.5 The Directional Derivative

Let $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable at \vec{x}_0 , and let $\vec{v} \in \mathbb{R}^n$ be a direction vector with $\|\vec{v}\| = 1$. The *directional derivative* of f at \vec{x}_0 in the direction \vec{v} is defined as:

$$D_{\vec{v}}f(\vec{x}_0) := \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(\vec{x}_0 + h\vec{v}) - f(\vec{x}_0)}{h}$$

Formula:

$$D_{\vec{v}}f(\vec{x}_0) = \langle \nabla f(\vec{x}_0), \vec{v} \rangle$$

Schwarz Inequality (Cauchy-Schwarz):

$$|\langle \vec{a}, \vec{b} \rangle| \leq \|\vec{a}\| \cdot \|\vec{b}\|$$

This implies:

$$|D_{\vec{v}}f(\vec{x}_0)| \leq \|\nabla f(\vec{x}_0)\|$$

54.5.1 Derivation of the Directional Derivative Formula

Let $f(x, y)$ be differentiable, and let $\vec{v} = (e_1, e_2)$ be a direction vector. We aim to derive the formula for the directional derivative $D_{\vec{v}}f(x_0, y_0)$.

We begin by considering the tangent plane to the surface $z = f(x, y)$ at the point $(x_0, y_0, f(x_0, y_0))$. This plane is spanned by the vectors:

$$\vec{u}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ f_x(x_0, y_0) \end{pmatrix}, \quad \vec{u}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ f_y(x_0, y_0) \end{pmatrix}$$

These correspond to directional derivatives along the x - and y -axes, respectively.

Now consider the direction vector $\vec{v} = (e_1, e_2)$. Lift it into 3D space (onto the tangent plane) as:

$$\vec{u}_3 = \begin{pmatrix} e_1 \\ e_2 \\ D_{\vec{v}}f \end{pmatrix}$$

Since all three vectors lie in the same plane, the determinant of the matrix formed by these vectors as columns must vanish:

$$\det(\vec{u}_1, \vec{u}_2, \vec{u}_3) = 0$$

Explicitly:

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & e_1 \\ 0 & 1 & e_2 \\ f_x(x_0, y_0) & f_y(x_0, y_0) & D_{\vec{v}}f \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

Expanding the determinant gives:

$$f_x(x_0, y_0) \cdot e_2 - f_y(x_0, y_0) \cdot e_1 + D_{\vec{v}}f = 0$$

Solving for $D_{\vec{v}}f$, we obtain:

$$D_{\vec{v}}f = f_x(x_0, y_0) \cdot e_1 + f_y(x_0, y_0) \cdot e_2$$

Vector notation:

$$D_{\vec{v}}f = \langle \nabla f(x_0, y_0), \vec{v} \rangle$$

This is the desired result: the directional derivative equals the dot product of the gradient of f and the direction vector \vec{v} .

54.6 The Total Differential

If $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is differentiable at \vec{x}_0 , then the *total differential* of f at \vec{x}_0 is the linear approximation:

$$df = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_i}(\vec{x}_0) dx_i = \langle \nabla f(\vec{x}_0), d\vec{x} \rangle$$

This expresses how small changes in the input variables propagate into changes in the function value.

54.7 Absolute and Relative Error

Given an approximate value \tilde{x} for the exact value x :

- *Absolute error:* $\Delta z_{\max} \leq |f_{x_1}| |\Delta x_1| + \cdots + |f_{x_n}| |\Delta x_n|$
- *Relative error:* $\varepsilon = \frac{\Delta z_{\max}}{z}$ with dependence on the error of the inputs $\frac{\Delta x}{x}$ etc.

In multi-variable contexts, similar formulas apply using vector norms.

Absolute Error Example

We consider the function:

$$z = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

with the measured values:

$$x = 4 \text{ cm}, \quad y = 3 \text{ cm}$$

Both x and y are measured with a precision of $\Delta x = \Delta y = 0,1 \text{ cm}$. The side length calculated is $z = 5 \text{ cm}$. We now determine the maximum possible absolute error in z .

Step 1: Partial derivatives of z :

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}, \quad \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} = \frac{y}{\sqrt{x^2 + y^2}}$$

Step 2: Evaluate at the given point:

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}(4, 3) = \frac{4}{5}, \quad \frac{\partial z}{\partial y}(4, 3) = \frac{3}{5}$$

Step 3: Use the absolute error formula:

$$\Delta z \leq \left| \frac{\partial z}{\partial x} \right| \cdot \Delta x + \left| \frac{\partial z}{\partial y} \right| \cdot \Delta y$$

$$\Delta z \leq \frac{4}{5} \cdot 0,1 + \frac{3}{5} \cdot 0,1 = \frac{7}{5} \cdot 0,1 = 0,14 \text{ cm}$$

Conclusion:

The result for z is accurate to within $\boxed{0,14 \text{ cm}}$.

54.8 The Chain Rule

Let $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable, and suppose $\vec{x} = \vec{x}(t) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ is a differentiable path. Then:

$$\frac{d}{dt} f(\vec{x}(t)) = \langle \nabla f(\vec{x}(t)), \vec{x}'(t) \rangle$$

This is the chain rule in vector form.

Or to be more explicit, the small change in t makes a change in x_1, x_2, \dots and the addition of all this changes sum up to the total change in the original function.

$$\frac{dz}{dt} = \frac{dz}{dx_1} \frac{dx_1}{dt} + \dots + \frac{dz}{dx_n} \frac{dx_n}{dt}$$

Relative Error Example

The relative error of a function $z = f(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ is defined by:

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\Delta z_{\max}}{z}$$

Assuming z depends on variables with known relative measurement errors, and the function is differentiable, we estimate:

$$\varepsilon = \frac{|\partial f / \partial x_1| \cdot \Delta x_1 + \dots + |\partial f / \partial x_n| \cdot \Delta x_n}{f(x_1, \dots, x_n)}$$

or more directly using relative errors:

$$\varepsilon \approx \left| \frac{\Delta x_1}{x_1} \right| + \dots + \left| \frac{\Delta x_n}{x_n} \right|$$

Example: Volume of a Cuboid

Let:

$$z = f(a, b, c) = a \cdot b \cdot c$$

Assume the side lengths $a = b = c$ are measured with a uniform relative error $\varepsilon_{\text{in}} = \frac{\Delta a}{a} = \frac{\Delta b}{b} = \frac{\Delta c}{c} = \varepsilon$

Then the partial derivatives are:

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial a} = bc, \quad \frac{\partial z}{\partial b} = ac, \quad \frac{\partial z}{\partial c} = ab$$

Applying the relative error formula:

$$\frac{\Delta z_{\text{max}}}{z} \leq \frac{bc \cdot \Delta a + ac \cdot \Delta b + ab \cdot \Delta c}{abc} = \frac{\Delta a}{a} + \frac{\Delta b}{b} + \frac{\Delta c}{c} = 3\varepsilon$$

Target accuracy:

If the final result z must be accurate within $\varepsilon_z = 0,01$ (i.e., 1), then we must satisfy:

$$3\varepsilon \leq 0,01 \Rightarrow \varepsilon \leq \frac{0,01}{3} = \boxed{0,0033} \quad (\text{or } 0,33\%)$$

Conclusion:

Each input measurement must be made with a maximum relative error of $\boxed{0,33\%}$ to ensure the output $z = abc$ is accurate to within 1 percent.

54.8.1 Implicit Differentiation

If a function $F(x, y) = 0$ defines y implicitly as a function of x , and F is differentiable, then:

$$\frac{dz}{dx} = -\frac{F_x}{F_z}$$

This generalizes to higher dimensions using the total differential and the implicit function theorem.

Example:

Given is $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$ differentiate with respect to x . See z or the target function as function in terms of the other variables. In this case $z(x, y)$.

$$\frac{d}{dx} x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 1 = 0$$

$$2x + 2z \frac{dz}{dx} = 0$$

$$\frac{dz}{dx} = -\frac{x}{z}$$

54.9 Divergence and Curl (Rotation)

Let $\vec{F} = (F_1, F_2, F_3) : \mathbb{R}^3 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^3$ be a vector field.

54.9.1 Divergence:

$$\text{div } \vec{F} = \langle \nabla, \vec{F} \rangle = \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_1} + \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_2} + \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial x_3}$$

54.9.2 Curl:

$$\operatorname{rot} \vec{F} = \nabla \times \vec{F} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial x_2} - \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_3} \\ \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_3} - \frac{\partial F_3}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial F_2}{\partial x_1} - \frac{\partial F_1}{\partial x_2} \end{pmatrix}$$

These describe how the field spreads or rotates around a point.

Where vector field $\operatorname{div} \vec{f} > 0$ then that region is called a source and where $\operatorname{rot} \vec{f} = 0$ is called a whirlpool

54.10 Schwarz's Theorem (Clairaut's Theorem)

Let $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be twice continuously differentiable. Then for any $i \neq j$, the mixed partial derivatives satisfy:

$$\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} = \frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_j \partial x_i}$$

That is, the order of partial differentiation does not matter if all second derivatives are continuous.

54.11 The Jacobian

Let $\vec{f} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m$, where

$$\vec{f}(\vec{x}) = \begin{pmatrix} f_1(x_1, \dots, x_n) \\ \vdots \\ f_m(x_1, \dots, x_n) \end{pmatrix}$$

The *Jacobian matrix* of \vec{f} is the $m \times n$ matrix:

$$J_{\vec{f}}(\vec{x}) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_1} & \dots & \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_n} \end{pmatrix}$$

In the case $n = m$, the *Jacobian determinant* $\det J_{\vec{f}}(\vec{x})$ describes local invertibility and orientation.

54.12 Taylor's Theorem

Let $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be k -times continuously differentiable at \vec{x}_0 . Then the Taylor polynomial of degree 2 around \vec{x}_0 is:

$$f(\vec{x}) \approx f(\vec{x}_0) + \langle \nabla f(\vec{x}_0), \vec{x} - \vec{x}_0 \rangle + \frac{1}{2}(\vec{x} - \vec{x}_0)^T H_f(\vec{x}_0)(\vec{x} - \vec{x}_0) + \dots,$$

where $H_f(\vec{x}_0)$ is the *Hessian matrix* of second partial derivatives.

Example:

Let $f(x, y) = e^y \sin(x + 2y)$. We expand around the point $(a, b) = (0, 0)$.

First, compute the necessary derivatives at $(0, 0)$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(0, 0) &= \sin(0) = 0 \\ f_x &= e^y \cos(x + 2y) \Rightarrow f_x(0, 0) = 1 \\ f_y &= 2ye^y \cos(x + 2y) + e^y \sin(x + 2y) \Rightarrow f_y(0, 0) = 0 + 2 = 2 \\ f_{xx} &= -e^y \sin(x + 2y) \Rightarrow f_{xx}(0, 0) = 0 \\ f_{xy} &= f_{yx} = 2e^y \sin(x + 2y) + e^y \cos(x + 2y) \Rightarrow f_{xy}(0, 0) = 3 \\ f_{yy} &= -3e^y \sin(x + 2y) + 4e^y \cos(x + 2y) \Rightarrow f_{yy}(0, 0) = 0 + 4 = 4 \end{aligned}$$

Now, the second order Taylor polynomial at $(0, 0)$ is:

$$\begin{aligned}
f(x, y) &\approx 0 + 1 \cdot x + 2 \cdot y \\
&\quad + \frac{1}{2} \cdot 0 \cdot x^2 + 3 \cdot xy + \frac{1}{2} \cdot 4 \cdot y^2 \\
&= x + 2y + 3xy + 2y^2
\end{aligned}$$

54.13 Relative Extrema

To determine local extrema for $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, follow this procedure:

Step 1: Find critical points by solving:

$$\nabla f(\vec{x}) = 0$$

Step 2: Compute the Hessian matrix:

$$H_f(\vec{x}) = \left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} \right)$$

Step 3: Analyze the Hessian at critical points:

- If H_f is positive definite \Rightarrow local minimum
- If H_f is negative definite \Rightarrow local maximum
- If H_f has mixed signs (indefinite) \Rightarrow saddle point
- If $f_{xx}(x_0, y_0) > 0, d > 0 \Rightarrow$ positive definite
- If $f_{xx}(x_0, y_0) < 0, d > 0 \Rightarrow$ negative definite
- If $d < 0 \Rightarrow$ saddle point indefinite
- If $d = 0 \Rightarrow$ Next derivative decides

Example: $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$

$$\nabla f = \begin{pmatrix} 2x \\ 2y \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \text{Critical point at } (0, 0)$$

$$H_f = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \text{positive definite} \Rightarrow (0, 0) \text{ is a local minimum}$$

54.14 Finding Candidate Points for Zeros While Seeking Relative Extrema

To find local minima or maxima of a function $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$, we first identify *critical points*, which are the candidates for relative extrema. These are the points where the gradient of f vanishes or does not exist.

Step 1: Compute the Gradient

The gradient of f , denoted ∇f , collects all the first partial derivatives:

$$\nabla f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1} \\ \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n} \end{pmatrix}$$

Step 2: Solve the System $\nabla f = 0$

Find all points $\vec{x}_0 \in \mathbb{R}^n$ such that:

$$\nabla f(\vec{x}_0) = \vec{0}$$

This is a nonlinear system of n equations in n variables. The solutions \vec{x}_0 are the *candidate points for extrema*, and also referred to as the **stationary points** or *critical points* of the function.

You use the following techniques to find the points:

- Factorization
- Addition of rows
- Substitution

There are more but which one to use depends on the kind problem.

Step 3: Analyze the Nature of the Critical Points

Once all critical points \vec{x}_0 satisfying $\nabla f(\vec{x}_0) = 0$ are found, analyze each using the *second derivative test* involving the Hessian matrix H_f :

$$H_f(\vec{x}) = \left(\frac{\partial^2 f}{\partial x_i \partial x_j} \right)$$

Evaluate H_f at each critical point and use the eigenvalues or definiteness to classify:

- If $f_{xx}(x_0, y_0) > 0$ and $D > 0$, then f has a *local minimum* at (x_0, y_0) .
- If $f_{xx}(x_0, y_0) < 0$ and $D > 0$, then f has a *local maximum* at (x_0, y_0) .
- If $D < 0$, then (x_0, y_0) is a *saddle point*.
- If $D = 0$, the *second derivative test is inconclusive*; higher-order derivatives must be considered.

54.14.1 Note: Non-differentiable Points

If the function f is not differentiable at some point \vec{x}_0 , but defined there, this point may also be a candidate for extremum and should be examined separately using limit-based analysis or directional behavior.

54.15 Lagrange Multipliers

Let $f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be the function to optimize, subject to the constraint $g(\vec{x}) = 0$, where $g : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$.

If we look at the constraint intersection with the original function we are going to notice that along the intersection there are maxima and minima with their respective tangent lines and gradients that are normal to them. We also are going to see that both the gradient of f and the gradient of g are just scalar version of each other so:

This leads to the *Lagrange system*:

$$\begin{cases} \nabla f(\vec{x}) = \lambda \nabla g(\vec{x}) \\ g(\vec{x}) = 0 \end{cases}$$

For more conditions we can use g_1, \dots, g_n and $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n$

$$\begin{cases} \nabla f(\vec{x}) = \lambda_1 \nabla g_1(\vec{x}) + \dots + \lambda_n \nabla g_n(\vec{x}) \\ g_1(\vec{x}) = 0 \\ \vdots \\ g_n(\vec{x}) = 0 \end{cases}$$

We can also compact these equations in the *Lagrangian*

$$\mathcal{L}(x, y, \dots, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) = f(x, y, \dots) + \lambda_1 g_1(x, y, \dots) + \dots + \lambda_n g_n(x, y, \dots)$$

54.15.1 Determinant method

Sometimes it is a good way to solve a problem of this topic is to:

1. Build the *Lagrangian*
2. $\nabla L = 0$ and maybe compute the determinant to generate another equation to solve
3. Get rid of λ via factorization, substitution, addition of rows, etc.
4. Solve the system without λ

54.15.2 The Bordered Hessian

The Bordered Hessian matrix is:

$$H_B = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & (\nabla g(x_1, \dots, x_n))^T \\ \nabla g(x_1, \dots, x_n) & \nabla^2 \mathcal{L}(x, \dots, x_n, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) \end{bmatrix}$$

Where:

- $\nabla g(x_1, \dots, x_n)$ is the $m \times n$ Jacobian matrix of the constraints.
- $\nabla^2 \mathcal{L}(x, \dots, x_n, \lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$ is the $n \times n$ Hessian of the Lagrangian with respect to x .

Or basically a Hessian of the Lagrangian starting with λ_{11} .

Example:

Find the point on the circle $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ that is the closest to the point $(3, 4)$.

The function $f(x, y)$ is this case the euclidean norm:

$$f(x, y) = \sqrt{(x-3)^2 + (y-4)^2}$$

subject to the constraint:

$$g(x, y) = x^2 + y^2 - 4 = 0$$

The gradient of the constraint is:

$$\nabla g = \begin{pmatrix} 2x \\ 2y \end{pmatrix}$$

Since $\nabla g \neq 0$, the rank condition is fulfilled, and no further critical points need to be analyzed.

Step 1: Build the Lagrangian

$$\mathcal{L}(x, y, \lambda) = f(x, y) + \lambda g(x, y)$$

In this case we can use a property of the root the function to our advantage. Notice that the minimum of the root function is the minimum of the term under root therefore, we can simplify some work by writing $f(x, y)$ without the root.

$$\mathcal{L}(x, y, \lambda) = (x-3)^2 + (y-4)^2 + \lambda(x^2 + y^2 - 4)$$

Step 2: Compute the necessary conditions

$$\text{I } \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial x} = 2(x-3) + 2\lambda x = 0$$

$$\text{II } \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial y} = 2(y-4) + 2\lambda y = 0$$

$$\text{III } \frac{\partial \mathcal{L}}{\partial \lambda} = x^2 + y^2 - 4 = 0$$

Now, this is the difficult part. The best approach in this case is to use substitution to with a top-bottom approach:

$$x = \frac{3}{1+\lambda}$$

$$y = \frac{4}{1+\lambda}$$

Solving for λ is also an option but in these kinds of systems of equations where both the partial with respect to x and y are very similar it is a good idea to solve for them because they tend to have a similar form when solving for them.

$$\begin{aligned} \left(\frac{3}{1+\lambda}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{4}{1+\lambda}\right)^2 - 4 &= 0 \\ \frac{9}{(1+\lambda)^2} + \frac{16}{(1+\lambda)^2} - 4 &= 0 \\ \frac{25}{(1+\lambda)^2} &= 4 \\ 25 &= 4(1+\lambda)^2 \\ \sqrt{\frac{25}{4}} &= 1+\lambda \\ \lambda &= -1 \pm \frac{5}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\lambda_1 = \frac{-7}{2} \quad \lambda_2 = \frac{3}{2}$$

Now, let us substitute backwards for λ_1 :

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{3}{1-\frac{7}{2}} = \frac{6}{-5} \\ y &= \frac{4}{1-\frac{7}{2}} = \frac{8}{-5} \end{aligned}$$

Now, for λ_2 :

$$\begin{aligned} x &= \frac{3}{1+\frac{3}{2}} = \frac{6}{5} \\ y &= \frac{4}{1+\frac{3}{2}} = \frac{8}{5} \end{aligned}$$

Step 3: Hessian Test with Constraint

We construct the Hessian:

$$H = \begin{pmatrix} 2+2\lambda & 0 & 2x \\ 0 & 2+2\lambda & 2 \\ 2x & 2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

For λ_1 we get $\det(H) = \frac{244}{5} > 0$, a minimum and for λ_2 $\det(H) = \frac{-244}{5}$ a maximum.

54.16 The Tangent Vector

Let $\vec{X}(t) \in \mathbb{R}^n$ be a differentiable, parameterized curve. The *tangent vector* at the point $\vec{X}(t_0)$ is given by:

$$\vec{X}'(t_0) = \begin{pmatrix} x'_1(t_0) \\ x'_2(t_0) \\ \vdots \\ x'_n(t_0) \end{pmatrix}$$

This vector points in the direction in which the curve is moving at t_0 , and its magnitude corresponds to the instantaneous speed. The unit tangent vector is:

$$\vec{X}(t) = \frac{\vec{X}'(t)}{\|\vec{X}'(t)\|}$$

The speed of the vector in \mathbb{R}^2 is given by:

$$\vec{X}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} t \\ f(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

and the tangent is:

$$T(t) = \begin{pmatrix} t \\ f(t) \end{pmatrix} + \lambda \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ f'(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

54.16.1 Derivation of the Tangent Vector Formula

Given a position vector function $\vec{r}(t)$, the tangent vector to the curve described by $\vec{r}(t)$ is obtained by taking the derivative of $\vec{r}(t)$ with respect to time. This derivative is defined as the following limit:

$$\frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} = \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\vec{r}(t + \Delta t) - \vec{r}(t)}{\Delta t}$$

Assuming that $\vec{r}(t)$ is expressed in terms of the canonical basis vectors $\hat{i}, \hat{j}, \hat{k}$, we can write:

$$\vec{r}(t) = x(t)\hat{i} + y(t)\hat{j} + z(t)\hat{k}$$

Then, the increment becomes:

$$\vec{r}(t + \Delta t) = x(t + \Delta t)\hat{i} + y(t + \Delta t)\hat{j} + z(t + \Delta t)\hat{k}$$

So the difference in the numerator of the derivative is:

$$\begin{aligned} \vec{r}(t + \Delta t) - \vec{r}(t) &= [x(t + \Delta t) - x(t)]\hat{i} \\ &\quad + [y(t + \Delta t) - y(t)]\hat{j} \\ &\quad + [z(t + \Delta t) - z(t)]\hat{k} \end{aligned}$$

Dividing by Δt and taking the limit:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} &= \lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\vec{r}(t + \Delta t) - \vec{r}(t)}{\Delta t} \\ &= \left(\lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{x(t + \Delta t) - x(t)}{\Delta t} \right) \hat{i} \\ &\quad + \left(\lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{y(t + \Delta t) - y(t)}{\Delta t} \right) \hat{j} \\ &\quad + \left(\lim_{\Delta t \rightarrow 0} \frac{z(t + \Delta t) - z(t)}{\Delta t} \right) \hat{k} \\ &= \frac{dx}{dt} \hat{i} + \frac{dy}{dt} \hat{j} + \frac{dz}{dt} \hat{k} \end{aligned}$$

This vector $\frac{d\vec{r}}{dt}$ points in the direction of motion and is tangent to the curve at each point t .

55 Multidimensional Integrals

55.1 Arclength of a Curve

We will use the famous technique of approximating the length/area/volume of something by dividing it in to equally smaller section that are straight lines in this case. In other cases they will be prisms, squares, etc. Now if we look at the difference between two points in our 3D space, for this Example we notice that there are three differences Δi Δj Δk . Now let us take the length of the vector $\sqrt{(\Delta i)^2 + (\Delta j)^2 + (\Delta k)^2}$. The total Arclength is going to be the sum of all of these sectors

$$L = \sum_{i=1}^n \sqrt{(\Delta i)^2 + (\Delta j)^2 + (\Delta k)^2}$$

if we use a clever one we get

$$L = \sum_{i=1}^n \sqrt{\frac{\left(\frac{\Delta i}{\Delta t}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\Delta j}{\Delta t}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\Delta k}{\Delta t}\right)^2}{\Delta t}}$$

Now if we take the limit we get

$$L = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{i=1}^n \sqrt{\frac{\left(\frac{\Delta i}{\Delta t}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\Delta j}{\Delta t}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\Delta k}{\Delta t}\right)^2}{\Delta t}}$$

which is

$$L = \int_a^b \sqrt{\left(\frac{\Delta i}{\Delta t}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\Delta j}{\Delta t}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\Delta k}{\Delta t}\right)^2} dt$$
$$L = \int_a^b \sqrt{(f'(t))^2 + (g'(t))^2 + (h'(t))^2} dt$$

For differentiable function on the interval $t \in [a; b]$

55.2 Line Integrals

55.2.1 Over Vector Field

Let $F : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ be a *vector field*, and let γ be a smooth curve parametrized by $\vec{r}(t)$, $t \in [a, b]$. The *line integral* of F along γ is:

$$\int_{\gamma} \langle \vec{F}(\vec{r}(t)), \frac{d\vec{r}(t)}{dt} \rangle dt = \int_a^b \langle \vec{F}(\vec{r}(t)), \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} \rangle dt = \vec{F}(\vec{r}(b)) - \vec{F}(\vec{r}(a))$$

In the context of physics this integral measures the work done by the field \vec{F} along the path γ , such as force over distance.

Example: Line Integral over a Vector Field

Let $f(x, y) = 2x + 2y$ be our vector field.

Let the curve C be the quarter-circle of radius 1 from $(1, 0)$ to $(0, 1)$, parametrized by:

$$\vec{r}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} x(t) \\ y(t) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos(t) \\ \sin(t) \end{pmatrix} \quad t \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$$

We compute the line integral of \vec{F} along C :

$$\int_C \langle \vec{F}(\vec{r}(t)), \frac{d\vec{r}(t)}{dt} \rangle dt = \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \langle \vec{F}(\vec{r}(t)), \frac{d\vec{r}(t)}{dt} \rangle dt$$

First, compute $\vec{F}(\vec{r}(t))$:

$$\vec{F}(\vec{r}(t)) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 \cos(t) \\ 2 \sin(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

Then the tangent vector of $\vec{r}(t)$:

$$\frac{d\vec{r}(t)}{dt} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin(t) \\ \cos(t) \end{pmatrix}$$

Now compute the inner product:

$$\langle \vec{F}(\vec{r}(t)), \frac{d\vec{r}(t)}{dt} \rangle = -2 \cos(t) \sin(t) + \cos(t) 2 \sin(t) = 0$$

Therefore, the line integral is:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_C \langle \vec{F}, \frac{d\vec{r}}{dt} \rangle dt \\ = \int_0^{\pi/2} 0 dt \\ = 0 \end{aligned}$$

The line integral of the gradient vector field $f(x, y) = 2x + 2y$ over this curve is zero.

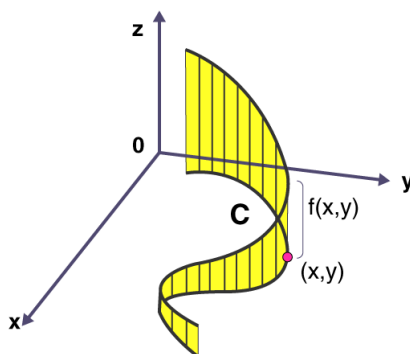
55.2.2 Over Scalar field

Let $f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$ be a scalar field defined on a smooth curve C , which is parametrized by a vector function.

$$\vec{r}(t) = (x_1(t), x_2(t), \dots, x_n(t)), \quad t \in [a, b]$$

Then, the line integral of f over C is given by:

$$\int_C f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) ds = \int_a^b f(\vec{r}(t)) \|\vec{r}'(t)\| dt$$



This formula comes from approximating the area of the squares under the curve with height $f(x_k, y_k)$ and the arclength Δs_k , we will simplify to three dimensions for the sake of simplicity, but like seen before this works for n dimensions. $A_k = f(x_k, y_k) \Delta s_k$, where $\Delta s_k = \sqrt{(\Delta x_k)^2 + (\Delta y_k)^2}$. Now by using or formula for the arclength we already know, we get $\|\vec{r}'(t)\| dt = ds$.

Example: Scalar Field

Compute the line integral of $f(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$ over the straight line segment going from $(1, 1)$ to $(3, 3)$

This time or curve is $y = x$ to the parametrized curve is $\begin{pmatrix} x(t) = t \\ y(t) = t \end{pmatrix}$ this left us with:

$$\int_1^3 2t^2 \sqrt{2} dt = \frac{52\sqrt{2}}{3}$$

55.3 Line Integrals with respect to a specific variable

We are going to take another look at line integrals but from the perspective of just one variable and how this affects the formulas we know. For the next explanation we will use only functions of two variables to keep the examples simple.

55.3.1 Over Scalar Field with respect to x or y

Imagining how this works is not specially difficult. Imagine taking a line integral where we do not move along the y -axis and only care about the plane xz . Here our line integral only changes in the fact that in the norm of our curve the component that was responsible for y will be set 0 and the ds changes to the variable we are integrating with respect to. In this case dx .

$$\int_c f(x, y) dx = \int_c f(g(t), h(t)) \sqrt{g'(t)^2} dt$$

55.3.2 Over Vector Field with respect to x or y

In the case of a field the story is different in the fact that now our output vectors change depending on the variable we are choosing to left out.

Now, given a field $\vec{F}(x, y) = M(x, y)\mathbf{i} + N(x, y)\mathbf{j}$ and the curve $\vec{r}(t) = g(t)\mathbf{i} + h(t)\mathbf{j}$. The line integral of \vec{F} along C is

$$\int_\gamma \langle \nabla \vec{F}, \frac{\vec{r}}{dt} \rangle dt$$
$$\int_a^b M(x, y) g'(t) dt + \int_a^b N(x, y) h'(t) dt$$

Here $g'(t)dt = dx$ and $h'(t)dt = dy$

$$\int_a^b M dx + \int_a^b N dy$$

These two integrals give us both the integral with respect to x and y .

Example:

Curve C is a portion of the parabola $y = x^2$ that goes through the points (1,1) to (2,4)

Compute: $\int_a^b \frac{x}{y} dy$

Step 1: Parametrize C

$$\vec{r}(t) = t\mathbf{i} + t^2\mathbf{j} \text{ with } 1 \leq t \leq 2$$

Step 2: Substitute into the integral

$$h'(t)dt = 2t dt$$

$$\int_a^b \frac{t}{t^2} 2t dt = \int_1^2 \frac{1}{t} 2t dt = 2$$

55.4 Potential Function

A vector field $\vec{F} : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^n$ is called *conservative* if there exists a scalar function $\phi : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ such that:

$$\vec{F} = \nabla \phi$$

The function ϕ is then called a *potential function* of \vec{F} .

Properties:

- The line integral of \vec{F} over any path depends only on the endpoints:

$$\int_{\gamma} \langle \vec{F}, d\vec{r} \rangle = \phi(B) - \phi(A)$$

- The line integral over a closed path is zero:

$$\oint_{\gamma} \langle \vec{F}, d\vec{r} \rangle = 0$$

- \vec{F} is conservative $\Leftrightarrow \vec{F}$ has zero curl in a simply connected region.

55.5 Finding the Potential Function of a Vector Field

To find the potential function $\phi(x, y)$ of a vector field $\vec{F}(x, y) = (P(x, y), Q(x, y))$, we must check if the field is conservative and then integrate accordingly. A vector field is conservative if there exists a scalar potential function ϕ such that:

$$\vec{F} = \nabla\phi = \left(\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial x}, \frac{\partial\phi}{\partial y} \right)$$

Given:

$$\vec{F}(x, y) = \left(2xy + e^x, x^2 + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \right)$$

Let $P(x, y) = 2xy + e^x$, and $Q(x, y) = x^2 + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}}$.

First, check if the field is conservative by verifying:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial P}{\partial y} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial y}(2xy + e^x) = 2x \\ \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left(x^2 + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \right) = 2x \end{aligned}$$

Since $\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}$, the field is conservative.

Step 1: Integrate $P(x, y)$ with respect to x :

$$\phi(x, y) = \int (2xy + e^x) dx = x^2y + e^x + h(y)$$

Here, $h(y)$ is a function of y only.

Step 2: Differentiate $\phi(x, y)$ with respect to y :

$$\frac{\partial\phi}{\partial y} = x^2 + h'(y)$$

Set this equal to $Q(x, y) = x^2 + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}}$, so:

$$x^2 + h'(y) = x^2 + \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} \Rightarrow h'(y) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}}$$

Step 3: Integrate to find $h(y)$:

$$h(y) = \int \frac{1}{2\sqrt{y}} dy = \sqrt{y} + C$$

Final potential function:

$$\phi(x, y) = x^2y + e^x + \sqrt{y} + C$$

Therefore, the potential function is:

$$\phi(x, y) = x^2y + e^x + \sqrt{y} + C$$

55.6 Double Integral over a Rectangular Region

Let $A = [x_0, x_1] \times [y_0, y_1]$ be a rectangular region in \mathbb{R}^2 . The double integral of a function $f(x, y)$ over A is:

$$\iint_A f(x, y) dA = \int_{x_0}^{x_1} \int_{y_0}^{y_1} f(x, y) dy dx$$

For rectangular domains, the order of integration does not affect the result:

$$\int_{x_0}^{x_1} \int_{y_0}^{y_1} f(x, y) dy dx = \int_{y_0}^{y_1} \int_{x_0}^{x_1} f(x, y) dx dy$$

55.7 Integration over Curvilinear Domains

If the region $A \subset \mathbb{R}^2$ is not rectangular, it is divided into subregions ΔA_k , and the integral is defined as the limit:

$$\iint_A f(x, y) dA = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(x_k, y_k) \Delta A_k$$

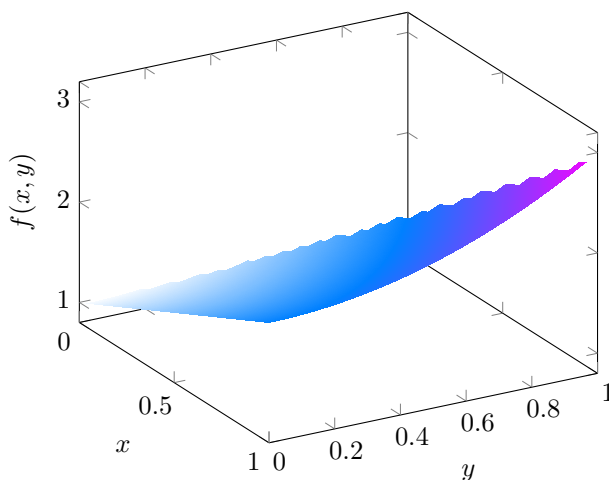
In practice, for regions bounded by curves, we integrate in the form:

$$\int_a^b \int_{u(x)}^{o(x)} f(x, y) dy dx$$

Here, $y \in [u(x), o(x)]$ describes the vertical bounds as functions of x .

Example:

Compute the volume under $f(x, y) = 1 + x + y^2$ bounded by x -axis, $x = 1$ and y -axis $y = \sqrt{x}$



First we are going to imagine slicing the area under this sector vertically along the x -axis from 0 up to 1 which is the volume of an Area under a curve that is represented by going along the y -axis.

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_0^1 \int_0^{\sqrt{x}} 1 + x + y^2 dy dx \\ & \int_0^1 \left[y + xy + \frac{y^3}{3} \right]_0^{\sqrt{x}} dx \\ & \int_0^1 \left[\sqrt{x} + x\sqrt{x} + \frac{\sqrt{x}^3}{3} \right]_0^{\sqrt{x}} dx \\ & = \left[\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{4}{3}\frac{2}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}} \right]_0^1 = \frac{6}{5} \end{aligned}$$

If we choose the other way then we have an area with a fix y in the inside that goes from y^2 to 1 with respect to x .

$$\int_0^1 \int_{y^2}^1 1 + x + y^2 dx dy$$

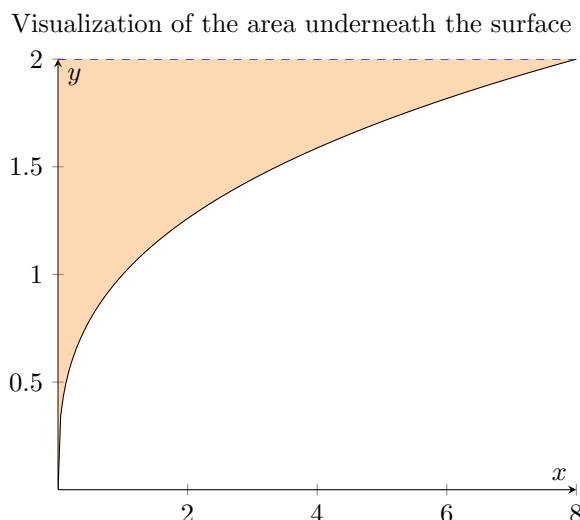
55.8 Changing the order of integration to solve tricky integrals

Given $\int_0^8 \int_{\sqrt[3]{x}}^2 \frac{1}{y^4+1} dy dx$ which is very hard to integrate, let us change the order to make it easier.

$$\int_0^2 \int_0^{y^3} \frac{1}{y^4+1} dx dy$$

The steps are the same as in the previous Example.

1. Identify the area you want to integrate, what are the bounds respective to x and y
2. Write the same expression without bounds and change the order of the differentials
3. Imagine slicing the area underneath vertically for x and horizontally for y with their respective bounds corresponding to the perspective.
4. Write the new integral with the opposite of order of integration



Here the original bounds are: x goes from 0 to 8 and y goes from $\sqrt[3]{x}$ to 2. As you can see in the diagram by slicing vertically the value of x is fixed, and we move towards the upper-bound of y which is 2. Therefore, the smallest x can get is 0 and the biggest is 2. While for y by slicing vertically we get that x goes from 0 to $\sqrt[3]{x}$, but we do not want to leave x , so we solve for y and get y^3 . Now we can put all of this together and integrate.

55.9 The Jacobian

The Jacobian matrix is a fundamental concept in multi-variable calculus. The Jacobian is the best approximation of a linear transformation for a point.

For the intuition of why, we use partial derivatives, just think about how we use them as this tiny changes in the component of original basis vectors.

Given a vector-valued function

$$f : \mathbb{R}^n \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^m, \quad f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \begin{bmatrix} f_1(x_1, \dots, x_n) \\ f_2(x_1, \dots, x_n) \\ \vdots \\ f_m(x_1, \dots, x_n) \end{bmatrix},$$

the *Jacobian matrix* of f is the $m \times n$ matrix of all first-order partial derivatives:

$$J_f(x) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_1}{\partial x_n} \\ \frac{\partial f_2}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_2}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_2}{\partial x_n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_1} & \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_2} & \cdots & \frac{\partial f_m}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}.$$

55.9.1 Local linearity

While performing non-linear transformations on a space. We can see that in a tiny neighborhood around a point, the transformation appears to be linear. And the matrix that encodes that transformation is the *Jacobian*.

For intuition, just imagine that in the tiny neighborhood the transformation is composed of small steps in the x_1, \dots, x_n directions which give of the partial derivatives that represent this small steps.

55.9.2 Determinant

When $m = n$, i.e., the function maps from \mathbb{R}^n to \mathbb{R}^n , the Jacobian matrix is square. In this case, the *Jacobian determinant* is defined as:

$$\det(J_f(x)),$$

and provides important information about the local behavior of the function. For instance:

- If $\det(J_f(x)) \neq 0$, the function is locally invertible at x by the inverse function theorem.
- The sign and magnitude of the determinant gives us information about orientation and volume scaling of the transformation.

When we change our systems of coordinates it is important that our differential make sense in the original system we were. Because of that, we take the determinant with respect to the new coordinates to tell us the scaling factor that we have to use for our result to make sense.

Use Cases:

The Jacobian matrix and its determinant appear in many areas, including:

- **Change of variables in integrals:** The absolute value of the Jacobian determinant is used to adjust the measure when changing coordinates in multiple integrals.
- **Nonlinear optimization:** The Jacobian is crucial for computing gradients and performing techniques like Newton's method in multiple dimensions.
- **Differential equations:** Stability analysis of dynamical systems often involves evaluating the Jacobian at equilibrium points.

55.9.3 List of Common Jacobians

- *Cartesian Coordinates:*

- Definition: The position of a point is given by (x, y, z) in a 3D space along orthogonal axes.
- Jacobian:

$$J_{\text{Cartesian}} = 1dx$$

- *Polar Coordinates (2D):*

- Definition: The position of a point in a plane is given by (r, θ) , where r is the radial distance and θ is the angle from the positive x -axis.
- Jacobian:

$$J_{\text{Polar}} = r dr d\theta$$

- *Cylindrical Coordinates:*

- Definition: The position of a point in 3D space is given by (r, θ, z) , where (r, θ) are the polar coordinates in the xy -plane and z is the height along the z -axis.
- Jacobian:

$$J_{\text{Cylindrical}} = r \, dr d\theta dz$$

- *Spherical Coordinates:*

- Definition: The position of a point in 3D space is given by (ρ, θ, ϕ) , where:
 - * ρ is the distance from the origin,
 - * θ is the azimuthal angle (in the xy -plane from the positive x -axis),
 - * ϕ is the polar angle (from the positive z -axis).
- Jacobian:

$$J_{\text{Spherical}} = \rho^2 \sin(\phi) d\rho d\theta d\phi$$

55.10 Integration in Polar Coordinates

For radially symmetric regions or functions, switching to polar coordinates simplifies the computation.

Transformation:

$$x = r \cos \varphi, \quad y = r \sin \varphi$$

The Jacobian of the transformation gives the area element:

$$dA = r \, dr \, d\varphi$$

Integral:

$$\iint_D f(x, y) \, dA = \int_{\varphi_0}^{\varphi_1} \int_0^{R(\varphi)} f(r \cos \varphi, r \sin \varphi) r \, dr \, d\varphi$$

55.10.1 Origin of the Area

When we divide our circle in the sections we get both a difference in then angle and the radius which generate another area. The difference $\Delta A = \text{Area of big wedge} - \text{Area of small wedge}$

Radius: $r_k + \frac{\Delta r}{2}$ for the big wedge and $r_k - \frac{\Delta r}{2}$ for the small wedge

Angle: $\frac{\Delta \theta}{2\pi}$ which is the angle of the fraction of the circle because the formula for the area is $r^2\pi$ and the whole circle would be 2π

Final Formula for the difference in the Area

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta A &= \frac{\Delta \theta}{2\pi} \left(\left[r_k + \frac{\Delta r}{2} \right]^2 - \left[r_k - \frac{\Delta r}{2} \right]^2 \right) \\ &= r_k \Delta r \Delta \theta \end{aligned}$$

Which multiplied by the function value and by taking the limit of these sections we get that the volume:

$$V = \int_{\theta_1}^{\theta_2} \int_{r_1(\theta)}^{r_2(\theta)} f(r, \theta) r \Delta r \Delta \theta$$

Example:

$f(r, \theta) = r$ above cardioid $r = 1 - \sin \theta$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} V &= \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{1-\sin\theta} r r dr d\theta \\ &= \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{r^3}{3} \Big|_0^{1-\sin\theta} d\theta = \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{(1-\sin\theta)^3}{3} d\theta = \frac{5\pi}{3} \end{aligned}$$

55.11 Improper Integrals over Unbounded Regions

If the domain of integration is unbounded (e.g., the entire plane \mathbb{R}^2), the double integral is defined via a limit process:

$$\iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} f(x, y) dx dy := \lim_{M_1, M_2 \rightarrow \infty} \lim_{N_1, N_2 \rightarrow \infty} \int_{M_1}^{M_2} \int_{N_1}^{N_2} f(x, y) dy dx$$

Often, using polar coordinates simplifies such cases, reducing multiple limits to one:

$$\iint_{\mathbb{R}^2} f(x, y) dx dy = \int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} f(r \cos \varphi, r \sin \varphi) r dr d\varphi$$

55.11.1 Gaussian Integral

We are going to find the integral of the *unbounded integral* e^{-x^2} using a combination of techniques.

$$\begin{aligned} S &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} dx \\ S^2 &= \left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} dx \right) \left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} dx \right) \\ S^2 &= \left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-x^2} dx \right) \left(\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-y^2} dy \right) \end{aligned}$$

Now let us translate to polar coordinates

$$\begin{aligned} S^2 &= \left(\int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} r e^{-(r \cos \theta)^2} r e^{-(r \sin \theta)^2} dr d\theta \right) \\ S^2 &= \left(\int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} r e^{-(r \cos \theta)^2 + (r \sin \theta)^2} dr d\theta \right) \\ S^2 &= \left(\int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} r e^{-(r^2)} dr d\theta \right) \\ S^2 &= \left(\int_0^{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} \frac{1}{2} e^{-(s)} ds d\theta \right) \\ S^2 &= \left(\int_0^{2\pi} d\theta \right) \\ S^2 &= \pi \\ S &= \sqrt{\pi} \end{aligned}$$

QED

55.12 Triple Integrals

The triple integral allows the computation of volume or mass in three-dimensional space.

Let $V \subset \mathbb{R}^3$ be a bounded region, then:

$$\iiint_V f(x, y, z) dV = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{k=1}^n f(x_k, y_k, z_k) \Delta V_k,$$

where ΔV_k are small sub-volumes approximating V .
In practice, evaluate:

$$\iiint_V f(x, y, z) dz dy dx,$$

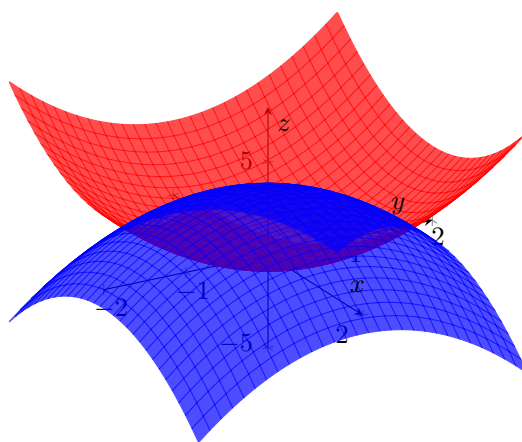
with limits determined by the geometry of the volume. The order of integration may be rearranged to simplify computation.

$$\int_{x=a}^{x=b} \int_{y=g_1(x)}^{y=g_2(x)} \int_{f_1(x,y)}^{f_2(x,y)} dz dy dx$$

55.12.1 Triple Integrals in Cartesian Coordinates

In this short section we, will look at an example of how to calculate the volume enclosed in between two functions using triple integrals.

Given are the functions $f_1(x, y) = x^2 + y^2$ and $f_2(x, y) = 3 - x^2 - y^2$



Let us find the intersection

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + y^2 &= 3 - x^2 - y^2 \\ x^2 + y^2 &= \frac{3}{2} \end{aligned}$$

Now we have to find the limits of integration for

$$\int_{x=a}^{x=b} \int_{y=g_1(x)}^{y=g_2(x)} \int_{f_1(x,y)}^{f_2(x,y)} dz dy dx,$$

using our constraint and our original functions.

$$\int_{x=a}^{x=b} \int_{y=-\sqrt{\frac{3}{2}-x^2}}^{\sqrt{\frac{3}{2}-x^2}} \int_{x^2+y^2}^{3-x^2-y^2} dz dy dx$$

Here z means the height which is just the output of the original functions.
The bounds of y just by looking at our constraint and solving for it.
And x only depends on the concrete limit of integration.

55.12.2 Coordinate Transformation and the Jacobian Determinant

Let a coordinate transformation be defined by:

$$x = x(u, v, w), \quad y = y(u, v, w), \quad z = z(u, v, w)$$

Then the triple integral transforms as:

$$\iiint_{(x,y,z)} f(x, y, z) dx dy dz = \iiint_{(u,v,w)} f(x(u, v, w), y(u, v, w), z(u, v, w)) \cdot |\det J| du dv dw$$

where J is the *Jacobian matrix* of the transformation:

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\partial x}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial x}{\partial w} \\ \frac{\partial y}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial y}{\partial w} \\ \frac{\partial z}{\partial u} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial v} & \frac{\partial z}{\partial w} \end{pmatrix}$$

Example: Transformation to Cylindrical Coordinates

The standard cylindrical coordinate transformation is:

$$x = r \cos \varphi, \quad y = r \sin \varphi, \quad z = z$$

The Jacobian determinant is:

$$|\det J| = \begin{vmatrix} \cos \varphi & -r \sin \varphi & 0 \\ \sin \varphi & r \cos \varphi & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = r$$

Thus, the triple integral in cylindrical coordinates becomes:

$$\iiint f(x, y, z) \, dx \, dy \, dz = \iiint f(r \cos \varphi, r \sin \varphi, z) \, r \, dr \, d\varphi \, dz$$

55.12.3 Calculating the center of mass with triple integrals

We can make use of triple integration to calculate the center of mass of a body with respect to x , y or z with the following formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} x_s &= \iiint_V x p(x, z, y) \, dz \, dy \, dx \\ y_s &= \iiint_V y p(x, z, y) \, dz \, dy \, dx \\ z_s &= \iiint_V z p(x, z, y) \, dz \, dy \, dx \end{aligned}$$

Where $p(x, y, z)$ is our mass function.

56 Differential Equations

A Differential Equation is an equation that relates a function (the dependent variable) with a variable or multiple variables (the independent variables) and its derivative.

They can be categorized in *Ordinary* and *Partial* Differential Equations.

56.1 Ordinary Differential Equations

An equation of the form

$$y^n = f(x, y, x', y', \dots, y^{n-1})$$

is called *Ordinary Explicit Differential Equations of order n*

If $y^n = 0$ then it is *implicit*

If the exponent of the dependent variable is 1, and it is build like a linear equation then it is categorized as *Linear*

56.2 Initial Value Problems and Solutions

The specification of an explicit differential equation and the values

$$x_0, \quad y(x_0) = y_0, \quad y'(x_0) = y_1, \quad \dots, \quad y^{(n-1)}(x_0) = y_{n-1}$$

is called an *initial value problem (IVP)*.

An n -times differentiable function $y(x)$ that satisfies the explicit differential equation is called the *general solution* of the differential equation. If it also satisfies the conditions of the initial value problem from the previous definition, it is called the *particular solution* of the IVP.

56.3 Volterra Integral

The function $y(x)$ is a solution of the IVP $y' = f(x, y)$, $y(x_0) = y_0$ if and only if

$$y(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^x f(t, y(t)) dt$$

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{x_0}^x f(t, y(t)) dt &= \int_{x_0}^x y' \\ y(x) &= y(x_0) \end{aligned}$$

The other way would be

$$\left(\int_{x_0}^x f(t, y(t)) dt + y_0 \right)' = f(x, y(x)) = y'$$

◻◻◻

56.4 The Picard-Lindelöf Iteration Method

We can approximate the desired solution using the Volterra integral equation as follows. Start with an arbitrary initial function, for example a constant — preferably the initial value:

$$g_0(x) = y_0$$

Then form the next approximation to the desired function $y(x)$ as:

$$g_{n+1}(x) = y_0 + \int_{x_0}^x f(t, g_n(t)) dt$$

56.5 Integration case

To solve a ODE of the form $y' = f(x)$ it is as easy as integrating $f(x)$.

56.6 Separation of Variables

An equation $F(x, y, y', \dots) = 0$ is called an equation of *separable variables* if it can be written in one of the following forms:

- $\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x)g(y)$
- $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{f(x)}{g(y)}$
- $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{g(y)}{f(x)}$

56.6.1 Steps to solve a ODE of separable variables

1. Solve for the derivative
2. Check that it is indeed an ODE of separable variables
3. Separate the variables
4. Integrate with respect to the independent variable

Example:

Given is $(y - 2)y' = 3x - 5$

It is an ODE of separable variable

$$y' = \frac{3x - 5}{y - 2}$$

Now we separate the variables and Integrate

$$\int (y - 2)y' dx = \int 3x - 5 dx$$

Note that $y' = \frac{dy}{dx}$ and $\frac{dy}{dx} dx = dy$ (only as a convenient fiction in reality we are changing the variables) thus,

$$\begin{aligned}\int (y - 2)dy &= \int 3x - 5 dx \\ \frac{y^2}{2} - 2y + c &= \frac{3x^2}{2} - 5x + c\end{aligned}$$

The solution we get is an implicit solution. To make it look nice solve for y if you can.

56.6.2 Understanding the fiction

The previous fiction we used can explain in the following manner.

Given $f(y)\frac{dy}{dx}dx = \int f(y)dy$. We want to prove that this equality holds via the *chain rule* $\frac{du}{dx} = \frac{du}{dy} \frac{dy}{dx}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{dx} \left(\int f(y)dy \right) &= \frac{d}{dx} \left(\int f(y)dy \right) \frac{dy}{dx} \\ &= f(y)dy \frac{dy}{dx} \\ \implies \int f(y) \frac{dy}{dx} &= \int f(y)dy\end{aligned}$$

□◻◻

56.7 Geometry of ODE

You can imagine the plot of an ODE as a *Slope field* where the slope (derivative) of a function obeys a certain condition, this being the differential equation $\frac{dy}{dx} = \text{expr}$.

A point on this field is called an *Initial Condition* and the curve that goes through that point in the slope field is called an *Integral curve* which is a solution to the differential equation with respect to that initial condition.

56.8 Existence and Uniqueness

Let $f(x, y)$ be continuous on a rectangle $[a, b] \times \mathbb{R}$. Then the differential equation

$$y' = f(x, y)$$

has at least one solution. A unique solution is only guaranteed under additional conditions.

A function $f : \mathbb{R}^2 \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ is called *Lipschitz continuous with respect to y* if there exists a constant $L > 0$ such that

$$|f(x, y_1) - f(x, y_2)| \leq L|y_1 - y_2| \quad \text{for all } (x, y_1), (x, y_2) \in D.$$

Let $x_0 \in [a, b]$, and let $f : [a, b] \times \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ be continuous and bounded, and Lipschitz continuous in y . Then the initial value problem

$$y' = f(x, y), \quad y(x_0) = y_0$$

has a unique solution on $[a, b]$.

Or in easier words: If f and $\frac{\partial f}{\partial y}$ are continuous near (x_0, y_0) then there is a unique solution on an interval $\alpha < x_0 < \beta$ to the IVP

$$y' = f(x, y), \quad y(x_0) = y_0$$

56.9 How to deal with initial conditions

After solving a differential equation we may have the problem that certain initial conditions were set at the start, thus, making our general solution not specific.

Solving this problem is pretty easy, because we just have to solve for the constant terms in our general solution with respect to our initial conditions. Like for example $y(0) = 1$ we would plug 0 for all x 's in our general solution the whole equation will be set equal to 1.

56.10 Solving DE with Substitution

In some cases a complex function can be simplified via a substitution.

56.10.1 Case I

$$y' = f(ax + by(x) + c)$$

With a substitution like $z(x) = ax + by(x) + c$ the right-hand side will become $f(z)$ and for the left-hand side we get $y'(x) = \frac{z'(x) - ax - c}{b}$.

Now we can substitute in the original equation, and we get

$$y'(x) = \frac{1}{b}(z'(x) - a) = f(z)$$

$$z'(x) = a + bf(z)$$

Now we can integrate and find the solution and then return to our original variables.

Example:

$$y' = (x + y(x))^2$$

Here $a = 1$, $b = 1$, $c = 0$ and $f(z) = z^2$

1. Substitute

$$z(x) = x + y(x)$$

$$y(x) = z(x) - x$$

$$y'(x) = z'(x) - 1$$

2. Plug in the DE

$$y' = (x + y(x))^2$$

$$z'(x) - 1 = z(x)^2$$

3. Integrate

$$z'(x) = 1 + z(x)^2$$

$$\frac{z'(x)}{1 + z(x)^2}$$

$$\int \frac{1}{1 + z^2} dz = \int 1 dx$$

$$\arctan(z) = x + c$$

$$z = \tan(x + c)$$

4. Return to the original variables

$$x + y(x) = \tan(x + c)$$

$$y(x) = \tan(x + c) - x$$

56.10.2 Case II

$$y' = f\left(\frac{y}{x}\right)$$

For this to be valid $z(x) = \frac{y}{x}$ our $y(x)$ needs to look like $y(x) = z(x)x$ and so $y' = z(x) + z'(x)x$.

Now we substitute in the differential equation using $f(z) = z(x) + z'(x)x$

$$z'(x) = \frac{f(z) - z(x)}{x}$$

Now we can integrate and then return to our original variables. $y(x) = z(x)x$, where $z(x)$ is our result of the integration.

Example:

$$y' = \frac{y(x)}{x} + 1$$

This is converted to $y' = f(z) = z + 1$

1. Substitute

$$z(x) = \frac{y(x)}{x}$$

$$y(x) = z(x)x$$

$$y'(x) = z(x) + z'(x)x$$

2. Plug in the DE

$$z(x) + z'(x)x = z(x) + 1$$

3. Integrate

$$\begin{aligned} z'(x)x &= 1 \\ \int z' dz &= \int \frac{1}{x} dx \\ z &= (\ln(x) + c)x \end{aligned}$$

56.11 Linear Differential Equations

An ODE is called linear if all occurrences of the dependent variable and its derivatives have an exponent of at most 1.

$$a_n(x)y^n + a_{n-1}y^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1(x)y' + a_0(x)y = b(x)$$

If such an Equation has also the property $b(x) = 0$ it is called *Homogeneous*

56.11.1 How to solve a Linear Differential Equation

In this case we will focus on first Order ODE.

Write it in the standard form $y' + p(x)y = f(x)$

Now use *Integrating Factor Method*

56.12 Integrating Factor Method

We are going to multiply our expression by function $r(x)$

$$r(x)y' + r(x)p(x)y = r(x)f(x)$$

Now we would like to write the left side as $\frac{d}{dx}yr(x)$ because now if we were to integrate it would take us to the expression in the right.

When we evaluate this new expression we get that

$$\frac{d}{dx}yr(x) = y'r(x) + r'(x)y$$

which is not quite what we actually have, but it is close. Now note that we can say

$$r'(x) = r(x)p(x)$$

This is a differential equation of separable variables thus, we can

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{r'(x)}{r(x)} &= p(x) \\ \int \frac{r'(x)}{r(x)} dx &= \int p(x) dx \\ \ln(r(x)) &= \int p(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

after using e

$$r(x) = e^{\int p(x) dx}$$

Now we have found an $r(x)$ and now that we know that such a function exists we can return to our initial problem and say

$$\frac{d}{dx}r(x)y = r(x)f(x)$$

$$y = \frac{1}{r(x)} \int r(x)f(x)dx$$

and

$$r(x) = e^{\int p(x)dx}$$

Example:

Given are $y' + 4y = e^{-x}$ and $y(0) = \frac{4}{3}$

Here $4 = p(x)$ and $e^{-x} = f(x)$

Now let us use the formula for $r(x) = e^{\int p(x)}$

this gives us $r(x) = e^{\int 4dx} = e^{4x}$

Now recall what we saw earlier

$$e^{4x}y' + e^{4x}4y = e^{4x}e^{-x} = e^{3x}$$

Our left side is just $\frac{d}{dx}e^{4x}y$

Now let us complete the exercise with our last formula by integrating both sides

$$\frac{d}{dx}e^{4x}y = e^{3x}$$

$$y = \frac{1}{e^{4x}} \int e^{3x}$$

$$y = \frac{1}{e^{4x}} \frac{1}{3} e^{3x} + c$$

Which is our general solution

To find our specific solution we just plug 0 in to our general solution that gives us $\frac{1}{3} + c = \frac{4}{3}$ thus, $c = 1$

56.13 Homogeneous Differential Equations

A differential equation

$$M(x, y)dx + N(x, y)dy = 0$$

is considered *Homogeneous* if and only if $M(x)$ and $N(x)$ are *homogeneous*, and they have the same degree.

The equation $y' + f(x)y = 0$ is called *homogeneous linear differential equation of first order*.

56.13.1 Homogeneous Equation

A function $f(x, y)$ is called *homogeneous* if and only if it can be written

$$f(xt, yt) = t^n f(x, y)$$

Example:

$$f(x, y) = x^3 + y^3$$

$$f(tx, ty) = (tx)^3 + (ty)^3$$

$$t^3(x^3 + y^3) = t^3 f(x, y)$$

It is important to note that the key is that each term have a total degree of n . For example: $x^2y + x3y^2$

56.13.2 Homogeneous Functions Theorem

If $f(x, y)$ is homogeneous of degree 0 in x and y then f is a function of $\frac{y}{x}$
 Or $f(x, y, y')$ is homogeneous if it can be written as $y' = f(\frac{x}{y})$ or $y' = f(\frac{y}{x})$

56.14 Solving Homogeneous DE I

1. Write in the form $M(x, y)dx + N(x, y)dy = 0$
2. Check if it is homogeneous
3. Change the variables to $y = ux$ or $x = uy$ depending on the situation
4. Solve using the method of separable variables method
5. Rewrite the answer in terms of the original variables again

Example:

Give is the function $(x - y)dx = -xdy$

Step 1. We write it in the desired form $(x - y)dx + xdy = 0$

Step 2. We notice that both are of degree 1. This time we skip the rigorous check.

Step 3. We are going to choose the simpler function to do the change of variable depending on the *differential!*

The simpler function is xdy thus, we are to change y

$$y = ux$$

$$dy = ux' + xu'$$

and

$$u = \frac{y}{x}$$

Now substitute

$$(x - ux)dx + x(udx + xdu) = 0$$

$$xdx - uxdx + xudx + x^2du = 0$$

$$(x - ux + xu)dx + x^2du = 0$$

$$xdx + x^2du = 0$$

$$xdx = -x^2du$$

$$dx = -xdu$$

Step 4. Now we can integrate both sides

$$\int \frac{1}{x} dx = \int du$$

$$\ln x + c = -u + c$$

Step 5. No we use $u = \frac{y}{x}$ to return to our original variables

$$\ln x + c = -\frac{y}{x} + c$$

$$-x \ln x - xc = y$$

56.15 Solving Homogeneous DE I

Another method for solving this kind of equations $y' + f(x)y = 0$ is to follow the next steps.

Step 1: Separate the variables

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -f(x)y$$

Step 2: Use the separation of variables

$$\int \frac{\frac{dy}{dx}}{y} = \int -f(x)dx$$

$$\int \frac{dy}{y} = \int -f(x)dx$$

$$\ln |y| = \int -f(x)dx$$

$$y = Ce^{\int -f(x)dx}$$

This method works more directly.

56.16 Inhomogeneous Equation

The equation $y' + f(x)y = g(x)$ is called *linear inhomogeneous differential equation of first order* $g(x)$ is called the *distortion function*. The correspondent IVP is called *linear IVP*.

56.17 Solutions of LDE

Every linear IVP with continuous functions $f(x)$ and $g(x)$ plus a bounded $f(x)$ has exactly one solution.

Proof:

$$\begin{aligned} y' = -f(x)y + g(x) \text{ therefore, } | -f(x)y_1 + g(x) + -f(x)y_2 + g(x) | &= |f(x)||y_1 - y_2| \\ &\leq M|y_1 - y_2| \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the function is Lipschitz continuous, thus, a solution is possible.

□◻◻

56.17.1 Variation of the Constants

Recall that for the homogeneous case $y' + f(x)y = 0$ case we use $y = ce^{\int -f(x)dx}$, but now we have $y' + f(x)y = g(x)$, thus, let us use the following approach

$$y = c(x)e^{\int -f(x)dx}$$

Now use the product rule to derivate

$$\begin{aligned} y' &= c'(x)e^{\int -f(x)dx} + c(x)e^{\int -f(x)dx}(-f(x)) \\ &= c'(x)e^{\int -f(x)dx} - f(x)y \end{aligned}$$

thus,

$$y' + f(x)y = c'(x)e^{\int -f(x)dx}$$

therefore, $g(x) = c'(x)e^{\int -f(x)dx}$

Then we can get a solution for $c(x)$ from

$$g(x) = c'(x)e^{\int -f(x)dx}$$

$$g(x) = c'(x)e^{-\int f(x)dx}$$

$$c'(x) = \frac{g(x)}{e^{-\int f(x)dx}}$$

$$c'(x) = g(x)e^{\int f(x)dx}$$

Example:

Given is $y' - \cos(x)y = xe^{\sin(x)}$ with $y(0) = 3$.

1. Solve as if it were homogeneous

$$y' - \cos(x)y = 0$$

$$y' = \cos(x)y$$

$$\frac{y'}{y} = \cos(x)$$

$$\int \frac{1}{y} dy = \int \cos(x) dx$$

$$\ln |y| + c = \sin(x) + c$$

$$y = e^{\sin(x)} c$$

2. Use $y = c(x)e^{\sin(x)}$

$$y' = c(x)\cos(x)e^{\sin(x)} + c'(x)e^{\sin(x)}$$

$$y' = \cos(x)y + c'(x)e^{\sin(x)}$$

$$y' - \cos(x)y = c'(x)e^{\sin(x)}$$

3. Compare with the original equation

$$y' - \cos(x)y = xe^{\sin(x)}$$

$$y' - \cos(x)y = c'(x)e^{\sin(x)}$$

4. Solve for $c'(x)$

$$xe^{\sin(x)} = c'(x)e^{\sin(x)}$$

$$x = c'(x)$$

5. Integrate

$$\int x dx = \int c'(x) dx$$

$$\frac{x^2}{2} + c = c(x)$$

6. Substitute in our approach $y = g(x)e^{\sin(x)}$ from earlier

$$y = \left(\frac{x^2}{2} + c \right) e^{\sin(x)}$$

7. Solve for c using our initial condition if asked

$$\begin{aligned}
y(0) &= 3 \\
3 &= \left(\frac{0^2}{2} + c\right) e^{\sin(0)} \\
3 &= c
\end{aligned}$$

56.18 Existence and Uniqueness Differential Equations

For the IVP

$$y^n + p_{n-1}y^{n-1} + \cdots + p_0(x)y = f(x)$$

$$y(a) = b_0, y'(a) = b_1, \dots, y^{n-1}(a) = b_{n-1}$$

If all p_i and f are continuous on the interval I about a , then there exists a unique solution on I .

56.19 Constant Coefficients and the Superposition Theorem

56.19.1 Theorem of Superposition and the General Solution

Suppose y_1, \dots, y_n solve

$$y^n + p_{n-1}y^{n-1} + \cdots + p_0(x)y = 0$$

Then $y = c_1y_1 + \cdots + c_ny_n$ also solves the equation, and it is the *General Solution* if and only if the *Wronskian* $W(t) \neq 0$ for some t_0 .

56.20 Undetermined Coefficients

Given an equation $y' + ay = g(x)$ notice that a does not depend on x . The homogeneous equation to this case will be $y' + ay = 0$ with a solution y_h and some partial solution y_p . Now remember from *Linear Algebra* the *general = particular + homogeneous* more precisely $y = y_p + y_h$ therefore, adding a particular solution to a homogeneous does not change the general solution of our DE.

Now let us substitute in our differential equation.

$$\begin{aligned}
(y_h + y_p)' + a(y_h + y_p) &= y_h' + y_p' + ay_h + ay_p \\
&= (y_h' + ay_h) + (y_p' + ay_p) = 0 + g(x) = g(x)
\end{aligned}$$

56.20.1 Steps for solving Constant Coefficients problems

1. Find the *homogeneous* solution for $y' + ay = 0$. y_h is going to have a free parameter.
2. Find a partial solution for $y' + ay = g(x)$
3. Use $y = y_h + y_p$
4. If you have an IVP solve for the free parameter in y_h

Now we have to find a way to solve for y_p and y_h

56.20.2 Find the partial solution

We will use the method called based on guessing the type of the function on the right side.

Example:

Given is the following IVP: $y' + 2y = 2x + 13$ with $y(0) = 8$

By looking carefully we see that on the right-hand side we just have a normal polynomial, thus, we can substitute $y = bx + c$ and derivate $y' = b$. In the case for when we have higher order derivative we would differentiate for each of them.

Now substitute

$$b + 2(bx + c) = 2x + 13$$

$$2bx + b + 2c = 2x + 13$$

Now by comparing the Coefficients with the other side

$$2b = 2$$

$$b + 2c = 13$$

We get: $b = 1$, $c = 6$. And we have found a *particular* solution for our DE $y_p = x + 6$

Now we have to find a *homogeneous* solution with the formula we already know $y_h = ce^{\int f(x)dx}$ in our case $y_h = ce^{\int 2dx} = ce^{-2x}$

$$y = y_h + y_p = ce^{-2x} + x + 6$$

Now considering the condition $y(0) = 8$, this gives:

$$y(0) = c + 6 = 8 \Rightarrow c = 2$$

and we obtain the particular solution:

$$y = 2e^{-2x} + x + 6$$

56.20.3 Table of reference

Type of Forcing Function	Disturbance Function $g(x)$	Approach for y_p
Constant	k_0	c_0
Linear	$k_0 + k_1x$	$c_0 + c_1x$
Polynomial	$\sum_{i=0}^n k_i x^i$	$\sum_{i=0}^n c_i x^i$
Exponential	ke^{bx} , $b \neq a$ ke^{ax}	$c_0 e^{bx}$ $c_0 x e^{ax}$
Trigonometric	$k \sin(bx) + l \cos(bx)$	$c_0 \sin(bx) + c_1 \cos(bx)$

It is important to point out that sometimes it is necessary to combine different types of functions to get the solution.

Example:

$$y'' - 2x'3y = t^2 + 3e^{-t} \cos(4t)$$

Here the approach would be

$$y_p = (A + Bt + Ct^2) + D(e^{-t} \cos(4t)) + E(e^{-t} \sin(4t))$$

The best way is to tackle down each of the types of functions separately.

An alternative to way of using this method is to

1. Find the homogeneous solution.
2. Multiply both sides of the equation by it.
3. Integrate

This will give you the exact same result and is faster.

56.21 Bernoulli Equation

This is used for equations of the form

$$y' + P(x)y = Q(x)y^n$$

We can not use the methods we already know for this equation because it is linear but with a clever substitution we can turn it into a linear differential equation.

Let us use a substitution

$$u = y^{1-n}$$

then

$$u' = (1-n)y^{-n}y'$$

Now this looks kinda similar to the original equation multiply by y^{-n} that looks like

$$y^{-n}y' + P(x)y^{-n}y = Q(x)y^{-n}yn$$

$$y^{-n}y' + P(x)y^{1-n} = Q(x)$$

Notice that $y^{-n} = \frac{u'}{(1-n)y'}$, thus, after substitution

$$\frac{1}{1-n}u' + P(x)u = Q(x)$$

Now our equation is *linear*, and we can use the *integrating factor* method.

Example:

Given is $y' - 5y = \frac{-5}{2}xy^3$.

$$u = y^{-2} \text{ and } u' = -2y^{-3}y'$$

$$y^{-3} = \frac{u'}{-2y'}$$

And our equation after multiplying by y^{-3}

$$y^{-3}y' - 5yy^{-3} = -\frac{5}{2}x$$

$$y^{-3}y' - 5y^{-2} = -\frac{5}{2}x$$

$$\frac{u'}{-2y'}y' - 5u = -\frac{5}{2}x$$

Now we can use the *Integrating Factor Method*. First bring to the standard form. $y' + p(x)y = f(x)$

$$u' + 10u = 5x$$

Remember that $r(x) = e^{\int p(x)dx} = e^{\int 10dx} = e^{10x}$ therefore, we have

$$e^{10x}u' + 10ue^{10x} = e^{10x}5x$$

Now let us integrate

$$\frac{d}{dx}(e^{10x}u) = e^{10x}5x$$

$$Ce^{10x}u = \int e^{10x}5xdx = 5x\frac{e^{10x}}{10} - \int e^{10x}5dx$$

$$Ce^{10x}u = \int e^{10x}5xdx = 5x\frac{e^{10x}}{10} - \frac{5}{10} \int e^{10x}dx$$

$$Ce^{10x}u = \frac{xe^{10x}}{2} - \frac{5}{100}e^{10x} + c$$

$$Ce^{10x} = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{1}{20} + \frac{c}{e^{10x}} = y^{-2}$$

56.22 Autonomous Equations

An *Autonomous Differential Equation* only depends on the dependent variable y . **Example:** $\frac{dy}{dt} = (1+y)(1-y)$.

56.22.1 Equilibrium Solutions

Values where $f(y) = 0$ are *Equilibrium Solutions*.

Asymptotically stable

An equilibrium solution $y = a$ is *asymptotically stable* if solutions that start near a tend towards a as $t \rightarrow \infty$.

Asymptotically unstable

An equilibrium solution $y = a$ is *asymptotically unstable* if solutions that start near a leave as $t \rightarrow \infty$

56.23 Linear Inhomogeneous DEs with Non-Constant Coefficients

The method of *variation of constants* is often used alongside the *superposition principle*. In this method, the integration constant in the function $c(x)$ is omitted as it is part of the particular solution.

The superposition principle also holds for linear inhomogeneous differential equations with non-constant coefficients:

$$\begin{aligned} y_p' + f(x)y_p &= g(x) \quad (\text{particular solution}) \\ y_h' + f(x)y_h &= 0 \quad (\text{homogeneous solution}) \end{aligned}$$

For the total solution $y = y_h + y_p$, we get:

$$\begin{aligned} y' + f(x)y &= (y_h + y_p)' + f(x)(y_h + y_p) \\ &= y_h' + y_p' + f(x)y_h + f(x)y_p \\ &= g(x) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the solution can be decomposed into the general solution of the homogeneous DE and a particular solution based on the form of the right-hand side.

Example:

$$y' = -\frac{y}{x} + 1$$

The homogeneous DE is $y' = -\frac{y}{x}$ which can be solved by separating the variables. $y_h = \frac{c}{x}$
Now let use $y_p = \frac{c(x)}{x}$.

$$y'_p = \frac{c'(x)x - c(x)}{x^2}$$

Let us break down the fraction to find where to put our homogeneous solution we have already found

$$\frac{c'(x)}{x} - \frac{c(x)}{x^2} = \frac{c'(x)}{x} + \frac{1}{x} \frac{c}{x} = \frac{c'(x)}{x} + \frac{1}{x} y$$

and we get

$$y'_p = -\frac{y}{x} + \frac{c'(x)}{x}$$

Here we compare with the inhomogeneous part of the original equation and get

$$\frac{c'(x)}{x} = 1 \implies c'(x) = x$$

then $c(x)$ is equal to $\frac{x^2}{2}$ and therefore, $y_p = \frac{x^2}{x} \frac{1}{x} = \frac{x}{2}$

As our final result we get $y = \frac{c}{x} + \frac{x}{2}$

56.24 Power Series Approach

Another method to solve a certain type of differential equation is to find the function given an initial conditions. This can be better understood with an example.

$$\begin{aligned} y' &= y \\ y(0) &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

We say $y = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$ and $y(0) = a_0 = 1$.
Now let us derivate you y

$$\begin{aligned} y &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n = a_0 x^0 + a_1 x^1 + \dots = 1 + a_1 x^1 + a_2 x^2 + \dots \\ y' &= 0 + a_1 + 2a_2 x + 3a_3 x^2 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we can rewrite the sum as

$$y' = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n n x^{n-1}$$

Starting from 1 because 0 does not contribute to the sum. After shifting the index we get

$$y' = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1} (n+1) x^n$$

Now we build our original DE with our new definitions for y' and y

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_{n+1} (n+1) x^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n x^n$$

If we compare the coefficients we get

$$a_n = a_{n+1} (n+1)$$

$$\frac{a_n}{(n+1)} = a_{n+1}$$

after iterating backwards we get

$$a_{n+1} = \frac{a_n}{n+1} = \frac{\frac{a_{n-1}}{(n-1+1)}}{n+1} = \frac{\frac{a_{n-2}}{\frac{(n-1)}{(n-1+1)}}}{n+1}$$

$$a_n = \frac{a_0}{(n+1)!} = \frac{1}{(n+1)!} = 1$$

therefore, $a_n = \frac{1}{n!}$ which gives us the solution

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n!} x^n = e^x$$

56.24.1 Theorem for the Power Series of DE

For a differential equation of the form:

$$A(x)y^n + \cdots + B(x)y' + C(x)y = 0$$

more specific after dividing by $A(X)$

$$y^n + \cdots + P(x)y' + Q(x)y = 0,$$

with $x = a$ as an *Ordinary Point* if $\dots, P(x)$ and $Q(x)$ are *Analytic* at $x = a$. Otherwise, a *Singular Point*.

Then this equation has n linearly independent solutions of the form

$$y(x) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} c_n (x-a)^n$$

The radius of convergence is at least as large as distance to the nearest *Singular Point*.

56.25 Exact Differential Equations

We will take a short look at functions with two inputs via implicit differentiation $F(x, y(x)) = 0$. We have:

$$F_x dx + F_y dy = 0$$

$$p(x, y)dx + q(x, y)dy = 0$$

after dividing by dx

$$F_x + F_y y' = 0$$

$$p(x, y)dx + q(x, y)y' = 0$$

If this is a differential then $p_x = q_y$, and we define a DE of the form:

$$p(x, y)dx + q(x, y)y' = 0 \text{ with } p_x = q_y,$$

as *exact*. And the $p_x = q_y$ as *Integrability-Condition*.

By finding the *potential* we can solve this kind of differential equations.

Example:

Step 1: Solve for y'

$$\begin{aligned}
(12xy + 3)dx + 6x^2dy &= 0 \\
(12xy + 3) + 6x^2y' &= 0 \\
y' &= -\frac{12xy + 3}{6x^2}
\end{aligned}$$

Step 2: Test the Integrability-Condition

$$\begin{aligned}
p(x, y) &= 12xy + 3 \\
q(x, y) &= 6x^2 \\
p_x &= 12x \\
q_y &= 12x
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
F(x, y) &= \int (12xy + 3)dx = \int 6x^2dy \\
&= 6x^2y + 3x + c(y) = 6yx^2 + c(x)
\end{aligned}$$

Now we differentiate both sides with respect to y and this gives us

$$\begin{aligned}
6x^2y + 3x + c(y) &= 6yx^2 + c(x) \\
6x^2 + c'(y) &= 6x^2 \\
c'(y) &= 0 \\
c(y) &= y \text{ after integrating with respect to } dy,
\end{aligned}$$

and therefore, $F(x, y) = 6x^2y + 3x + \hat{c} = 0$.

Step 3: Solve for y

$$y = \frac{\hat{c} - 3x}{6x^2}$$

56.25.1 Euler Multipliers

Sometimes a seemingly *exact* differential equations is not possible to solve do the partial derivatives of $P(x, y)$ and $Q(x, y)$ not being equal. An approach to this problem are the so-called *Euler Multipliers*, which are some factor $\mu(x)$ or $\mu(y)$ that when found. Can help solve the differential equation.

$$P(x, y)\mu(x) + Q(x, y)y'\mu(x) = 0$$

or

$$P(x, y)\mu(y) + Q(x, y)y'\mu(y) = 0$$

The steps for solving this kind of problems are

1. Choose either $\mu(x)$ or $\mu(y)$ and multiply the whole equation by it.
2. Find the new partial derivatives of P and Q .
3. Set both partial equals and solve for μ in the newly created differential equation using the necessary method. Also make sure that the solution has no zeroes. This is necessary because otherwise, we would have multiplied our original equation times zero.
4. Substitute μ with the solution. And if now both partials are equal then you can now solve the exact differential equation. If not try with another μ using the other variable. And if this also does not work then the differential equation can not be solved. More specific, if $\mu(x)$ depends on y and $\mu(y)$ on x then there is no way to make the differential equation exact.

Example:

$$3y^2 + 2xyy' = 0, x > 0$$

Here we have $P(x, y) = 3y^2$ and $Q(x, y) = 2xy$, whose partial derivatives are different

$$\frac{\partial P}{\partial y} = 6y \neq 2y = \frac{\partial Q}{\partial x}$$

Now we try to use a multiplier $\mu(x)$.

$$P_2(x, y) = 3y^2\mu(x) \text{ and } Q_2(x, y) = 2xy\mu(x)$$

Now by taking the partials again

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial P_2}{\partial y} &= 6y\mu(x) \\ \frac{\partial Q_2}{\partial x} &= 2y(\mu(x) + x\mu'(x))\end{aligned}$$

Now by setting them equal $6y\mu(x) = 2y(\mu(x) + x\mu'(x))$ we can solve a new differential equation to find $\mu(x)$ and $\mu'(x)$.

$$\begin{aligned}6y\mu(x) &= 2y(\mu(x) + x\mu'(x)) \\ 3\mu(x) &= \mu(x) + x\mu'(x) \\ 2\mu(x) &= x\mu'(x) \\ 2\mu &= x \frac{d\mu}{dx} \\ \int \frac{2}{x} dx &= \int \frac{d\mu}{\mu} \\ 2 \ln(x) &= \ln(\mu) \\ \mu &= x^2\end{aligned}$$

Now finally we check if now the partials are equal, which in this case is true.

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{\partial P_2}{\partial y} &= 6yx^2 \\ \frac{\partial Q_2}{\partial x} &= 6yx^2\end{aligned}$$

Now the equation can be solved like normal.

56.26 Constant Coefficients ODE

Consider the second-order linear differential equation with constant coefficients:

$$ay'' + by' + cy = 0,$$

where $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$, and $a \neq 0$.

We look for solutions of the form $y = e^{rt}$. Substituting into the equation:

$$\begin{aligned}y &= e^{rt}, \\ y' &= re^{rt} \\ y'' &= r^2e^{rt}\end{aligned}$$

Substituting into the original equation:

$$ar^2e^{rt} + bre^{rt} + ce^{rt} = 0$$

Factoring out e^{rt} (which is never zero):

$$e^{rt}(ar^2 + br + c) = 0 \Rightarrow ar^2 + br + c = 0.$$

This is a quadratic equation in r . Solving using the quadratic formula:

$$r = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}.$$

Suppose there are two linearly independent solution y_1 and y_2 to

$$y'' + p(x)y' + q(x)y = 0,$$

then the general solution is $y = c_1y_1 + c_2y_2$.

We analyze the nature of the roots r based on the discriminant $D = b^2 - 4ac$. Also, for dealing with initial conditions of the form $y^n = a, \dots$ we only have to plug the values into our solutions y_h, y'_h, \dots to get the constants.

56.26.1 Case 1: Two Distinct Real Roots ($D > 0$)

There not much not to just plug the solutions of the root.

$$y = c_1e^{r_1t} + c_2e^{r_2t}$$

56.26.2 Case 2: Repeated Real Root ($D = 0$)

For this case we need to use a trick.

$$y = c_1e^{rt} + c_2te^{rt}$$

Note that this could be contra intuitive but te^{rt} is a solution and is linearly independent. For more repeated roots you can use higher powers of t , t^2, t^3, \dots

56.26.3 Case 3: Complex Conjugate Roots ($D < 0$)

When the discriminant $D = b^2 - 4ac < 0$, the roots of the characteristic equation are complex:

$$r = \alpha \pm i\beta,$$

where $\alpha = -\frac{b}{2a}$ and $\beta = \frac{\sqrt{4ac-b^2}}{2a}$.

The general solution to the differential equation is:

$$y(t) = c_1e^{(\alpha+i\beta)t} + c_2e^{(\alpha-i\beta)t}.$$

To express this in real form, we use Euler's formula:

$$e^{i\beta t} = \cos(\beta t) + i\sin(\beta t).$$

Now rewrite each exponential term:

$$\begin{aligned} e^{(\alpha+i\beta)t} &= e^{\alpha t} \cdot e^{i\beta t} = e^{\alpha t}(\cos(\beta t) + i\sin(\beta t)), \\ e^{(\alpha-i\beta)t} &= e^{\alpha t} \cdot e^{-i\beta t} = e^{\alpha t}(\cos(\beta t) - i\sin(\beta t)). \end{aligned}$$

Now to get rid of the imaginary part we can do the following trick

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2} &= e^{\alpha t} \cos \beta t \\ \frac{y_1 - y_2}{2i} &= e^{\alpha t} \sin \beta t \end{aligned}$$

This might feel wrong, but these are in fact linear combinations of our original solution, and they are also linearly independent, because of that we can just use them for our general solution.

$$y = c_1 e^{\alpha t} \cos \beta t + c_2 e^{\alpha t} \sin \beta t$$

Example:

Given is $y'' + y' = 0$.

$$y = e^{rt}$$

$$r^3 + r = 0$$

$$r(r^2 + 1) = 0$$

$$r(r + i)(r - i) = 0$$

Now $r_1 = 0$ $r_2 = -i$ $r_3 = i$

$$y = c_1 e^{0t} + c_2 e^{-it} + c_3 e^{it}$$

$$y = c_1 + c_2 \cos t + c_3 \sin t$$

56.26.4 Inhomogeneous Case

For the inhomogeneous case we would apply the method of the *Undetermined Coefficients*. But differentiating two times or more depending on the order of the differential equation.

56.27 The Wronskian

Let y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n be n functions that are at least $(n - 1)$ -times differentiable on some interval. The *Wronskian* of these functions is defined as:

$$W(y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)(x) = \begin{vmatrix} y_1(x) & y_2(x) & \cdots & y_n(x) \\ y_1'(x) & y_2'(x) & \cdots & y_n'(x) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ y_1^{(n-1)}(x) & y_2^{(n-1)}(x) & \cdots & y_n^{(n-1)}(x) \end{vmatrix}$$

If $W(A) \neq 0$ then they are linearly independent.

56.28 Linearity Property

Let $y_p^{(1)}$ be a particular solution of

$$y'' + ay' + by = g_1(x)$$

and $y_p^{(2)}$ a particular solution of

$$y'' + ay' + by = g_2(x),$$

then

$$y_p = y_p^{(1)} + y_p^{(2)}$$

is a particular solution of

$$y'' + ay' + by = g_1(x) + g_2(x).$$

56.29 Variation of Parameters

For a linear differential equation of the form

$$y'' + p(x)y' + q(x)y = f(x)$$

The homogeneous equation has a solution of the linearly independent y_1 and y_2 of the form $y = u_1y_1 + u_2y_2$. We can guess the functions y_1 and y_2 .

So, for finding a solution of these types of equations we use the following formulas.

$$u_1 = - \int \frac{y_2 g}{y_1 y_2' - y_2 y_1'} dx$$

$$u_2 = - \int \frac{y_1 g}{y_1 y_2' - y_2 y_1'} dx$$

These formulas come from:

Differentiating two times:

$$y = u_1 y_1 + u_2 y_2$$

$$y' = u_1 y_1' + y_1 u_1' + u_2 y_2' + y_2 u_2'$$

Here we can add another constraint that $y_1 u_1' + y_2 u_2' = 0$. This allows us to simplify the expression to:

$$y' = u_1 y_1' + u_2 y_2'$$

Now we can derivate one more time:

$$y'' = u_1 y_1'' + y_1' u_1' + u_2 y_2'' + y_2' u_2'$$

Substitute in the original equation

$$y'' + p(x)y' + q(x)y = f(x)$$

$$u_1 y_1'' + y_1' u_1' + u_2 y_2'' + y_2' u_2' + p(x)(u_1 y_1' + u_2 y_2') + q(x)(u_1 y_1 + u_2 y_2) = g(x)$$

$$u_1 y_1'' + y_1' u_1' + u_2 y_2'' + y_2' u_2' + p(x)(u_1 y_1') + p(x)(u_2 y_2') + q(x)(u_1 y_1) + q(x)(u_2 y_2) = g(x)$$

$$u_1 y_1'' + y_1' u_1' + u_2 y_2'' + y_2' u_2' + p(x)(u_1 y_1') + p(x)(u_2 y_2') + q(x)(u_1 y_1) + q(x)(u_2 y_2) = g(x)$$

With non-generic function a lot of the terms would cancel out. After that we add multiply by y_1 one of the rows and y_2 so that we can cancel them in a row operation. Which will left us with only two integrals to solve.

56.30 Which method to use depending on the type of differential equations

56.30.1 First Order

- Separable \Rightarrow Separation of Variables.
- Form $y' = f(ax + by(x) + c)$ \Rightarrow Substitution $z = ax + by(x) + c$ and $f(z)$.
- Form $y' = \frac{y}{x} \Rightarrow$ Substitution $z = \frac{y}{x}$
- Linear \Rightarrow Integrating Factor or Variation of Constants.
- Bernoulli (Non-linear) \Rightarrow Bernoulli Substitution.
- Autonomous \Rightarrow Equilibrium Analysis.
- Non-homogeneous \Rightarrow Undetermined Coefficients or integrating factor.

56.30.2 Second Order and higher

- Constant Coefficients \Rightarrow Guess e^{rx} .
- Non-homogeneous \Rightarrow Undetermined Coefficients.
- Linear \Rightarrow Series Solutions.

56.30.3 Exact

Using the method for exact differential equations.

56.31 Linear Systems of Differential Equations

Let us start by looking at a system of first order homogeneous differential equations

$$\begin{aligned}y_1' &= ay_1 + by_2 \\ y_2' &= cy_1 + dy_2\end{aligned}$$

This can be written as

$$\frac{d}{dt} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} y_1 \\ y_2 \end{pmatrix}$$
$$Ax = \vec{y}'$$

Then if we use the guess $y(t) = \vec{v}e^{\lambda t}$ and differentiate with respect to t we get

$$\lambda \vec{v}e^{\lambda t} = A\vec{v}e^{\lambda t}$$

$$\lambda \vec{v} = A\vec{v},$$

which is our *Eigenvalue* problem. This can be solved via

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = 0$$

$$\lambda^2 - (a + c)\lambda + ad - bc = 0$$

And this solution can lead to the three cases we already know: distinct real roots, complex Conjugate roots and repeated roots.

We can also use substitution to solve for one of the y_i , which are functions of x like

$$\begin{aligned}y_1' &= ay_1 + by_2 \\ y_2' &= cy_1 + dy_2 \\ by_2 &= y_1' - ay_1 \\ y_2 &= \frac{y_1' - ay_1}{b}\end{aligned}$$

Then we can differentiate our first equation with respect to x

$$\begin{aligned}by_2 &= y_1' - ay_1 \\ by_2' &= y_1'' - ay_1' \\ &= b(cy_2 + dy_1) \\ &= bcy_2 + bdy_1 \\ &= c(y_1' - ay_1) + bdy_1 \\ y_1'' - (a + c)y_1' + (ac - bd)y_1 + bdy_1 &= 0\end{aligned}$$

Example:

We are given the system of differential equations:

$$\begin{cases} y' = y + z \\ z' = -2y + 3z \end{cases}$$

We write this system in matrix form:

$$u' = Au, \quad \text{where } u = \begin{bmatrix} y \\ z \end{bmatrix}, \quad A = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 \\ -2 & 3 \end{bmatrix}$$

To solve, we find the eigenvalues of A by solving the characteristic equation:

$$\det(A - \lambda I) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 - \lambda & 1 \\ -2 & 3 - \lambda \end{vmatrix} = (1 - \lambda)(3 - \lambda) + 2 = \lambda^2 - 4\lambda + 5 = 0$$

Solving the quadratic equation:

$$\lambda = \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{(-4)^2 - 4(1)(5)}}{2} = \frac{4 \pm \sqrt{-4}}{2} = \frac{4 \pm 2i}{2} = 2 \pm i$$

Now we find an eigenvector corresponding to $\lambda = 2 + i$ by solving:

$$(A - (2 + i)I)v = 0$$

$$A - (2 + i)I = \begin{bmatrix} 1 - (2 + i) & 1 \\ -2 & 3 - (2 + i) \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -1 - i & 1 \\ -2 & 1 - i \end{bmatrix}$$

From the first row of the system:

$$(-1 - i)v_1 + v_2 = 0 \Rightarrow v_2 = (1 + i)v_1$$

So, an eigenvector corresponding to $\lambda = 2 + i$ is:

$$v = \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 + i \end{bmatrix}$$

After repeating the previous computation for $\lambda = 2 - i$ we get the complex solution to the system:

$$u(t) = c_1 e^{(2+i)t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 + i \end{bmatrix} + c_2 e^{(2-i)t} \begin{bmatrix} 1 \\ 1 - i \end{bmatrix}$$

57 Probability

57.1 Basics

57.1.1 Probability

E is the event we are studying and Ω the total. Example $\frac{1}{2}$

$$P(E) = \frac{E}{\Omega}$$

57.1.2 Expected Result

Here p represents the probability of something and x the expected reward

$$E(x) = p_1x_1 + \cdots + p_nx_n$$

57.2 Standard Deviation

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{(\bar{x} - x_1)^2 + \cdots + (\bar{x} - x_n)^2}{n}}$$

57.3 Binomial Distribution

Formulas:

- *Probability:* $P(X = k) = \binom{n}{k}p^k(1-p)^{n-k}$
- *Expected Result:* $E(X) = n * p$
- *Standard Deviation:* $\sqrt{E(X)(1-p)}$
- *Variance:* $E(x)(1-p)$

57.3.1 Continuous Probability

$$\sum_{i=P(X=k)}^{P(X=n)(P(X=i))}$$

Formulas:

- $P(X = a) = P(X = a)$
- $P(X \leq a) = P(X \leq a)$
- $P(X < a) = P(X \leq a - 1)$
- $P(X > a) = 1 - P(X \leq a)$
- $P(X \geq a) = 1 - P(X \leq -1)$
- $P(a \leq X \leq b) = P(X \leq b) - P(X \leq a)$

57.3.2 Sigma Rules

- $P(\mu - \sigma \leq x\mu + \sigma) \approx 68,3\%$
- $P(\mu - 2\sigma \leq x\mu + 2\sigma) \approx 95,4\%$
- $P(\mu - 3\sigma \leq x\mu + 3\sigma) \approx 99,7\%$

57.4 Normal Distribution

- *Probability:* $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2}e^{\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2}}$
- *Expected Result:* $E(x) = np = \mu$
- *Variance:* $Var(x) = E(X)(1-p)$
- *Standard Deviation:* $\sqrt{Var(x)}$

57.5 Conditional Probability

Probability of a under the condition b .

$$P_b(a) = \frac{P(b \cap a)}{P(b)}$$

57.5.1 Formula for the Total Probability

$$P(a) = P_b(a)P(b) + P_{-b}(a)P(-b)$$

57.6 Bayes Theorem

$$P(a|b) = \frac{P(b|a)P(a)}{P(b)}$$

57.7 Hyper-geometric Distribution

$$P(X = k) = \frac{\binom{M}{K}\binom{N-M}{n-K}}{\binom{N}{n}}$$

Nomenclature:

- N : Total number of elements
- M : Elements with the trait A
- $N - M$: Elements without the trait A
- $n = k$: Number to elements to take

Formulas:

- *Expected Results:* $E(x) = n\frac{M}{N}$
- *Variance:* $Var(X) = E(x) \left(1 - \frac{M}{N}\right) \left(\frac{N-n}{N-1}\right)$

57.8 The Birthday Paradox

This is a small question that says: What is the probability of at least two people having their birthday on the same day in a group of x persons.

$$P(x) = 1 - \prod_{n=0}^{x-1} \frac{365-n}{365}$$

This formula gives us the probability of total minus all persons having it on different days. Which what we are looking for.

58 Combinatorics

58.1 Permutation

Number of ways of ordering n distinct elements.

$$n!$$

58.2 Permutation with repetition

Number of ways of ordering n non-distinct elements. Here m_1, \dots, m_n is the number a specific item is repeated in the original set.

$$\frac{n!}{m_1! \cdots m_n!}$$

58.3 Variation

Ways of put n objects in k slots with repetition.

$$n^k$$

58.4 Variation without repetition

Ways of put n objects in k slots without repetition.

$$\frac{n!}{(n-k)!}$$

58.5 Combination I

Ways of choose k objects of n elements.

$$\binom{n}{k} = \frac{n!}{k!(n-k)!}$$

Here $n!$ is the number of permutations of the original set. $(n-k)!$ has the function of eliminating the permutations of elements we are not interested in, and $k!$ is to eliminate the duplicates because for a combination the order does not matter, contrary to the permutations.

58.6 Combination II

This focuses not on the slots but in the separations between the slots. More specific the number of ways to distribute k identical objects into n identical boxes.

$$\binom{n+k-1}{k} = \frac{(n+k-1)!}{k!(n-1)!}$$

58.7 Disarray

Number of permutation in which no object ends in the same initial spot. Also, know as the *sub-factorial*

$$!n = n! \sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{(-1)^k}{k!} \right)$$

58.8 Bell Numbers

Number of ways of grouping n objects in an arbitrary number of slots.

$$B(N) = \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} \binom{N}{k} B(K)$$

with $B(1) = 1$ and $B(2) = 2$

58.9 Ramanujan Numbers

The same as the Bell Numbers but, all objects are equal. As an example the number of ways to decompose a number.

$$R(N) \approx \frac{1}{4N\sqrt{3}} e^{2\pi\sqrt{\frac{N}{6}}}$$

58.10 Stirling Numbers I

Ways of permuting N items with K exchanges.

$$\begin{bmatrix} N+1 \\ K \end{bmatrix} = N \begin{bmatrix} N \\ K \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} N \\ K-1 \end{bmatrix}$$

58.11 Stirling Numbers II

Ways of grouping n items in k slots.

$$\left\{ \begin{matrix} N \\ K \end{matrix} \right\} = \frac{1}{K!} \sum_{j=0}^K (-1)^{K-j} \binom{K}{j} j^N$$

58.12 Lah Numbers

Ways of building K lists with a set N elements.

$$\begin{bmatrix} N \\ K \end{bmatrix} = \binom{N-1}{K-1} \frac{N!}{K!} = \sum_{j=0}^K \begin{bmatrix} N \\ K \end{bmatrix} \left\{ \begin{matrix} N \\ K \end{matrix} \right\}$$

58.13 Euler's Numbers

Number of permutations of a set of N elements of different size in which K elements are bigger than their previous element.

$$\left\langle \begin{matrix} N \\ K \end{matrix} \right\rangle = \sum_{j=0}^K (-1)^j \binom{N+1}{j} (K+1-j)^N$$

58.14 Catalan Numbers

These have different applications like the number of ways of the triangulations of a polygon or the number of trees with N leafs.

$$\mathfrak{C}(N) = \binom{2N}{N} - \binom{2N}{N+1}$$

or

$$\mathfrak{C}(N) = \sum_{k=1}^n (k-1) \mathfrak{C}(N-k)$$

58.15 Pascals Triangle

This is a triangle build by the formula $\binom{n+1}{k+1} = \binom{n}{k} + \binom{n}{k+1}$

$n = 0$						1					
$n = 1$					1		1				
$n = 2$				1		2		1			
$n = 3$				1	3		3		1		
$n = 4$			1		4	6		4		1	
$n = 5$		1		5		10	10		5	1	
$n = 6$	1		6		15		20	15		6	1

Here is the triangle but with the Binomial Coefficients

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} n=0 & & & & \binom{0}{0} & & \\ n=1 & & & \binom{1}{0} & & \binom{1}{1} & \\ n=2 & & \binom{2}{0} & & \binom{2}{1} & & \binom{2}{2} \\ n=3 & & \binom{3}{0} & & \binom{3}{1} & & \binom{3}{2} & & \binom{3}{3} \end{array}$$

It can be used with the Binomial Theorem to get the Coefficients of a polynomial of degree n .

Example:

$$(a + b)^2 = 1a^2b^0 + 2a^1b^1 + 1a^0b^2$$

or

$$(a - b)^2 = 1a^2b^0 - 2a^1b^1 + 1a^0b^2$$